



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

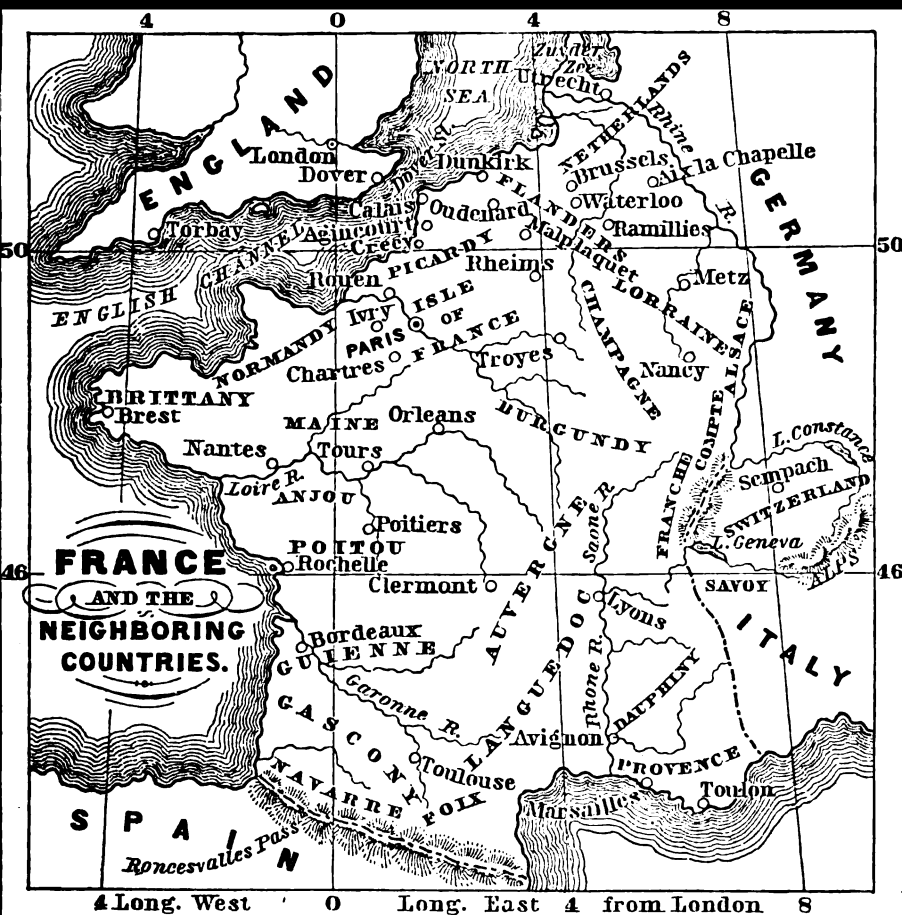
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



A school history of England ...

John Jacob Anderson

ENGLISH CLASSICS,

FOR

*Classes in English Literature, Reading, Grammar, etc.
With Full Explanatory Notes.*

Paradise Lost. (Book I.) Containing Sketch of Milton's Life—Essay on the Genius of Milton—Epitome of the Views of the Best-Known Critics on Milton, and full Explanatory Notes. 16mo. Cloth, flexible, 94 pages.

The Shakespeare Reader. Being extracts from the Plays of Shakespeare, viz.: The Merchant of Venice—As You Like It—King John—King Richard II—King Henry IV—King Henry V—King Henry VI—King Richard III—King Henry VIII—Troilus and Cressida—Julius Cæsar—King Lear—Othello. With Introductory Paragraphs and Notes, Grammatical, Historical and Explanatory. By C. H. WYKES. 160 pp., 16mo, cloth, flexible.

The Canterbury Tales—The Prologue of Geoffrey Chaucer. The Text Collated with the Seven Oldest MSS., and a Life of the Author. Introductory Notices, Grammar, Critical and Explanatory Notes, and Index to Obsolete and Difficult Words. By E. F. WILLOUGHBY, M. D. 112 pp., 16mo, cloth, flexible.

An Essay on Man. By ALEXANDER POPE. With Clarke's Grammatical Notes. 16mo. 72 pages, cloth, flexible.

Shakespeare's Plays—(SCHOOL EDITIONS). MERCHANT OF VENICE, JULIUS CÆSAR, KING LEAR, MACBETH, HAMLET, TEMPEST. With Notes, Examination Papers and Plan of Preparation, (Selected). By BRAINERD KELLOGG, A. M., Professor of the English Language and Literature in the Brooklyn Collegiate and Polytechnic Institute, and author of "A Text-Book on Rhetoric," "A Text-Book on English Literature," and one of the authors of Reed & Kellogg's "Graded Lessons in English," and "Higher Lessons in English." 82mo. Cloth, flexible.

The text of these plays of Shakespeare has been adapted for use in mixed classes, by the omission of everything that would be considered offensive. The notes have been especially selected to meet the requirements of School and College students, from editions edited by eminent English scholars. We are confident that teachers who examine these editions will pronounce them better adapted to the wants, both of the teacher and student, than any other editions published. Printed from large type, bound in a very attractive cloth binding, and sold at nearly one-half the price of other School Editions of Shakespeare.

CLARK & MAYNARD, PUBLISHERS,

734 Broadway, New York.

ENGLISH CLASSICS,

FOR

Classes in English Literature, Reading, Grammar, etc.

EDITED BY EMINENT ENGLISH SCHOLARS.

Each Volume contains a Sketch of the Author's Life, Prefatory and Explanatory Notes, etc., etc.

These Volumes are thoroughly adapted for Schools in which English Literature forms a branch of study, or where a carefully-selected portion of some English Classic is selected for minute examination, or for supplementary reading matter. The notes are unusually full and exhaustive, occupying in nearly every case fully half the book. Etymology is attended to throughout, the derivations of all the more difficult words being given. In short, they supply the student with all the information necessary to a perfect understanding and just appreciation of the text, and incidentally communicate much useful philological and general knowledge.

- 1 **Byron's Prophecy of Dante.** (Cantos I and II.)
- 2 **Milton's L'Allegro and Il Penseroso.**
- 3 **Lord Bacon's Essays, CIVIL AND MORAL.** (Selected.)
- 4 **Byron's Prisoner of Chillon.**
- 5 **Moore's Fire-Worshippers.** (Lalla Rookh. Selected from Parts I. and II.)
- 6 **Goldsmith's Deserted Village.**
- 7 **Scott's Marmion.** (Selections from Canto VI.)
- 8 **Scott's Lay of the Last Minstrel.** (Introduction and Canto I.)
- 9 **Burns's Cotter's Saturday Night, and Other Poems.**
- 10 **Crabbe's The Village.**
- 11 **Campbell's Pleasures of Hope.** (Abridgment of Part I.)
- 12 **Macaulay's Essay on Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress.**
- 13 **Macaulay's Armada, and Other Poems.**
- 14 **Shakespeare's Merchant of Venice.** Selections from Acts I., III., and IV.
- 15 **Goldsmith's Traveller.**
- 16 **Hogg's Queen's Wake.**
- 17 **Coleridge's Ancient Mariner.**
- 18 **Addison's Sir Roger de Coverley.**
- 19 **Gray's Elegy in a Country Churchyard.**
- 20 **Scott's Lady of the Lake.** (Canto I.)
- 21 **Shakespeare's As You Like It, etc.** (Selections.)
- 22 **Shakespeare's King John and King Richard II.** (Selections.)
- 23 **Shakespeare's King Henry IV., King Henry V., King Henry VI.** (Selections.)
- 24 **Shakespeare's Henry VIII., and Julius Cæsar.** (Selections.)
- 25 **Wordsworth's Excursion.** (Book I.)
- 26 **Pope's Essay on Criticism.**
- 27 **Spenser's Faerie Queene.** (Cantos I. and II.)

Each from 32 to 48 Pages, 16mo. Others in Preparation.

PUBLISHED BY CLARK & MAYNARD, 734 BROADWAY, N.Y.

Library of.
Rev. Arthur H. Wain.
The Weirs. H. H.

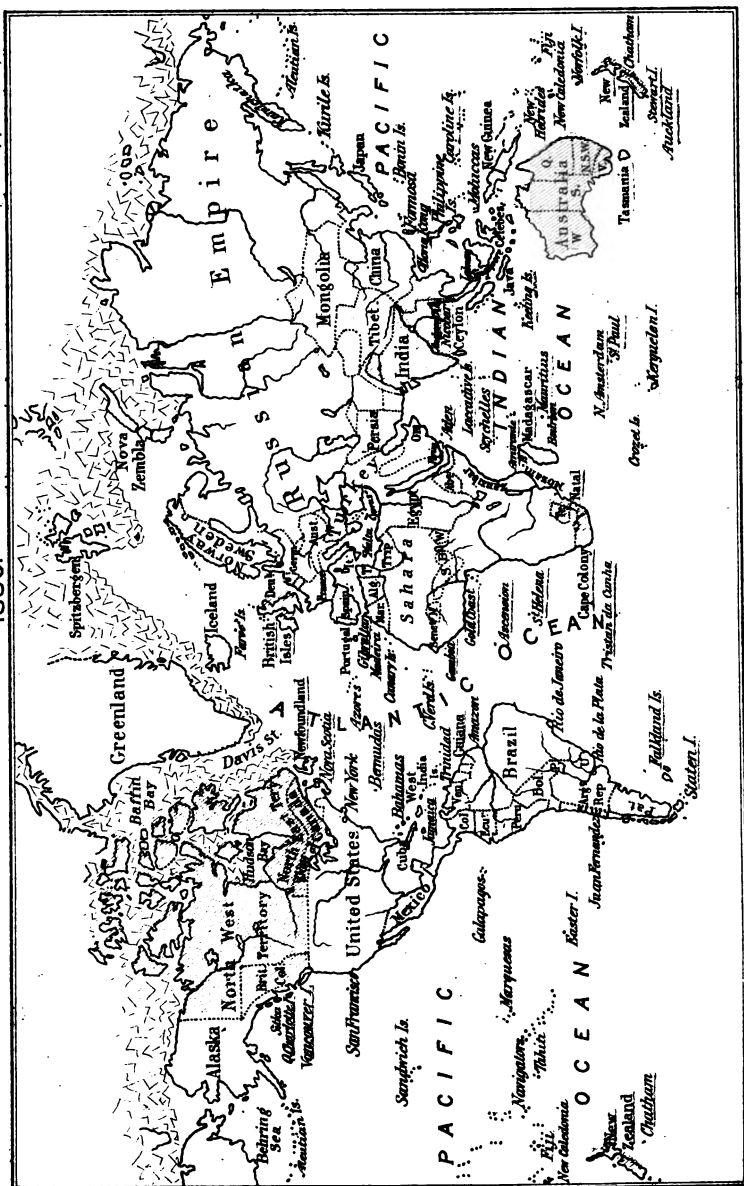
M. A. Lyman.

1883.

ENGLAND & HER DEPENDENCIES.

1880.

(See Appendix)



A
SCHOOL HISTORY
OF
ENGLAND,

*Illustrated with many Engravings and a series of colored
Progressive Maps, showing the Geographical
Changes of the Country at dif-
ferent periods.*

BY
JOHN J. ANDERSON, PH.D.

*Author of a "Grammar School History of the United States," a "Pictorial
School History of the United States," a "Manual of General History,
The Historical Reader," "The United States Reader," etc., etc.*

NEW YORK:
CLARK & MAYNARD, PUBLISHERS,
734 BROADWAY.
1882.

KD 61678

Anderson's Historical Series.

A Junior Class History of the United States. Illustrated with hundreds of portraits, views, maps, etc. 272 pages. 10mo.

A Grammar School History of the United States. Annotated; and illustrated with numerous portraits and views, and with more than forty maps, many of which are colored. 340 pp. 16mo.

A Pictorial School History of the United States. Fully illustrated with maps, portraits, vignettes, etc. 420 pp. 12mo.

A Popular School History of the United States, in which are inserted as a part of the narrative selections from the writings of eminent American historians and other American writers of note. Fully illustrated with maps, colored and plain; portraits, views, etc. 356 pp. 12mo.

A Manual of General History. Illustrated with numerous engravings and with beautifully colored maps showing the changes in the political divisions of the world, and giving the location of important places. 488 pp. 12mo.

A School History of England. Illustrated with numerous engravings and with colored maps showing the geographical changes in the country at different periods. 332 pp. 12mo.

A School History of France. Illustrated with numerous engravings, colored and uncolored maps. 373 pp. 12mo.

A History of Rome. Amply illustrated with maps, plans, and engravings. 543 pp. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.).

A School History of Greece. In preparation.

Anderson's Bloss's Ancient History. Illustrated with engravings, colored maps, and a chart. 445 pp. 12mo.

The Historical Reader, embracing selections in prose and verse, from standard writers of Ancient and Modern History; with a Vocabulary of Difficult Words, and Biographical and Geographical Indexes. 544 pp. 12mo.

The United States Reader, embracing selections from eminent American historians, orators, statesmen, and poets, with explanatory observations, notes, etc. Arranged so as to form a Class-manual of United States History. Illustrated with colored historical maps. 414 pp. 12mo.

CLARK & MAYNARD, Publishers,

734 Broadway, New York.



Copyright, 1874, by JOHN J. ANDERSON.

P R E F A C E.

THE object of this work is to supply to teachers and students a history of England containing the features of the author's popular school histories of the United States. Accordingly, the text has been made brief, but clear and explicit; questions have been appended at the foot of each page, to aid in study and recitation, and review questions added at the end of each section, for the purpose of practising the student in topical narration. Maps, showing the progressive changes in the political divisions of the country, and the location of the places referred to, are interspersed through the work, and chronological tables inserted at frequent intervals. The same system with regard to dates has been followed as is employed in the author's Manual of General History, they being inserted freely, but so as to form no essential part of the narrative. The pronunciation of proper names is also given wherever it was thought the student might need this information. The biographical and other references will, it is thought, be found a most convenient addition to a work of this kind. The size of the work has been dictated by a consideration of the limited time which, according to the present school requirements, can be given to this subject; and the author hopes that in this, as well as in other respects, it will meet the approval of those from whom his previous publications have received so generous a support and commendation.

M A P S.

	PAGE
1. England and her Dependencies.....	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
2. Britain under the Romans (Progressive Map No. 1)...	<i>facing</i> 13
3. Settlements of the Saxons and Angles (Progressive Map No. 2).....	<i>facing</i> 22
4. Britain in the time of Egbert (Progressive Map No. 3),	<i>facing</i> 28
5. Britain at the death of Edward the Confessor (Progressive Map No. 4).....	<i>facing</i> 48
6. France and the Neighboring Countries.....	55
7. Great Britain (Modern) (Progressive Map No. 5).....	<i>facing</i> 71
8. Southern Europe (Progressive Map No. 6).....	<i>facing</i> 126
9. Ireland.....	201
10. British India.....	227

GENEALOGICAL TABLES.

	PAGE
1. Of the Saxon Kings.....	52
2. Of the Norman Kings.....	70
3. Of the Plantagenets.....	106
4. Of the Lancaster and York Family	124
5. Of the Tudor Family.....	159
6. Of the Stuart Family.....	217
7. Of the Brunswick Kings.....	276

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.....	PAGE 7
I. Geography of the British Isles (7); II. Old English words and names (8); III. Legendary History of Britain (9).	
PART I.—ANCIENT BRITAIN.	
SECTION I.—BRITAIN UNDER THE ROMANS.....	13
Manners, Customs, etc., of the Britons (14); Progress of Civilization (20).	
SECTION II.—BRITAIN UNDER THE SAXONS.....	22
Review questions (27).	
PART II.—ENGLAND IN THE MIDDLE AGES.	
SECTION I.—THE ANGLO-SAXON AND DANISH KINGS.....	28
Egbert (28); Ethelwolf (30); Ethelbald and Ethelbert (30); Ethelred (31); Alfred the Great (31); Edward the Elder (34); Athelstan (35); Edmund (35); Edred (36); Edwy (36); Edgar (37); Edward the Martyr (38); Ethelred II. (38); Edmund Ironside (40); THE DANISH KINGS ,—Canute (41); Harold (43); Hardicanute (44); SAXON KINGS RESTORED :—Edward the Confessor (44); Harold II. (48); State of Society among the Anglo-Saxons (49); Chronological Recapitulation (52); Genealogical Table of the Saxon Kings (52); Review questions (53).	
SECTION II.—THE NORMAN FAMILY.....	54
William I. (54); William II. (59); Henry I. (61); Stephen (63); State of Society under the Norman Kings (65); Chronological Recapitulation (70); Genealogical Table of the Norman Kings (70); Review questions (70).	
SECTION III.—THE PLANTAGENETS.....	71
Henry II. (71); Richard I. (73); John (75); Henry III. (79); Edward I. (82); Edward II. (87); Edward III. (90); Richard II. (95); State of Society under the Plantagenets (102); Chronological Recapitulation (105); Genealogical Table of the Plantagenets (106); Review questions (106).	

	PAGE
SECTION IV.—THE HOUSES OF YORK AND LANCASTER.....	108
Henry IV. (108); Henry V. (109); Henry VI. (111); Edward IV. (116); Edward V. (118); Richard III. (119); State of Society under the Houses of York and Lancaster (121); Chronological Recapitulation (123); Genealogical Table of the Lancastrian and York Families (125); Review questions (125).	

PART III.—MODERN ENGLAND.

SECTION I.—THE TUDOR FAMILY.....	126
Henry VII. (126); Henry VIII. (130); Edward VI. (139); Mary (141); Elizabeth (145); State of Society under the Tudors (153); Chronological Recapitulation (158); Genealogical Table of the Tudors (159); Review questions (159).	
SECTION II.—THE STUART FAMILY.....	160
James I. (160); Charles I. (165); The Commonwealth (179); Richard Cromwell (184); Charles II. (185); James II. (194); William and Mary (199); William III. (203); Anne (205); State of Society under the Stuarts (208); Chronological Recapitulation (215); Genealogical Table of the Stuarts (217); Review questions (217).	
SECTION III.—THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.....	219
George I. (219); George II. (221); Conquests in India (227); George III. (230); State of Society under the first three Brunswick Kings (249); George IV. (256); William IV. (259); Victoria (261); State of Society since the accession of George IV. (272); Chronological Recapitulation (275); Genealogical Table of the House of Brunswick (276); Review questions (277).	

APPENDIX.

I. THE BRITISH CONSTITUTION.....	279
II. GENERAL VIEW OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE.....	283

INTRODUCTION.

I. GEOGRAPHY OF THE BRITISH ISLES.

1. THE British Isles lie between the 49th and 61st degrees of north latitude, and the 2d of east and the 11th of west longitude. The largest of these, *Great Britain*, comprising the three countries, England, Wales, and Scotland, contains nearly 90,000 square miles, or nearly twice the area of the State of New York. Its entire population in 1871 was about twenty-six millions. Ireland, lying to the west of Great Britain, contains about 32,500 square miles, and in 1871 had a population of about five millions four hundred thousands.

2. These countries are now divided into counties, or *shires*, of which England has 40, Wales 12, Scotland 33, and Ireland 32. The Romans divided the island of Britain into five provinces: viz., 1. *Britannia Prima*, situated south of the Thames and the Severn rivers; 2. *Britannia Secunda*, now Wales (nearly); 3. *Flavia Cæsariensis* (Flavia Cæsarian province), situated to the north of the Thames, east of the Severn, and south of the Mersey and Humber rivers; 4. *Maxima Cæsariensis* (the great Cæsarian province), extending from the Mersey and the Humber as far as the wall of Adrian, or Severus; and *Valentia* (from the emperor Valens), situated between the wall of Adrian, or Severus, and the rampart of Agricola. The region to the north of Valentia was called *Caledonia* (from a word meaning people of the woods).

QUESTIONS.—1. How are the British Isles situated? What does Great Britain comprise? Its extent? Population? Extent and population of Ireland?
2. How are these countries divided? Roman divisions of Britain? Situation of each? Caledonia? Municipal towns? Colonies?

The municipal towns were *Ebor'acum* (York), and *Verula'mium* (St. Albans). There were nine colonies, the chief of which were *Londinium* (London), *Aqua Solis* (Bath), *Deva* (Chester), and *Lindum* (Lincoln).

3. The first of these provinces became, after the Saxon conquest, Kent, Sussex, and Wessex; the second, North and South Wales; the third, Essex, Middlesex, East Anglia, and Mercia. East Anglia comprised Norfolk and Suffolk. The Great Cæsarian province became Northumbria, comprising Deira and Bernicia; and Valentia became Strathclyde, a British kingdom, and a part of the Saxon kingdom of Deira. Beyond the mainland of Scotland lie the Orkney Islands on the north, and the Hebrides on the west. These were scarcely known to the Romans, but in after time were occupied by the Northmen.

4. Ireland was never occupied by the Romans or Saxons; but before its conquest by the English was divided into the five kingdoms of *Munster*, *Leinster*, *Meath*, *Ulster*, and *Connaught*. Four of these names are still preserved as the designations of provinces. Munster occupies the south and southwest; Leinster, the east; Connaught, the west; and Ulster, the north. Ireland was anciently called *I-er'ne*, a word which, in the Celtic language, is supposed to mean *west*. The Romans called it *Hibernia*. Its present name is doubtless derived from its ancient appellation.

II. OLD-ENGLISH WORDS AND NAMES.

5. The Old-English, or Anglo-Saxon, language was essentially the same language as that now denominated the English language; but in the course of centuries it has, by

3. What did Britannia Prima comprise under the Saxons? Britannia Secunda? The Flavia Cæsarian Province? The Great Cæsarian Province? Valentia? What islands lie beyond? By whom were they occupied?

4. Ireland? Its ancient divisions? Modern provinces and their situation? Its ancient name? Roman name? Modern name?

5. Old-English language? How changed? Proper names?

degrees, been so changed that it cannot now be understood except by those who have specially studied it. Most of the proper names now used have a meaning which was very plain to those who employed them in former times, but which, at the present time, needs an explanation. In these names, we have representatives of the various tongues which have contributed to our modern English.

6. Thus, *avon* is Celtic for stream; *strath* for valley, as in *Strathclyde*; and *pen* for head, promontory, or hill, as in *Pen Mon*, the head of Mona Island. The Gaelic form of the latter (in Scotland) is *ben*, as in *Ben Nevis*. In words ending in *caster*, *cester*, and *chester*, derived from the word *castra*, a camp, we have the Latin element; as in *Lancaster*, *Gloucester*, *Winchester*, &c. Also in *Stratton*—*Streettown*, from *strata*, a street, and in *Jersey*, from *Cæsare'a*.

7. In the early history of England many names of persons are used, an explanation of the meaning of which will serve to enable the student more easily to remember them, besides increasing his interest in the history itself. Thus, *Alfred* is all-peace; *Egbert*, eye-bright; *Bertha*, the bright; *Albert*, all-bright; *El'giva*,—corrupted from *ælf-gifu*, elf-gift; *Ethelwolf*, the noble wolf (*ethel*, *æthel*, or *athel*, noble); *Eth'elred*, noble in council; *Ath'eling*, son of a noble, or prince; *Ath'elstan*, precious stone; *Edmund*, a good protector; *Edwin*, good or prosperous in battle; *Edward*, a good guardian, &c.

III. LEGENDARY HISTORY OF BRITAIN.

8. The early history of Britain, as of most other countries, consists of stories or legends, of the truth of which no satisfactory evidence can be adduced. Previous to the account given by *Cæsar*, in his "Commentaries," of the in-

6. Meaning of *avon*? *Strath*? *Pen*? Illustrations of each? Meaning of the terminations *caster*, *cester*, and *chester*? *Stratton*? *Jersey*?

7. Names of persons? Meaning of *Alfred*, *Egbert*, &c.?

8. Early history of Britain? Early records?

habitants, nothing, as far as is known, was recorded of the events occurring among them. The Druids, indeed, prohibited such records as irreligious and unlawful. Therefore, as remarked by Milton, "from the first peopling of Britain to the coming of Julius Cæsar, there is nothing certainly known, either by tradition, history, or ancient fame."

9. The old chroniclers, however, and particularly Geofrey of Monmouth, give the history of an almost uninterrupted series of events from the earliest ages down to the period of authentic history. According to these, the ancient inhabitants of the island, called Albion, were a race of giants, who, being greatly reduced in number by the fierce wars which they waged among themselves, were finally subdued and destroyed by Brutus, a Trojan prince, and a descendant of Æneas, who fled to Italy from the ruins of Troy.

10. This Brutus divided Albion, which he found in a waste condition, among his own people, and built a great city on the Thames River, which he called "New Troy." The time assigned for these events is the period of the Judges in Jewish history; and from that remote age, down to the coming of Cæsar, the long line of kings, descendants of Brutus, are given in this mythological history with great particularity, both as to dates and names. Among these was *Bladud*, who becoming a leper, and therefore being obliged to flee from his father's court, was cured by bathing in the hot springs of the Avon, where he afterward founded the city of Bath.

11. The son and successor of this king was Lear, whose story forms the foundation of one of Shakspeare's greatest tragedies. According to the legend, this king, in his old age, in order to be relieved from the care and labor of government, divided his dominions between his two

9. What history is given of the early times? By whom? What is said of Brutus?

10. What was done by Brutus? His successors? Bladud?

11. The legend of King Lear? At what period is it placed?

daughters, Gon'eril and Regan, discarding his youngest daughter Cordelia, because he thought she was wanting in affection for him, since her protestations of filial love were less vehement than those of her sisters. The latter, however, proved more sincere; for the too indulgent father having been treated with the basest ingratitude and unkindness by those whom he had endowed with his power and possessions, was finally compelled to seek a refuge with her whom he had disowned, and was by her and her husband, a Gaulish prince, restored to his throne. This reign is placed by the chroniclers in the sixth century before Christ.

12. Many years after this there reigned a king named *Lud*, who enlarged, and built walls around, the city of New Troy. After him it was called *Caerlud*, or *Lud's Town*, changed in course of time to *London*. Lud was a brave and warlike monarch, genial in disposition, and festive in his habits; and hence is represented as very popular. He was buried in a part of London, now called *Ludgate*. It was during the reign of his son, *Cas-sib'e-lawn*,* as it is said, that the invasion of Cæsar took place; and among his later descendants was *Cu-nob'e-line*, or *Cymbeline* (*sim'be-line*), whose history forms the foundation of another of Shakspeare's plays.

13. Such is the story of the Trojan kings of Britain, thoroughly believed in by many of the old writers, but evidently fictitious, being based, in part, upon names derived from a very different origin. The legend is, however, of very great antiquity. According to Sir Francis Palgrave, there is some reason to believe that the story of Brutus was invented by the bards, to gain favor with those who prided themselves on being descended from Æneas, the Trojan prince, and thus related

12. What is narrated of King Lud? During whose reign is Cæsar's invasion placed? What is said of Cymbeline? * Also called Cassivelaunus. (See ¶ 3, p. 14.)

13. What is remarked of these legends? Their antiquity and origin?

to the kings of Rome. This, however, cannot be determined; but it is certainly more probable that the name of *Britain* gave rise to the story of Brutus than that the island received its ancient appellation from the name of that mythical prince.

14. This legendary history, although now set aside as fabulous and scarcely worthy of remark, did, in its own time, important service in the formation of the British character; and hence the people were wise in clinging as long as possible to their faith in those ennobling traditions. That proud ancestry, and the lofty achievements which were attributed, in the songs of the bards, to the early British race, inspired each succeeding generation with a love of brave exploits, a contempt of danger, and a lofty patriotism, which could only be crushed out after the nation had for centuries been trodden under the iron heel of the Roman invader.

15. An attachment to the legends of the past seems to be an almost universal sentiment among mankind. Those shadowy periods, so dim and vague from their distance, are the chosen theatre in which fancy delights to present her favorite characters and to enact her fondest dramas; and the charm with which these creations of the imagination are cherished, is the more powerful in proportion as they are contrasted with the sober and often repulsive scenes of real life and history. Hence, as remarked by a great historian, there are two distinct periods in the existence of every nation,—the age of *historical faith* and the age of *historical reason*.

14. Of what service was the legendary history? In what way was this influence exerted?

15. What leads to an attachment to the legends of the past? What two periods in a nation's history are referred to?

Progressive Map, No. 1



HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

PART I. ANCIENT BRITAIN.

SECTION I.

BRITAIN UNDER THE ROMANS.

Extending from the Landing of Cæsar (55 B. C.) to the Invasion of the Saxons (449 A. D.).

1. THE southwestern shores of Britain were visited by Phœnician (*fe-nish'e-an*) and Carthaginian navigators many centuries previous to the Christian era, their chief object being to obtain a supply of tin from the extensive mines of that metal existing in the island. This is thought by some to be the origin of the name *Britannia*, or *Britain*, supposed to mean the "Land of Tin."* The more ancient name of the island was *Albion*, or the *White Isle*, from the chalk cliffs on its southern shore. [*Note 1, end of Sec.*]

* Or, according to some, from the Celtic *brith*, or *brtt*, meaning *painted*; as the Britons were in the habit of painting or staining their bodies.

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Progressive Map, No. 1.) Into what five provinces were the Roman possessions divided? Where was *Britan'nia Pri'ma*? *Britanni Secunda*? *Fla'via Cæsarien'sis*? *Max'ima Cæsariensis*? *Valen'tia*? What was the northern part of the island called? Where was the country of the Cantii (*kan'she-i*)? Of the Damno'ni? Of the Belgæ? Of the Ice'ni? Of the Silu'res? Of the Corita'ni? Of the Brigan'tes? Where was *Londin'ium (London)*? *Ebor'acum (York)*? *A'quæ So'lis (Bath)*? *Ander'ida (Pew'ensey)*? *Lindum (Lincoln)*? *Ita'tæ (Leicester)*? *Verula'mum (St. Albans)*? What island near the southern shore of Britain? What islands between Britain and *Hibernia (Ireland)*? Where did Cæsar land? Where was the wall of Agricola? Of Adrian?

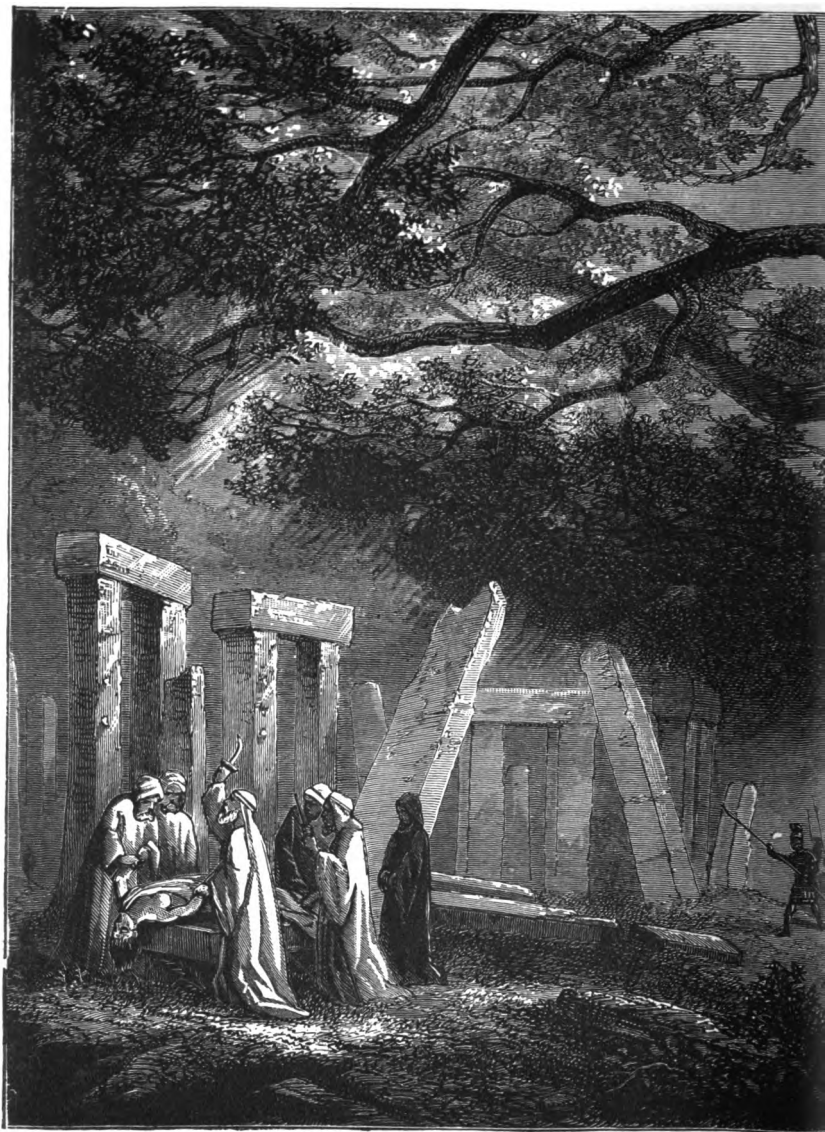
1. By whom was Britain visited? When? For what purpose? What is the origin of the name *Britain*? What more ancient name, and whence derived?

2. Its authentic history commences with the invasion by Julius Cæsar (55 B. C.), who, having made a conquest of Gaul, determined to carry his victorious arms against the bold islanders who had given important aid to his enemies, the Gauls. Accordingly, he crossed the channel, and with great difficulty effected a landing on the south-eastern shore (at Deal), being vigorously opposed by the Britons, who had assembled in large numbers to repel the invaders of their country. Roman skill and discipline, however, prevailed; and Cæsar, having gained a great victory over the rude forces of the Britons, made a temporary peace with them, and returned to Gaul. [*Notes 2 and 3.*]

3. In the spring of the next year, he made a second expedition to Britain with a fleet of eight hundred ships, carrying thither an army of more than 20,000 men. He landed at the same place as before, and marched into the country, being obstinately opposed by a British chieftain named Cas-wall'on (called by the Romans *Cas-si-ve-laun'us*), whom, however, he defeated in every battle. After he had penetrated into the country beyond the Thames, the Britons sued for peace, which Cæsar, wishing to return, granted on condition that a tribute should be paid to Rome. Notwithstanding his many victories, Cæsar on his departure had made no permanent conquest of any part of the island; and almost a century elapsed before any other attempt was made by the Romans to subdue it.

4. **Manners, Customs, &c., of the Britons.** The inhabitants of Britain had made at this time but little advancement in civilization; but the southeastern tribes were much superior in this respect to those of the other parts. They practised tillage with a certain rude skill, and built round huts of timber and reeds, resting on foundations of stone, and covered with a conical roof, in

-
2. How and when does its authentic history begin? Describe Cæsar's invasion.
3. Describe the second invasion by Cæsar. What was the result of these invasions? When did the Romans renew the attempt at conquest?
4. What is said of the ancient Britons? Their habitations? Their clothing?



DRUIDS' LAST SACRIFICE. (See Note 6, end of Section.)

the centre of which was an aperture for the passage of smoke. Their habitations were frequently changed, either in hope of plunder, or in quest of better pasture for their flocks and herds. They wore very little clothing, notwithstanding the coldness of the climate, but painted or tattooed their bodies, using for the purpose a plant called *woad*, which yields a juice of a blue color.

5. Their arms consisted of a shield and javelins, and a sword. Their forces were mostly on foot; but they also fought on horseback, and in chariots with scythes and hooks affixed to the axles; and these they managed with wonderful dexterity. Their religion was a terrible superstition called *Druidism*; the priests, called *Druids*, being not only the ministers of religion, but judges, physicians, and teachers. They worshipped the sun and moon, fire, the serpent, and many other false deities; and among the rites which they practised, human sacrifice was quite frequent; immense figures, or cages, formed of osiers, being often filled with human beings, and then set on fire. The Druids were accustomed to live in caverns or amid the gloom of deep forests; and their veneration for the oak and mistletoe was quite remarkable. [See Note 5.]

6. One class of the Druids, called *Bards*, were poets and musicians. These attended the chieftains in their halls, and sang their praises; and in battle they cheered on their countrymen by their music on the harp. The various tribes of the Britons were each governed by a chieftain, but in times of great danger, they united for self-defence, and selected a commander-in-chief. At other times jealousies and animosities among neighboring tribes occasioned continual contests, so that war was the principal occupation, and military glory the chief object of ambition among all the people.

5. What arms did they use? How did they fight? What was their religion? What is said of the Druids?

6. What is said of the Bards? How were the Britons governed? What was their chief employment?

7. Renewed attempts of the Romans to Conquer the Britons. The civil wars in which the Romans were so long engaged prevented them from enforcing a fulfillment of the treaty which the vanquished Britons had made to Cæsar. It was contrary to the policy of Augustus to extend the territorial domain of the empire, and the same policy was observed by his immediate successors. Meanwhile, the Britons kept up their intercourse with Rome, sending some of their young men thither to be educated; and by this means improved their manners and habits. At length, the Emperor Claudius, instigated by a British exile, determined to undertake their subjugation (43 A. D.).

8. Accordingly, a considerable army was sent to Britain, under the command of Au'lus Plantius (*plau'she-us*); and although the Britons fought bravely for their liberty, they were defeated in many battles; so that when Claudius himself arrived, several of the tribes in the southeastern part of the island made submission to him. The other Britons, however, under a brave leader named Car'adoc, or Carac'tacus, still held out; until being defeated by a Roman general named Osto'rius, Caractacus was made a prisoner and carried to Rome (A. D. 51). His noble bearing, and the magnanimity which he displayed, excited the respect of his conquerors, and he was set at liberty.

9. Many of the western tribes still maintained a stubborn resistance, and for years baffled all the efforts of the invaders. In the reign of Nero, Suetonius (*sue-to'ne-us*) received the command of the Roman legion in Britain (A. D. 59); and finding that the hostility of the Britons was sustained through the influence of the Druids, he succeeded in reducing the island of Ang'lesey, which was their chief place of residence. Their altars were over-

7. Why was the conquest of Britain not prosecuted? What intercourse was established? When and by whom was the conquest resumed?

8. What was done by Plantius? What is said of Caractacus?

9. What was accomplished by Suetonius?

turned, their sacred groves leveled with the ground, and many of the priests and priestesses were either massacred, or consumed in the flames of their burning shrines.*

10. Meanwhile, the Britons of the eastern counties, exasperated by the wicked and tyrannical conduct of the Roman governor, revolted; and, led by their brave queen Boadicea (*bo-ah-dis'e-ah*),† who, with her daughters, had been treated in the most ignominious manner, attacked and destroyed many of the Roman settlements. The principal of these was London, which Suetonius was compelled to abandon to the fury of its British assailants, by whom it was reduced to ashes. More than 70,000 Romans are said to have been slain by Boadicea's army. Defeated, however, after a long and fierce battle, by Suetonius, she terminated her life by taking poison (A. D. 62).

11. Several other generals were successively sent to Britain to carry on the work of subjugation; but it was not until Julius Agric'ola obtained the command (A. D. 78) that the Roman dominion was finally established in the island (A. D. 85). This able and excellent man, during the six years of his administration, sought to make the Roman yoke easy to the conquered people. He encouraged agriculture, introduced the arts and sciences, as well as the study of the Latin language, improved the government, and thus gave to the rude Britons the benefit of Roman civilization. He extended his sway into the northern part of the island, called *Caledo'nia*, which was inhabited by a wild and very warlike people, over whom Agricola gained a great victory near the Gram'pian Hills.

12. The Caledonians, although defeated, were by no means subdued; and for many years afterward, continued to harass the Britons and their governors, having de-

* See Note 6, end of the Section.

† See Note 7.

10. What is said of Boadicea?

11. What was effected by Agricola? In what way? How far did his conquests extend? Where was Caledonia?

12. What is further said of the Caledonians? What walls were built? With what effect?

stroyed the fortifications (between the Forth and Clyde) which Agricola had erected to prevent their incursions. The emperor Adrian, after ineffectual efforts to subdue them, constructed an earthen rampart between the Tyne River and Solway Frith (A. D. 121). This was afterward called the "Picts' Wall," and considerable remains of it still exist. During the reign of his successor, Antoninus, the continued attacks of the northern tribes necessitated the construction of another chain of fortifications extending between the friths of Forth and Clyde (A. D. 140). Subsequently, the emperor Severus, after pursuing these fierce barbarians to their northern wilds, made a treaty with them; and on his return, constructed a solid wall of stone twelve feet high, along the line of Adrian's fortifications (A. D. 208). For more than seventy years after this, Britain remained comparatively undisturbed.

13. In the latter part of the third century, the eastern coasts were so much harassed by the attacks of Saxon pirates that the emperor Diocletian appointed a special officer to protect this part of the province. Carausius (*ca-rau'she-us*), who received this appointment, disowned his allegiance, and making an alliance with the Saxons, asserted for himself supreme authority in Britain (A. D. 286). He was, a few years afterward, assassinated, by his own officer, who in turn usurped the supreme power, but was defeated by the emperor Constantius (*con-stan'she-us*) (A. D. 296). This emperor died in York (A. D. 306); and there his son, Constantine the Great, was saluted emperor. This illustrious monarch was the son of a British princess, whom Constantius had married.

14. Under Constantine and his immediate successors, Britain enjoyed many years of tranquillity; the incursions of the barbarians were repressed, and commerce and the

13. What is said of Carausius? Of Constantius? Of Constantine?

14. What was the condition of Britain under Constantine and his successors? What is said of the Scots and Picts?

arts of peace were encouraged. But the northern tribes, now under the name of *Scots* and *Picts*, soon renewed their ravages. The former appear to have been a wild race from Ireland, which island for centuries bore the name of *Scotia*; while the *Picts* were probably a Caledonian tribe of British origin. During the reign of Valentinian I., these savage hordes penetrated as far as London, but were driven back by Theodosius, father of the great emperor of the same name (A. D. 368).

15. During the subsequent reigns, the *Scots* and *Picts*, although often vanquished by the Roman legions, continued to be a terror to the Britons, whose distresses were greatly increased by the withdrawal of the Roman armies, under Honorius, by whom they were needed to protect his dominions against the Goths. Some temporary assistance was supplied by Stilicho (*stil'e-ko*) (396 A. D.); and, at the earnest entreaty of the Britons, the island was once more visited by a Roman army (418 A. D.), on the occasion of a new inroad of the *Scots* and *Picts*. They, however, remained only long enough to repel the enemy, when the Romans took their final leave, after repairing the fortresses, and instructing the inhabitants in the means necessary for their defense.

16. Notwithstanding this, the Britons soon found themselves entirely unable to repel the incursions of the *Scots* and *Picts*, who took advantage of their unprotected state, and burnt and plundered worse than at any previous time. The attacks of the Saxons also added to their embarrassment and misery. In 446, the unhappy Britons made a most piteous appeal to their former conquerors to send them aid. They addressed a letter to the Roman patrician Aëtius (*a-e'she-us*), recounting their distresses, and bearing the inscription "the Groans of the Britons."

15. What other invasions were made by them? Why did the Romans leave Britain? Give an account of their last visit.

16. Describe the distresses of the Britons. What appeal did they make to the Romans?

"The barbarians," they said, "on the one hand chase us into the sea; the sea on the other throws us back upon the barbarians; and we have only the hard choice left us of perishing by the sword or by the waves."

17. Aëtius was, however, too much pressed by the Huns, under their terrific leader At'tila, to be able to afford them any aid; and, at length, in desperation, they formed an alliance with the piratical Saxons in order to repel their other enemies, the Scots and Picts, being guided, it is said, by the counsels of a powerful British prince, named Vor'ti-gern. The Saxon forces, under their leaders, Hen'ghist and Hor'sa, two brothers, landed on the island of Than'et, in accordance with this invitation, having readily agreed to the terms proposed by the Britons (A. D. 449). This event marks the close of Roman influence in the island, and the commencement of that of the Saxons.

18. Progress of Civilization. On the departure of the Romans, five centuries had elapsed since the landing of Cæsar, during about four of which a large part of the island had been under Roman dominion, and had assumed a condition of considerable prosperity. Agriculture and the useful arts had made so much progress, that considerable quantities of grain were exported to the other provinces of the empire, and British builders and artisans were in request on the continent. Roman towns, light-houses, roads, and bridges continued to exist for some time; and in many of the towns there were theatres, temples, and palaces. On the site of Westminster Abbey stood a temple of Apollo, and on that of St. Paul's Cathedral, a temple of Diana.

19. The country was not, however, completely Romanized; the people continued to speak their own language;

17. What did they at last do? What was done by the Saxons? What does this event mark?

18. How long was Britain in the possession of the Romans? What changes took place?

19. Describe the people. How was the country divided?

and while the conquerors and their descendants occupied the towns, they alone possessing municipal privileges, the natives were generally peasants, occupying a rank in society but little above that of serfs. The country was divided into five provinces, each having its own ruler, and the whole was under the government of a *Vica'rius*, or Deputy, who resided at *Eb-or'a-cum* (York).

20. Christianity was introduced into Britain at an early period, probably during the second half of the second century. During the reign of Diocle'tian (-*she-an*), the British Christians suffered a severe persecution. The churches were razed, and many of the worshippers suffered torture and death,—among them, the proto-martyr St. Al'ban, long celebrated both in his own country and abroad. The Bible had been translated into the British tongue, and many of the ecclesiastics gained great fame for their learning and piety. The British Christians were represented in the Council at Arles (*arl*) by three bishops (A. D. 314); so that it is evident that Christianity had even then made considerable progress in the island.

20. When and how was Christianity introduced? What persecutions were suffered? What is said of St. Alban? What further of the British Christians?

NOTES.

1. First Glimpses of Britain (p. 13, ¶ 1).—"Tin was the attractive thing which drew the first thin rills of civilization to our islands. Some stray Phœnician sailors, not improbably from Gades (Cadiz), on the Iberian coast, beating aimlessly about among the Biscay waves, saw, perhaps through clearing mist, shifting glimpses of a white shore, upon which they found abundance of this precious metal to be had almost for the picking up. Tin was really a precious metal then. The Homeric warriors had fought with weapons of bronze; and for many centuries, until the art of tempering iron had reached some degree of forwardness, swords and spear-heads of mingled copper and tin continued to decide the battles of the ancient world. Temples too were adorned with bronze; statues and urns were moulded of it. Useful alike in peace and war, tin was much sought, and well paid for. We can therefore well understand the joy with which the restless money-seeking traders of Tyre and Carthage would learn the secret of these distant islands and their mines, and the jealous caution with which the cunning old monopolists would conceal their approaches to the mysterious treasure-house."—*Collier's History of England*.

2. Why Cæsar Invaded Britain (p. 14, ¶ 2).—"From the close connection between the insular Celts and the Celts of the continent, especially the maritime cantons, it may readily be conceived that they had at least sympathized with the national resistance; and if they did not grant armed assistance to the patriots, they gave at any rate an honorable asylum in their sea-protected isle to every one who was no longer safe in his native land. This certainly involved a danger, if not for the present, at any rate for the future; it seemed judicious, if not to undertake the conquest of the island itself, at any rate to conduct there also defensive operations by offensive means, and to show the islanders by a landing on the coast that the arm of the Romans reached even across the Channel."—*Mommsen's History of Rome*.

3. Cæsar's Departure from Britain (p. 14, ¶ 2).—"Cæsar, after various fortunes, carried back his soldiers in the same year (a. c. 55) to Gaul. He set sail by night, in fear, he says, of the equinoctial gales. He left no body of men behind him—he erected no fortress. It is probable that he took back captives to adorn his triumph. But the Romans, with all their national pride, did not hold Cæsar's expedition to be a conquest. Tacitus says, 'He did not conquer Britain, but only showed it to the Romans.' Horace, calling upon Augustus to achieve the conquest, speaks of Britain as 'intactus' (untouched); and Propertius, in the same spirit, describes her as 'invictus' (unconquered)."—*Knight's Old England*.

4. The Britons' Mode of Warfare (p. 15, ¶ 5).—"The dexterity of the islanders in the management of their destructive vehicles is mentioned by ancient writers in terms of the highest commendation. They could stop the horses at full speed with the greatest ease, even on the declivity of steep hills, and immediately guide and turn them; they could run along the pole, rest on the yoke, and thence, with surprising agility, return to their seats. They drove their chariots with great fury among the thickest ranks of the enemy, diffusing terror and confusion around them; and when they engaged the horse, they leaped from these machines and fought on foot; their charioteers in the mean time retiring, and posting themselves in such a station that, if their masters were in danger of being overpowered by numbers, they might effect a speedy retreat to their chariots. By this mode of com-

bat, says Cæsar, they blended the speed of cavalry with the steadiness of infantry."—*Camden's Imperial History of England*.

5. The Druids (p. 15, ¶ 5).—"It is universally agreed that the Druids derived their name from that superstitious reverence they paid to oaks—*deru*, in the British language, signifying an oak. They were composed of the highest orders of the people—the commonalty, for obvious reasons, being excluded from the arcana of their political system, whereby a strict alliance was formed between the church and state; and this union rendered them awful to the people, and necessary to those who were placed in elevated stations by birth, education, or employment. Their hair they wore short, but their beards very long. In their hands they carried a wand; and an encased ornament, called the *Druid's egg*, was hung about the neck. Their garments, a kind of loose gowns, reached down to the ground; but when engaged in religious ceremonies they always wore a surplice. The Isle of Anglesey was their chief seat of residence, where they had their principal seminary, and held an annual meeting of the states. Such was the reputation of this seat of the muses, that the children of the Gauls were sent for education thither."—*Spencer*.

6. Druidical Remains (p. 16, ¶ 9).—"The most remarkable monument of antiquity in our island, if we take into account its comparative preservation, as well as its grandeur, is Stonehenge, on Salisbury Plain, the chief temple and seat of justice of the Druids. It originally consisted of an outer circle of thirty stones, fourteen feet high, and upon the tops of them was carried throughout a continuous impost of large flat stones of the same width. An inner circle, enclosing a diameter of eighty-three feet, appears to have consisted of much smaller stones, without mposts, but about the same in number as the outer circle. Within the second circle were five distinct erections, each consisting of two very large stones with an impost, with three smaller stones in advance of each; these have been called the *trilithons*. The circles were called 'doom rings,' or circles of judgment; the flat stones of the interior were the 'cromlechs,' or altars on which the victims were sacrificed. They are great stone scaffolds, raised just high enough for such horrid exhibitions, and just large enough in all their proportions, and so contrived as to render the whole visible to the greatest multitude of people. The officiating priest, pouring a libation upon a man as a victim, smote him upon the breast, near the throat: and on his falling, both from the manner of his fall, and from the convulsions of his limbs, and still more from the flowing of his blood, they presaged what would come to pass. The rocking-stones, or 'tolmans,' masses of granite or sandstone, often weighing more than six or seven hundred tons, which are so exquisitely poised that they can be moved by the touch of a finger, were other great adjuncts to the system of terror and superstition by which the Druids maintained their influence; they sought to appal and govern the popular mind by imparting a more than natural grandeur to some great work of nature, by connecting it with some effort of ingenuity which was under the direction of their rude science."—*Knight's Old England*.

7. Boadicea (p. 17, ¶ 10).—"She was of the largest size, most terrible of aspect, most savage of countenance, and harsh of voice; having a profusion of yellow hair, which fell down to her hips, and wearing a large golden collar. She had on a party-colored floating vest, drawn close about her bosom, and over this she wore a thick mantle, connected by a clasp. Such was her usual dress, but at this time she also bore a spear, that she might appear more formidable to all."—*Monumenta Historica Britannica*.

SECTION II.

BRITAIN UNDER THE SAXONS.

Extending from the Landing of Henghist and Horsa (A. D. 449) to the Union of the Saxon Kingdoms under Egbert (A. D. 827).

1. With the aid of the Saxons under Henghist and Horsa, the Britons were enabled to drive back the Scots and Picts; and in return for the services thus rendered, the brothers were allowed to settle, with their companions, on the Isle of Thanet,* where they were soon joined by others of their countrymen, whom they invited over. It is said that a beautiful daughter of Henghist, Rowe'na by name, captivated the British king, Vort'igern, and that, becoming his bride, she persuaded him to give up to her countrymen the whole of Kent. Whether this be true or not, it is certain that the Saxons soon began to encroach upon the lands of the Britons, and that their numbers were constantly augmented by new accessions from Germany.

2. Fierce battles were fought between the forces of Henghist and Horsa and the Britons; in one of which Horsa was slain (A. D. 455). The Saxons were, however, generally victorious, and finally succeeded in completely securing their possessions in Kent, which thus became the first Saxon kingdom founded in the island. It remained a powerful state for more than a century afterward.

* See Note 1, end of the Section.

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Progressive Map, No. 2.) Where were the settlements of the South Saxons? Of the West Saxons? Of the East Saxons? Of the Middle Saxons? Where was Kent? Where were the East Angles? How divided? Where were the Middle Angles? Where was Mercia? Northumbria? Why so called? (*Ans.*—Because north of the Humber River.) How divided? Where was Damnonia, or West Wales? North Wales? Cumbria? Strath Clyde? Where was the country of the Picts? Of the Scots? Thanet Island? Wight?

1. What was done with the aid of the Saxons? How were they rewarded? What legend is mentioned? What was the fact?

2. What battles were fought? With what result? Which was the first Saxon kingdom?

Progressive Map, No. 2



3. In the mean time, other bodies of Saxons arrived and settled in different parts of the island. Among these a kindred race, called *Angles*, came over, also from Germany, and made their home in such territories as they could wrest from the native inhabitants. They seem to have been a more numerous and energetic people even than the Saxons, as they occupied larger districts, and at length gave their name to the whole country. [See Note 2.]

4. By these invasions the following states were formed: 1. Kent; 2. Sussex, or the South Saxons; 3. Wessex, or the West Saxons; 4. Essex, or the East Saxons, including Middlesex, or the Middle Saxons; 5. East Anglia, formed by Angles, originally consisting of two tribes, *North-folk* and *South-folk* (hence, *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*); 6. *Northumbria*, that is, the country north of the Humber River, which at first consisted of two states, called in Latin *De-i'ra* and *Bernicia*; 7. *Mercia*, or the *March*, or boundary, being situated on the border of Deira and East Anglia. It was conquered by Anglian chieftains in the seventh century (A. D. 626). These seven states constituted what is known in history as the *Saxon Heptarchy*; although the number of independent Saxon kingdoms was at no time exactly seven. [See Note 3.]

5. The different Saxon kingdoms of the Heptarchy were almost incessantly engaged in fierce wars with one another. Their common enemies, the British, or *Welsh*, as they called them (meaning in their language *foreigners*), and the Scots, obliged them, however, to form some kind of alliance, and they usually acknowledged the sovereign of one of the states, supreme commander, or as they called him, *Bret'wal-da*, that is, *Britain-wielder*. Several of the Saxon monarchs held this office and title, the most dis-

3. What other settlers arrived? What is said of the Angles?

4. What states were formed? What is said of East Anglia? Northumbria? Mercia? When and by whom was this state conquered? What did they constitute?

5. In what were they engaged? Why did they form an alliance? What is meant by *Bretwalda*? By whom was this office held?

tinguished of whom was Eth'elbert, King of Kent, who was Bretwalda for about fifty years.

6. During the period of these encroachments, comprehending about a century and a half, the British or Welsh made a stubborn but ineffectual resistance, and were driven into the western parts of the island, and formed several small states. In the southwest lay *Damno'nia*, or *West Wales*, founded by the famous King Arthur, whose exploits in connection with the legendary "Knights of the Round Table," have been so widely celebrated in poetry and song. In *Cambria*, or *Wales*, were several other states, and still others (*Cum'bria* and *Strath Clyde*) in the mountainous region to the north of Wales, so distinguished for its picturesque beauty. Others of the Britons crossed the Channel, and settled in Armor'ica, called afterward *Bre-tagne'*, or *Brit'tany*. Still others probably remained interspersed among their conquerors in the condition of serfs. [See Note 4, end of the Section.]

7. These conquering Saxons and Angles, intermingled with whom were a people from Denmark, called *Jutes*, were at first pagan barbarians. The names of the days of the week still commemorate the deities which they adored. Thus Sunday and Monday (*Sunnandaeg* and *Monandaeg*) were the days sacred to the sun and moon; Tuesday, to *Tuisco*; Wednesday (*Wodensdaeg*), to Woden, or Odin, the god of war; Thursday, to *Thor*, the Thunderer, corresponding to Jupiter, among the Romans; Friday (*Frey-alaeg*), to Freya, the northern Venus; and Saturday, to *Seator*, a marine deity. They believed in the immortality of the soul, and indulged in the hope of a heaven, the chief delight of which was to intoxicate themselves with ale drunk from the skulls of their enemies slain in battle.

6. What became of the Welsh? What and where was *Damnonia*? By whom was it founded? What other Welsh states were there? What and where was Brittany?

7. What was the character of the Saxons, Angles, and Jutes? What do the names of the days of the week commemorate? What belief did these people entertain?

8. They possessed the most terrific courage and energy. No perils, however great, and no difficulties, however apparently insurmountable, were able to check their activity in any enterprise which they had undertaken. They trusted themselves in their rude and frail barks, without a compass, to the mercy of the winds and waves of the stormy ocean, fearless of shipwreck, eager to purchase booty at the peril of their lives. In the words of an old writer, "the storm is their protection when they are pursued by the enemy, and a cover for their operations when they meditate an attack. Before they quit their own shores, they devote to the altars of their gods the tenth part of the principal captives; and when they are on the point of returning, the lots are cast with an affectation of equity, and the impious vow is fulfilled."

9. Such was the character of the barbarous Saxons on their first invasion of Britain, but in the course of years it became greatly modified and softened. Christianity was first preached in the kingdom of Kent (A. D. 597), by St. Augustine, a Roman monk commissioned for the purpose by Pope Gregory the Great, who, it is said, was induced to do this by seeing some Anglian youths of remarkable beauty exposed for sale in the market-place of Rome. Struck with their fair complexion and blooming countenances, he inquired who they were; and being informed they were *Angles*, he remarked they might have been called *Angels* if they had been Christians; and some time afterward he resolved to undertake the conversion of a people whose name and personal appearance were so interesting.*

10. St. Augustine was very kindly received by Ethelbert, King of Kent, who was already favorably disposed toward Christianity, having married a Christian princess;

* See Note 5, end of the Section.

8. What else is said of the character of the Saxons?

9. How was this character softened? When and by whom was Christianity first preached? What circumstance led to this?

10. Give an account of St. Augustine's mission and its results. What kingdoms embraced Christianity?

and the king becoming converted and being baptized (A. D. 597), great numbers followed his example. St. Augustine was made Archbishop of Canterbury; and soon afterward succeeded in introducing Christianity in Essex also, where a church dedicated to St. Paul was erected on the site of a temple of Diana, and one to St. Peter on a small island in the Thames. The latter is now Westminster Abbey. The other kingdoms, one after the other, also embraced the same faith.

11. The history of the various Saxon kingdoms which constituted the Heptarchy presents but little more than a continued scene of perfidy, treason, and murder. At last Egbert, King of Wessex, a descendant of Cerdic, the founder of that kingdom, triumphed over all his competitors, and obtained the control of the entire country (A. D. 827), to which was given the name of ENGLAND (*Engla-land*, i. e., *Land of the Angles*). [See Note 6.]

12. Two distinguished scholars flourished during the period of the Heptarchy;—*Bede* and *Alcuin* (*al'kwīn*). The former, styled the "Venerable Bede," was educated in a monastery on the banks of the Tyne River, and is said to have been versed in all the learning that had survived the destruction of the Roman Empire. His chief literary work was the "Ecclesiastical History of the Angles." He died in the year 733. Alcuin was a native of York; and he acquired so extensive a reputation for learning, that students flocked to him from different parts of Europe. He was afterward invited to the court of Charlemagne (*shar'le-mahn*), where he spent the greater part of his life. His writings, which were in Latin, consisted chiefly of poems, scientific and theological essays, and letters to the distinguished personages of the age.

11. What is said of the history of these kingdoms? Which finally obtained the predominance? What is the origin of the name *England*?

12. What distinguished scholars flourished during this period? What is said of Bede? Of Alcuin?

13. The first Anglo-Saxon writer of note who composed in his own language, was Cædmon (*ked'mon*), whose works were poems on the Bible histories, and on other religious subjects. Many portions are still extant, and indicate considerable poetic genius and imagination. Cædmon died about 680. The first British historian was Gildas, born at Dumbarton about the beginning of the sixth century. He wrote during the time of the Saxon invasions, and in his "History of the Britons" fiercely inveighs against the barbarous invaders of his country. This work is written in Latin.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Give an account of Caesar's two invasions of Britain.....	14
2. Of the Britons at that time, their customs and religion.....	14-15
3. Of the previous inhabitants of Britain.....	9-11
4. State all you can of Druidism and the Druids.....	15-17
5. Of the invasion of Britain during the reign of Claudius.....	16
6. Give the history of Queen Boadicea.....	16-17
7. Who was Julius Agricola, and what did he accomplish?.....	17
8. Give the early history of the Caledonians.....	7, 17, 18
9. State the circumstances in the career of Carausius.....	13
10. Give all the facts stated in relation to Constantine the Great.....	18-19
11. Give the early history of the Scots and Picts.....	17-20, 22
12. How was the Roman power in Britain brought to a close?.....	19-20
13. Give the entire history of Britain as connected with that of the Romans.....	14, 16-20
14. Describe the progress of civilization among the Britons.....	20-21
15. Give the early history of Britain as connected with that of the Saxons.....	18-20, 22
16. What states were known as the Saxon Heptarchy?.....	23
17. Give the early history of the Welsh.....	7-8, 23-24
18. What can you state of the early history of Ireland?.....	8
19. What account can you give of the Angles?.....	23-26
20. Of the Jutes?.....	26
21. Who was St. Augustine, and what did he accomplish?.....	25-26
22. State what you can of Ethelbert, king of Kent.....	24-26
23. Of Bede.....26. 24. Alcuin.....26. 25. Cædmon.....27. 26. Gildas.....	27

TOPICAL REVIEW.

[The numbers are those of the pages in the text which relate to the topics referred to ; the letter *n* refers to a note upon the same subject.]

NARRATIVE.

<i>When did the event occur ?</i>	
<i>What circumstances or events led to it ?</i>	
<i>What resulted therefrom ?</i>	
Invasion of Britain by Cæsar.....	14, <i>n</i> 2
Roman Conquest of Britain.....	16
Defeat of Caractacus.....	16
Defeat of Boadicea.....	17
Invasion of Caledonia.....	17
Construction of the northern walls..	18
Invasion of Britain by the Saxons..	19
"Groans of the Britons".....	19
Introduction of Christianity into Britain.....	21
Persecution of the Christians.....	21
Martyrdom of St. Alban.....	21
Council at Arles.....	21
Settlement of the Saxons in Britain..	22, <i>n</i> 2
Foundation of the Kingdom of Kent	22
Invasion by the Angles.....	23
Formation of the Saxon Heptarchy..	23, <i>n</i> 3
Introduction of Christianity among the Saxons.....	25, 26, <i>n</i> 5

BIOGRAPHICAL.

<i>Who were they ?</i>	
<i>With what events were they connected ?</i>	
<i>Other incidents of their lives ?</i>	
Julius Cæsar.....	14, <i>n</i> 3
Caswallon.....	14
Aulus Plautius.....	16
Caradoc, or Caractacus.....	16
Suetonius.....	16
Boadicea.....	17, <i>n</i> 7
Julius Agricola.....	17
Carausius.....	18
Constantine, Emperor.....	18
Aetius.....	19
Attila.....	20

Vortigern.....	20-22
Henghist.....	20-22, <i>n</i> 1
Horsa.....	20-22
St. Alban.....	21
Rowena.....	22
Ethelbert, of Kent.....	24, 25
King Arthur.....	24, <i>n</i> 4
St. Augustine.....	25, 26
Pope Gregory.....	25
Egbert of Wessex.....	26, <i>n</i> 6
Bede.....	26
Alcuin.....	26
Cædmon.....	27
Gildas.....	27

GEOGRAPHICAL.

<i>Where were they situated ?</i>	
<i>With what events were they connected ?</i>	
Britain, or Britannia.....	13, <i>n</i> 1
Gaul.....	14
Anglesey.....	16
Caledonia.....	17
Scotia.....	19
Thanet Island.....	20-22
Eboracum (York).....	21
Kent.....	22
Sussex.....	23
Wessex.....	23
Essex.....	23
Middlesex.....	23
East Anglia.....	23
Norfolk.....	23
Suffolk.....	23
Northumbria.....	23
Deira.....	23
Bernicia.....	23
Damnonia.....	24
Cambria.....	24
Cumbria.....	24
Strath Clyde.....	24
Armorica.....	24

TOPICAL REVIEW.

ETHNOLOGICAL, ETC.

Who were they?

What were their characteristics?

What were their manners and customs?

The Britons.....	14, 15, n 4
The Druids.....	15, n 5, n 6
The Bards.....	15
The Saxons.....	18, 19, 24, 25
The Scots and Picts.....	19
The Angles.....	23
The Welsh.....	23, 24
The Jutes.....	24

ETYMOLOGICAL.

From what is the word derived?

What is its literal meaning?

Strath.....	9
Pen.....	9
Ben.....	9
Stratton.....	9
Jersey.....	9
Alfred.....	9
Egbert.....	9

Bertha.....	9
Albert.....	9
Elgiva.....	9
Ethelwolf.....	9
Ethelred.....	9
Atheling.....	9
Athelstan.....	9
Edmund.....	9
Edward.....	9
Edwin.....	9
Britain.....	13
Albion.....	13
Norfolk.....	23
Suffolk.....	23
Northumbria.....	23
Bretwalda.....	23
Sunday.....	24
Monday.....	24
Tuesday.....	24
Wednesday.....	24
Thursday.....	24
Friday.....	24
Saturday.....	24
England.....	26

BLACKBOARD EXERCISE.

<i>Periods.</i>	<i>Noted Personages.</i>	<i>Leading Events.</i>
LEGENDARY.	- Brutus. - Lear. - Bladud. - Lud. - Cymbeline.	- Building of New Troy, afterwards London. - Founding of Bath.
ROMAN.	- Caswallon. - Caradoc. - Boadicea. - Henghist and Horsa.	- Invasion by Cæsar. - Conquest of Britain. - Revolts against the Romans. - Incursions of the Scots and Picts. - Invasion by the Saxons.
SAXON.	- Egbert. - Alfred the Great. - St. Dunstan. - Sweyn. - Canute. - Harold. - William the Norman.	- Saxon Conquest. - Founding of the Heptarchy. - Danish Incursions. - Norman Conquest.

NOTES.

1. Landing of Henghist at Thanet (p. 22, ¶ 1).—"It is with the landing of Henghist and his war band at Ebbasfleet, on the shores of the isle of Thanet, that English history begins. No spot in Britain can be so sacred to Englishmen as that which first felt the tread of English feet. There is little indeed to catch the eye in Ebbasfleet itself, a mere lift of higher ground, with a few gray cottages dotted over it, cut off nowadays from the sea by a reclaimed meadow and a sea-wall. But taken as a whole, the scene has a wild beauty of its own. To the right, the white curve of Ramsgate cliffs looks down on the crescent of Pegwell Bay; far away to the left, across gray marsh levels, where smoke-wreaths mark the sites of Richborough and Sandwich, rises the dim cliff-line of Deal. Everything in the character of the spot confirms the national tradition which fixed here the first landing-place of our English fathers, for great as the physical changes of the country have been since the fifth century, they have told little on its main features."—*Green—A Short History of the English People.*

2. Ravages of the Saxons (p. 23, ¶ 3).—"In the year of grace 462, the Saxons bound King Vortigern and threatened him with death, unless he gave up his towns and places of defence, to save his life. He granted them whatever they demanded, in order to obtain his life and freedom. After exacting an oath from him, they let him go. They first took possession of London, and then successively of York, Lincoln, and Winchester, committing in the meanwhile great devastations. They fell on the natives in every quarter, like wolves on sheep forsaken by their shepherds; the churches and all the ecclesiastical buildings they leveled with the ground; the priests they slew at the altars; the holy Scriptures they burned with fire; the tombs of the holy martyrs they covered with mounds of earth; the clergy who escaped the slaughter fled with the relics of the saints to the caves and recesses of the earth, to the woods and deserts, and the crags of the mountains. At the sight of such devastation, Vortigern, not knowing how to check the impious race, retired into Wales, and shut himself up in the town of Genorium."—*Roger of Wendover—Flowers of History.*

3. The Heptarchy (p. 23, ¶ 4).—"The old notion of an Heptarchy, of a regular system of seven kingdoms, united under the regular supremacy of a single overlord (or Bretwalda), is a dream which has passed away before the light of historic criticism. The English kingdoms in Britain were ever fluctuating, alike in their number and in their relations to one another. . . . Yet it is certain that, among the mass of smaller and more obscure principalities, seven kingdoms do stand out in a marked way, seven kingdoms which alone supplied candidates for the dominion of the whole island. First comes the earliest permanent Teutonic settlement in Britain, the Jutish kingdom of Kent. The direct descendants of Henghist reigned over a land which, as the nearest portion of Britain to the continent, has ever been the first to receive every foreign immigration, but which, notwithstanding, prides itself to this day on its specially Teutonic usages, which have vanished elsewhere. Besides Kent, the Jutes formed no other strictly independent state. Their only other settlement was a small principality, including the Isle of Wight and part of Hampshire, whose history is closely connected with that of the great Saxon kingdom in its immediate neighborhood, in which it was at last merged. The remainder of the English territory south of the Thames, together with a small portion to

the north of that river, formed the three kingdoms of the Saxons, the East, the South, and the West, whose names speak for themselves. Among these, Sussex and Essex fill only a secondary part in our history. . . . Very different was the destiny of the third Saxon kingdom. Wessex has grown into England, England into the United Kingdom, the United Kingdom into the British Empire."—*Freeman's History of the Norman Conquest*.

4. The Britons and King Arthur (p. 24, ¶ 6).—"In the fastnesses of Wales, on the heights of Caledonia, and on the friendly land of Amoria, are yet tracked the fugitive and ruined Britons. It is most generally conceded that they retreated to the western coasts of England, and that, often discomfited, they took their last refuge in those 'mountain heights' of Cambria. Their shadowy Arthur has left an undying name in romance, and is a nonentity in history. Whether Arthur was a mortal commander, heading some kings of Britain, or whether religion and policy were driven to the desperate effort for rallying their fugitives by a national name and 'a hope deferred,' like the Sebastian of Portugal, this far-famed chieftain could never have been a fortunate general; he displayed his invincibility but in some obscure and remote locality; he struck no terror among his enemies, for they have left his name unchronicled; nor living, have the bards distinguished his pre-eminence. 'The grave of Arthur is a mystery of the world,' exclaimed Tallessin, the great bard of the Britons. But the mortal who vanished in the cloud of conflict had never seen death; and to the last, the Britons awaited for the day of their redeemer, when Arthur should return in his immortality, accompanied by 'the Flood-King of the Deluge,' from the *Inys Avallon*, the Isle of the Mystic Apple-tree, their Eden or their Elysium. Arthur was a myth, half Christian, half Druidical. In Amoria, as in Wales, his coming was long expected, till 'Espérance brétonne' became proverbial for all chimerical hopes."—*Disraeli—Aménities of Literature*.

5. Introduction of Christianity into England (p. 25, ¶ 9).—"About eighteen or twenty years before the arrival of the Roman missionaries, in the reign of Alla, King of Deira, some young children were sent from thence to Rome to be sold. That sort of trade was then commonly done by the English, who made no scruple of selling their children when overstocked. These young slaves being exposed for sale in the public market, drew the eyes of vast numbers of people upon them, who could not admire them enough. Among the rest, Gregory, Archdeacon of Rome, beheld them very attentively. He inquired particularly after the place of their birth, and the religion there professed. As soon as he knew they were English, and born of idolatrous parents, he resolved to go and preach the gospel to that nation. Being unable from his duties in Rome (having become pope) to carry out his good intention in person, he sent those whom he thought capable of inspiring the people with a relish for the gospel. He chose for this purpose four Benedictine monks, with Austin (St. Augustine) at their head, in quality of abbot. Austin and his companions, having passed through France, arrived at the Isle of Thanet in the year of our Lord 597."—*Rapin*.

6. Egbert, King of England (p. 26, ¶ 11).—"So King Ecgbeht was Lord from the Irish Sea to the German Ocean and from the English Channel to the Frith of Forth. So it is not wonderful if, in his charters, he not only called himself King of the West-Saxons, or King of the West-Saxons and Kentishmen, but sometimes *Rex Anglorum*, or King of the English."—*Freeman—Old English for Children*.

PART II.

ENGLAND IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

SECTION I.

THE ANGLO-SAXON AND DANISH KINGS.

Extending from the Foundation of the English Monarchy under Egbert (A. D. 827) to the reign of William the Conqueror (A. D. 1066).

1. Egbert and his immediate successors styled themselves "Kings of Wessex;" since it was that kingdom which absorbed into itself all the smaller states in the south, and finally succeeded in making tributary to itself the larger kingdoms of *Mercia*, *East Anglia*, and *Northumbria*. These kingdoms continued for some time to be ruled by their own monarchs, and governed by their own laws. The sway of Egbert, however, extended over the whole of Roman Britain except Cumbria and Strathclyde; for he had waged repeated wars with the Welsh, both in North and West Wales, and defeated them in so many great battles, that nearly all submitted to his power.

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Progressive Map, No. 3.) What was the situation and boundaries of Wessex? Of Essex? Of Mercia? Of East Anglia? Of Northumbria? Of Strathclyde? Of Wales? Of West Wales? Where was Kent? Where was the country of the Picts? Of the Scots? What was the situation of Canterbury? Winchester? York? Worcester? Bath? Exeter? St. Albans? Shrewsbury? Lincoln? Berwick? Glastonbury? Athelingay? Edinburgh? Where is the Thames R.? Severn R.? Trent R.? Humber R.? Tees R.? Tyne R.? Tweed R.? Forth R.? Clyde R.? Solway Frith? Anglesey Island? Isle of Man? Isle of Wight?

1. What did Egbert and his successors style themselves? Why? How far did Egbert's sway extend?

Progressive Map, No. 3



2. But a dreadful peril now confronted his newly-founded kingdom. This was an invasion by a fierce and barbarous people called, in the English chronicles, the *Danes*. They were Northmen, inhabitants of Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, who in the previous century (787 A. D.) had commenced their ravages, landing on the coast, plundering and killing the inhabitants, laying waste their lands, and burning their habitations. England was more particularly exposed to the attacks of the Danes, and Scotland to those of the Norwegians.

3. At first, these piratical marauders only landed for booty, and when this was obtained, retired to their ships; but, during the last few years of Egbert's reign, they came as conquerors, and showed a fierce determination to settle in the lands from which they had driven the inhabitants. Thus the Anglo-Saxons were now threatened with the same calamities which their ancestors had inflicted on the wretched Britons; for the Danes of this century were similar in race and character to the Saxons three or four centuries earlier.

4. They plundered, massacred, and devastated, with the same merciless ferocity, the terrified inhabitants fleeing from them, as from the vengeance of Heaven. Their blood-red flag bore the figure of a black raven; and when, as the banner waved in the breeze, the bird seemed to flutter its wings, they hailed it as the sure harbinger of victory. Their swords and battle-axes were ponderous and formidable weapons. Egbert was at first vanquished by these fierce invaders, but subsequently gained a great victory over them, although they had formed an alliance with the revolted Welsh in Cornwall (835). The next year he died, and the government was bestowed upon his son Eth'el-wolf (836).

2. What peril confronted the new kingdom? Who were the Danes?

3. What was the object of their invasions?

4. What is said of their mode of attack? Their banner and weapons? What did Egbert accomplish? When did he die? Who was his successor?

5. Ethelwolf possessed but little of the energy and talent of his father, being more disposed to religious exercises than to the active duties of a king. He began his reign by delivering to his eldest son the provinces of Kent, Essex, and Sussex. The Danes made constant incursions during the whole of this reign, keeping the people everywhere in constant alarm; and though they were sometimes repulsed, they always succeeded in ravaging the country and carrying off the spoil. Having effected a settlement on the Isle of Thanet, they advanced against London and Canterbury, both of which places they burnt. Ethelwolf, roused by the danger, marched against them, and defeated them in a bloody battle. They, however, still maintained their settlement, but removed from Thanet to the Isle of Shep'pey, nearer London.

6. Notwithstanding these troubles, Ethelwolf went on a pilgrimage to Rome, taking with him his youngest son, Alfred, then six years old (855). He spent a year there, occupied in exercises of devotion, and distinguished himself by his acts of liberality to the church. On his return he visited Charles the Bald, of France, and married Judith, his daughter. During his absence, his eldest son had died; and Eth'el-bald, his second son, conspired with many of the nobles to exclude him from the throne. Ethelwolf, however, to avoid the calamities of a civil war, yielded to his son the western half of the kingdom. He died soon after, in 858.

7. Ethelbald and Ethelbert. On the death of his father, Ethelbald retained the western part of the kingdom, but the eastern portion was left to his brother Ethelbert. The latter, in 860, by the death of Ethelbald, became ruler over the whole; but his reign lasted only six years.

5. What was Ethelwolf's character? How did he begin his reign? What is said of the Danes?

6. Describe Ethelwolf's pilgrimage. What occurred during his absence? His death?

7. Describe the reigns of Ethelbald and Ethelbert. When did Ethelred ascend the throne? What is said of the Danes? Of Edmund? Death of Ethelred? By whom was he succeeded?

Ethelred, his brother, succeeded him (866). The continued and harassing incursions of the Danes occupied these three reigns. These invaders penetrated into the kingdom of Northumbria, seized the city of York, and then passed into Mercia, where they took up their quarters for the winter (870). Expelled thence by Ethelred, they invaded East Anglia, and seizing Edmund, its king, barbarously put him to death, for refusing to renounce his faith. On this account, Edmund was afterward canonized as a saint and martyr. Ethelred died of a wound received in a battle with the Danes, and was succeeded by his brother Alfred (871).

8. **Alfred** was only twenty-two years of age when he ascended the throne, but he had already given indications of the virtues and talents which afterward so greatly distinguished him. In several actions with the Danes, he had shown a martial skill and courage far beyond his years; and he had diligently cultivated his mind by the study of authors not only in the Anglo-Saxon, but in the Latin language. Indeed, he took so much pleasure in literary pursuits, that he undertook the government of the kingdom with regret rather than with eagerness; but the will of his father and the general voice of his countrymen forbade that he should decline it.

9. The Danes poured into the kingdom in ever-increasing numbers, and committed the most dreadful ravages. Mercia was desolated with fire and sword; and its last king, fleeing in dismay, took refuge in a Roman cloister. Alfred was constantly in arms against the enemy, in one year fighting with them, it is said, as many as eight battles. Pushed to the utmost extremity, they were glad to come to terms, and promised to settle quietly in such parts of the country as might be assigned them. But no treaties could bind them; and new swarms arriving, and their ravages being again

8. What is said of Alfred? Why did he accept the kingdom?

9. Of the further incursions of the Danes? Of the condition of Alfred

commenced, the wretched Saxons yielded to despair, some fleeing to Wales, and others quitting the island altogether. The king could therefore collect no forces to oppose the invaders (878).

10. In this dreadful extremity, Alfred displayed the true greatness of his character. Although compelled to give up all that pertains to a king, and to take refuge in a peasant's rude hut, he was far from resigning himself to indolent despair. Collecting some of his retainers, he took up a position in a marsh in Somersetshire,* secure on account of the unknown and almost inaccessible roads by which it was approached, and thence made frequent sallies upon the Danes. One of his earls, in another part of the country, was so successful, that he put the enemy to rout with great slaughter, and captured their famous red flag with the black raven, in which they so much trusted.

11. These successes again inspired the English with confidence, and they rallied around their noble king; but he would not risk an engagement with the Danes without having certain information of their numbers and condition. To obtain this knowledge, he, in the disguise of a *glee-man*, or harper, entered the Danish camp, and passed unsuspected through every part of it, being introduced to the Danish prince *Guth'rum*, whom he greatly entertained with his songs and merry jokes. Soon after this, he made a vigorous attack upon the enemy, and so signally routed them that Guthrum was glad to accept any terms of peace.

12. Alfred not only gave them their lives, but formed a plan for converting them into useful subjects. East Anglia and Northumbria being laid waste by the ravages of their countrymen, he proposed to Guthrum and his followers to

* At a place called by Alfred *Athelingay*, or the *Ile of Nobles*; now *Athelney*.

10. What course did he pursue? What defeat did the Danes suffer?

11. How did Alfred discover the enemy's condition? What was the result?

12. What terms did Alfred grant to the conquered Danes? What region was called Danelagh?

form permanent settlements there, thinking that in this way he should erect a rampart against other incursions. The proposal was accepted, and Guthrum, with several of his officers, was admitted to baptism,—Alfred having insisted that they should declare themselves Christians, as a pledge of their submission (878). He afterward ceded the eastern part of Mercia to them, and these districts continued to form a Danish state (called *Danelagh*) for many years afterward, its chief boundary being the old Roman road called Watling-street, which ran from London across England to the Irish Channel. [*Note 1, end of Section.*]

13. A period of tranquillity ensued, which Alfred improved by rebuilding the ruined cities, particularly London; restoring order to the government, and putting the kingdom in a position of defence against future assaults. For this purpose he established a regular militia in every part of the country, so that it might be ready at any time to repel an invasion without leaving other parts defenceless. He also constructed a fleet, and stationed vessels at proper points of the coast, so as to be able to meet the piratical Danes and Norwegians on their own element. In this way he preserved his kingdom in a state of peace and quietude for several years.

14. At length, however, the Danes, under a famous leader, named Hastings, came with a powerful fleet from France, and landed on the coast of Kent (893). A long war ensued, in which Alfred displayed his characteristic skill and vigor. The pirates were at last entirely subdued, and compelled to quit the country, or were dispersed among their countrymen in Northumbria and East Anglia. The king survived this victory but a few years, dying after a glorious reign of nearly thirty years (901), in which his achievements, and the virtues and talents which he dis-

13. What measures did Alfred adopt afterward?

14. What is said of the invasion under Hastings? When did Alfred's death occur?

played in every circumstance of his life, justly won for him the title of "Alfred the Great."

15. It was not only by his military achievements and statesmanship that Alfred was a benefactor to his people. He endeavored to rescue them from the gross ignorance and barbarism in which he found them at his accession. He translated many interesting and useful works from Latin into Anglo-Saxon, established schools for the instruction of the people, founded, or at least repaired, the University of Oxford, and invited into the kingdom scholars from various parts of Europe. He introduced and encouraged manufactures, offered rewards for useful inventions, and actively promoted navigation and commerce. His great reputation as a monarch has, however, caused him to be considered the founder of many institutions which had existed among the Anglo-Saxons before his time, and which he only restored or enforced. His peculiar merit, indeed, was not so much that of a lawgiver, as of a wise and energetic administrator of government, and an earnest patron of whatever promised to promote the good of his people. [*See Note 2, end of the Section.*]

16. **Edward the Elder.** Alfred was succeeded by his second son Edward,* who inherited the energy and military talents of his father, but without his genius for science and literature. His claim to the throne was disputed by his nephew Ethelwold, who, in order to gain the object of his ambition, formed an alliance with the Danes in Northumbria and East Anglia, whom he stirred up to revolt. Edward, however, soon subdued the rebellion, and in one of the battles Ethelwold was slain. The remainder of this reign is occupied with contests carried on with the Danish

* Edmund, his eldest son, died during his father's life; his third son, Ethelward, inherited his passion for letters, and lived a retired life. Edward was called the "Elder" because he was the first English king of that name.

15. In what way did Alfred promote the good of his people? In what did his merit consist?

16. Who succeeded him? What rebellion occurred? How was it ended? What is said of the remainder of this reign?

settlers and their countrymen, who invaded England from Normandy and Brittany.

17. Edward was generally victorious in his various engagements with the enemy, and finally reduced them to submission. He thus acquired the dominion of Northumbria and East Anglia, and subsequently also of Mercia. The Welsh in Strathclyde also became tributary to him; and even the Scots, who had some years previously subdued the Picts, were obliged to yield him submission. In these military achievements and conquests he was greatly assisted by his heroic sister Ethelfle'da, widow of the Earl of Mercia. Edward was thus the first king of the West-Saxons whose sway extended over all Britain, he being now the only English king, and the other kings and princes in the island being his vassals. His death soon followed these great accessions of power (925).

18. Athelstan, son of Edward the Elder, was the successor of that king. Like his father and grandfather, he possessed great energy of character, and was not only an able general, but a wise and liberal-minded monarch. He subdued a revolt in Northumbria, and in a great battle defeated the Welsh, Scots, and Danes, who had entered into a league to destroy his power (937). This victory gave tranquillity to the country during the remainder of his reign, which lasted till 941. In order to encourage commerce and navigation, Athelstan enacted the singular law that any merchant who had made three long sea voyages on his own account should be admitted to the rank of *thane*, or gentleman.

19. Edmund, the brother of Athelstan, was only eighteen years old when he was made king; but he showed considerable vigor and talent in his expeditions against the

17. What conquests did Edward make? By whom was he aided? How is he distinguished? When did he die?

18. Who was his successor? How characterized? What did Athelstan accomplish? What singular law did he enact?

19. What is said of Edmund? How and when did his reign end?

revolted Northumbrians and North Welsh. His reign was brought to a close in a very singular manner. Noticing, on the occasion of a festival, the presence of Leolf, a notorious robber, whom he had previously banished, he ordered him to leave the hall; and enraged at his refusal to obey, he leaped on him and seized him by the hair. The ruffian thereupon drew his dagger, and inflicted upon Edmund a wound of which he immediately expired (946).

20. Edred, the brother of Edmund, succeeded him on the throne. The Danes in Northumbria again rebelled, and were again subdued; and the king, in order to prevent future revolts, appointed over this district an English governor, and placed garrisons in the principal towns. Edred was greatly influenced, in both religious and temporal affairs, by the famous *Dunstan* (commonly called St. Dunstan), abbot of Glastonbury, whom he raised to the highest offices, and who possessed among the people a very great reputation for sanctity and learning. Edred's death happened in 955, when he was succeeded by his nephew Edwy, eldest son of Edmund.

21. Edwy. The reign of this king was short and troubled. He opposed Dunstan in the measures by which he wished to reform the vices of the secular clergy (those who were not monks), and incurred the displeasure of the Church by marrying his cousin Elgiva (*el'je-vah*), of whom he was so fond that he left the banquet given in honor of his coronation, to enjoy her society and that of her mother. This was deemed an insult by Dunstan and his associates, and they compelled his return to the banquet-hall. Edwy, in resentment for this act, brought a charge of embezzlement against Dunstan, and obliged him to flee the kingdom. He was, however, recalled by the revolted Mercians, who had declared in favor of the king's brother Edgar; and

20. Who succeeded Edmund? What rebellion occurred? What followed? By whom was Edred influenced? His death and his successor?

21. What account is given of Edwy and Elgiva? Who succeeded Edwy?

it is said that Elgiva, having been compelled to leave her husband, was hastening again to him, when she was seized by the Mercians and most cruelly put to death. Edwy died a short time afterward, and was succeeded by Edgar (959).

22. Edgar, who was only sixteen years old when he commenced to reign, showed very great deference to Dunstan, favored all his measures to reform the Church, and in a short time promoted him to be Archbishop of Canterbury. His reign was entirely peaceful, being undisturbed by either foreign or domestic enemies. Edgar, however, kept up a constant preparation for hostilities, and every year sailed around the island with an immense fleet, so as to intimidate the Welsh, Scots, and Danes. His coronation took place at Bath, thirteen years after his accession; and afterward proceeding to Chester, he caused his barge to be rowed down the Dee by eight tributary kings.

23. Although a most efficient monarch, Edgar's character in private life is said, by some of the early historians, to have been exceedingly licentious; but there is no doubt that the accounts given of his cruelty and criminal excesses are the exaggerations or inventions of his enemies. Such is probably the story told of his marriage with Elfrida, after assassinating her husband; and of his breaking into a convent, and carrying off a nun by violence. Edgar favored the monastic party in opposition to that of the secular clergy; and therefore he has been unduly praised or too severely censured, according to the sympathies of different historians. He almost extirpated the wolves which infested some parts of the kingdom, by requiring the Welsh princes to pay, instead of money, an annual tribute of three hundred heads of these animals. The reputation of this king attracted many foreigners to his court, and he was on excellent terms with contemporary princes, par-

22. What is said of Edgar? His means of overawing the Welsh, &c.? His coronation?

23. What is said of the accounts given of Edgar? How did he extirpate the wolves? His reputation? His death and successor?

ticularly with Otho of Germany, who had married his aunt Edith. He was succeeded by his son Edward (975).

24. Edward the Martyr was but fifteen years of age when the council of the nation called him to the throne. He was opposed by his step-mother Elfrida, who desired that her own son Ethelred, seven years old, should be elected in his stead; but the influence of Dunstan prevailed against her. The contests between the two parties in the Church were continued during this reign, and several synods were called to settle the differences; but the monastic party under Dunstan had the advantage. Edward was assassinated, it is said, through the instigation of Elfrida, in 978, and hence has received the title of "Martyr."* Ethelred, his half-brother, succeeded him.

25. Ethelred II. was a mere boy, only ten years old, when he became king. Dunstan crowned him with reluctance, and foretold that his reign would be a most unhappy one, knowing probably that the kingdom had come to him through the wickedness of his mother. During the rest of this prelate's life, his influence and counsels in some degree protected England from the serious disasters which threatened it; for the Danes had again commenced their invasions.† In 991, a short time after Dunstan's death, an immense force of Norwegians, under several leaders, one of whom, *Olaf* or *Anlaf*, was afterward a very famous king of Norway, arrived in England, and committed so many ravages that the king, in despair of driving them away, consented to pay them a large sum of money (£10,000) on condition that they would depart.

* See Note 3, end of the Section.

† Dunstan's death occurred in 988, at the age of 63. He first came into notice in the reign of Athelstan; and hence was a distinguished personage during seven reigns. He was a very extraordinary man, being versed in music, painting, and other arts; an adroit politician and statesman; and as a churchman and prelate held in the highest repute for his talents and piety. His determined efforts to benefit his party and establish his policy in the Church have made his character and conduct the subject of very severe invective with writers opposed to him. He was afterward canonized, and hence is known in history under the appellation of St. Dunstan.

24. How old was Edward the Martyr when he commenced to reign? By whom was he opposed? What contests were there? With what result? Why was Edward called "Martyr"? His successor?

25. What is said of Ethelred? Of Dunstan? Of the Norwegians? How were they induced to depart?



ASSASSINATION OF EDWARD THE MARTYR—p. 38. (See Note, end of Section.)

26. This expedient proved ineffectual, for the invasions were constantly renewed with the hope not only of plunder but of payment. Olaf, now king of Norway, and Sweyn (*swane*), king of Denmark, joined their forces, and made repeated invasions, spreading havoc and ruin wherever they appeared (994). Ethelred, never manifesting either vigor or prudence, bought them off at first with the sum of £16,000, afterward with £24,000, in order to pay which he was compelled to levy upon the people a tax, called *Danegeld*, or Dane-money. Olaf retired, and afterward embracing Christianity, made no renewal of these incursions.

27. Sweyn and his countrymen, however, persevered in their hostility, hoping finally to effect the conquest of the whole country; and Ethelred was incapable of making any effectual opposition against the ravages committed by these savage and daring intruders. Thinking to strengthen his influence, he entered into an alliance with Richard II., Duke of Normandy, and married his daughter Emma (1001); but the Danes still continued their hostilities, and could only be checked by a compliance with their demands for money.

28. A very cruel and unwise scheme of the king's still farther added to his misfortunes and those of his kingdom. On the departure of Sweyn, Ethelred gave secret orders that all the Danes (probably all the foreign Danes, or those whom Sweyn had left) should be massacred, on the festival of St. Brice (November 13th, 1002). This was done with every circumstance of ferocity, neither sex nor age being spared; and Sweyn's own sister, with her husband and children, were among the victims. [Note 4.]

29. The next year, the Danish king appeared off the western coast, and took a deep revenge for the murder of his countrymen; and a constant and most destructive war

26. What other invasions occurred? What measures were taken by Ethelred?

27. What other hostilities occurred on the part of the Danes? Whom did Ethelred marry?

28. Describe the massacre of St. Brice. Its date?

29. How were the Danes avenged? What was done by Ethelred?

was waged for several years, the English all the time making fruitless efforts to defend themselves and their country, but receiving no effectual aid from their imbecile king, whose only expedient was to bribe the Danes for a brief and precarious peace. At length, Sweyn being virtually king of England, having received the submission of most of the English nobles, Ethelred fled into Normandy (1013).

30. A ray of hope, however, soon dawned again upon the English, for their monarch had been absent scarcely six weeks when the conqueror died, leaving the English throne to his son *Ca-nute*', who had accompanied him in his expeditions. Ethelred was invited back by his former subjects, and returned in 1014, with his brave and stalwart son Edmund, afterward called *Ironsides*, who fought against the Danes; and Canute was for a time obliged to flee.

31. But the next year he returned with a large force; and, notwithstanding the efforts made by Edmund, who was unsupported by his father, soon overcame all opposition, and compelled the greater part of the nation to submit to his authority. Ethelred and Edmund were shut up in London, and thither Canute was directing his course when the king died, thus being saved from an inglorious capture and imprisonment (1016). Few kings have manifested so much weakness and incapacity, or have been so little adapted to the circumstances in which they were placed, as Ethelred. Always doing what he should not have done, and leaving undone what it was most necessary to do, he well deserved the appellation, bestowed by Dunstan upon him, of "Ethelred the Unready;" that is, without *rede*, or counsel.

32. Edmund Ironside. On the death of Ethelred,

30. What led to Ethelred's return? What was done by Edmund Ironside?

31. What was accomplished by Canute? What is said of Ethelred's character?

32. What occurred on the death of Ethelred? What compromise was effected? The death of Edmund?

his son Edmund was proclaimed king by the citizens of London and some of the nobles who still remained faithful to the cause of the English sovereign. The others took an oath of allegiance to Canute. A war ensued, in which several fierce battles were fought; and the English under Edmund, who was a skilful and valiant soldier, gained some decided victories. At last, however, it was thought best to make a compromise, and Canute agreed to receive Northumbria, Mercia, and East Anglia for his portion of the kingdom, and to resign to Edmund the remainder, comprising the southern part of the country, with the city of London. About one month afterward, Edmund was murdered, through the contrivance of Edric, Duke of Mercia (1016).

DANISH KINGS.

33. Canute, on the death of Edmund, was crowned king of all England. Reserving to himself the administration of Wessex, he appointed Thurkill earl of East Anglia, Eric, earl of Northumbria, and Edric, of Mercia, in reward for their services in obtaining for him the English throne. The two sons of Edmund, then quite young, he sent to Olaf, king of Sweden, with the request that they should be put to death. But Olaf refusing compliance, sent them into Hungary, where they were protected and educated. Edward, the younger, was afterward married to the daughter of the emperor Henry II.

34. In order to reward his Danish followers, Canute was at first compelled to load the people with heavy taxes; but after he was settled on the throne, he adopted such measures as would reconcile the English to his government. He sent away as many of his countrymen as he could spare, made no distinction between Dane and English in

33. Who then became king? What appointments were made? What was done with the sons of Edmund?

34. What were the measures of Canute?

administering justice, restored the Saxon customs in a general assembly of the states, and took care to protect the lives and property of all his subjects.

35. The two sons of Ethelred, then living with their uncle Richard, Duke of Normandy, gave Canute considerable anxiety, as being heirs to the English throne. He accordingly paid his addresses to their mother, Emma, who consented to be his wife, and thus, a second time, became queen of England. Having, in this way, disposed of all opposition, he reigned with mildness as well as wisdom; and to atone for the wickedness of his former acts, built churches, founded monasteries, and even went on a pilgrimage to Rome (1027).

36. A story is told by some of the early historians which illustrates his good sense as well as his piety. Walking on the sea-shore, on one occasion, with his courtiers, he became very much disgusted with their flatteries; and to rebuke their folly, commanded that his chair should be set at the edge of the water, while the tide was rapidly advancing, so that he might compel the rude waves to retire from his dominions. But, of course, the billows heeded not his kingly commands, but soon dashed violently against his person; whereupon he called upon his servile flatterers to remark how feeble was the sway of the mightiest earthly king in comparison with the "King of kings," who alone deserves the adoration of mankind.

37. This humility of Canute was the more praiseworthy, as he was one of the most powerful monarchs of his time, being sovereign of Denmark and Norway as well as of England. In the latter part of his reign, he led an expedition against Malcolm, King of Scotland, who had refused to acknowledge himself a vassal for Cumberland, to the English crown; and soon reduced him to submis-

36. Why did he marry Emma? How did he reign?

36. What story is told of him?

37. Why was this spirit especially praiseworthy? What expedition did he undertake? His death? His sons? His successor?

sion (1031). He died a few years afterward (1035), leaving three sons, Har'dicanute, by his wife Emma, and Sweyn and Harold, by his former marriage. Hardicanute was in possession of Denmark; Sweyn was crowned King of Norway; and Harold succeeded to the English throne.

38. Harold obtained the throne after considerable opposition. Queen Emma desired that her son Hardicanute should be made king, and in this was supported by the West Saxons, led by their great earl Godwin, who exerted a powerful influence at this time, and for some years afterward. Civil war was threatened; but it was averted by a compromise, Harold being accepted as the sovereign of all the English territories north of the Thames, and Hardicanute of those south of it; and as the latter was in Denmark, the government of his portion was left to Queen Emma and Earl Godwin. Hardicanute, however, neglected to assume the administration, and the people, tired of waiting for him, finally chose Harold to be king of all England (1037).

39. Godwin was afterward gained over by Harold to his interest; for when Alfred and Edward, the two sons of Emma by King Ethelred, arrived in England from Normandy on a visit to their mother, Godwin, with the connivance of the king, laid a plan for their destruction; and one of them (Alfred) being seized by the king's servants, was put to death. Emma, with her other son, then fled the kingdom. This is the only act by which we are enabled to form a judgment of the character of Harold. His agility in running and walking gained for him the appellation of *Harefoot*. He died after a very brief reign, little regretted by his subjects, and thus left the succession open to his brother Hardicanute (1040).

38. What opposition was made to Harold? Who supported Hardicanute? What compromise was made? Why was it not carried out?

39. How were Ethelred's sons treated? What was Harold styled? Why? His death? His successor?

40. Hardicanute was preparing to make a descent upon England, to recover from Harold, by force of arms, his share of the kingdom, when he heard of the king's death. He immediately sailed to London, where he was received in triumph, and acknowledged king. Enraged at Harold for the murder of his brother, he caused his remains to be exhumed, and thrown into a fen; but Godwin, who was accused of being an accomplice in the murder, was released, after taking the oath of compurgation.* He also conciliated the king by the present of a large ship splendidly equipped, and manned by fourscore men, magnificently armed.

41. Hardicanute soon became very unpopular by his reckless and oppressive measures. Among the latter was the renewal of the imposition of Danegeld, to pay the expenses of the fleet which brought him from Denmark. The people of Worcester having risen against the tax-gathers, he caused the city to be pillaged by the soldiers, and burnt to the ground. His reign, however, was very short; his death occurring two years after his accession, at the nuptial banquet of one of the Danish lords (1042). He derived his name *Hardicanute* from his robust constitution, which, however, he prematurely impaired by his habits of intemperance.

SAXON KINGS RESTORED.

42. Edward the Confessor. The opportunity offered to the English, by the death of Hardicanute, to throw off the Danish yoke, was eagerly seized by them; and Edward, brother of Edmund Ironside, was at once elected king. Earl Godwin, who had vigorously supported his claims to the throne, became his chief adviser; and Edith, the earl's

* See § 55, page 50.

40. What was done by Hardicanute? How was he conciliated by Godwin?

41. How did he become unpopular? How were the people of Worcester treated? His death? Why called Hardicanute?

42. Who became king? Who was his chief adviser? His queen? His treatment of Emma?

daughter, was married to the king (1045). One of the first acts of Edward was to strip his mother Emma of the immense treasures which she had amassed; her neglect of himself and of his brother Alfred during their adverse fortune, having extinguished in his mind all filial affection or respect toward her. She was afterward kept in confinement at Winchester.

43. Edward having been educated in Normandy, at the court of his grandfather, had acquired a very great fondness for Norman society and manners; and he soon disgusted his English subjects by the large number of his Norman followers, whom he had invited over, and appointed to offices of dignity and importance, even the see of Canterbury being given to a Norman. He had also contracted a very intimate friendship with his cousin William, the present duke of Normandy. Thus the language, customs, and laws of that country soon became quite fashionable in England.

44. These proceedings were particularly offensive to Earl Godwin, whose influence and authority had been second only to the king; the government of a large part of England having been committed to him and his sons Sweyn and Harold. Siward, the great Danish earl of Northumbria, and Leofric, earl of Mercia, were the most powerful of the English nobles, next to Godwin. A quarrel with the Normans soon occurred (1051). Eustace, count of Boulogne (*boo-lone'*), was on his return from a visit to the king, and at Dover had committed an act of violence against one of the inhabitants. The latter at once rose against the foreigners, and drove them from the place, some of them being killed. The count having complained to the king, the latter ordered Godwin to inflict severe punishment upon the people of Dover; but he, throwing all the blame upon the Normans,

43. How did Edward become unpopular? His connection with William of Normandy? The result?

44. What is said of Godwin? What other nobles were influential? How did a quarrel with the Normans occur? What was the result?

refused to obey the royal mandate, and summoned his forces to resist it.

45. Deserted, however, by the other nobles, he, with his sons, was compelled to flee; and all his estates were confiscated (1051). But the next year he succeeded in collecting a large fleet; and sailing to London, was received with so much enthusiasm by the people, that Edward was obliged to yield, and Godwin and his sons (except Sweyn, who had been outlawed) were restored to their honors and possessions. The death of Godwin occurring soon after, Harold succeeded to his dignity and influence; and by his modesty and affability acquired, in a short time, the goodwill of the king, very greatly increasing, in the same way, the number of his friends and partisans.

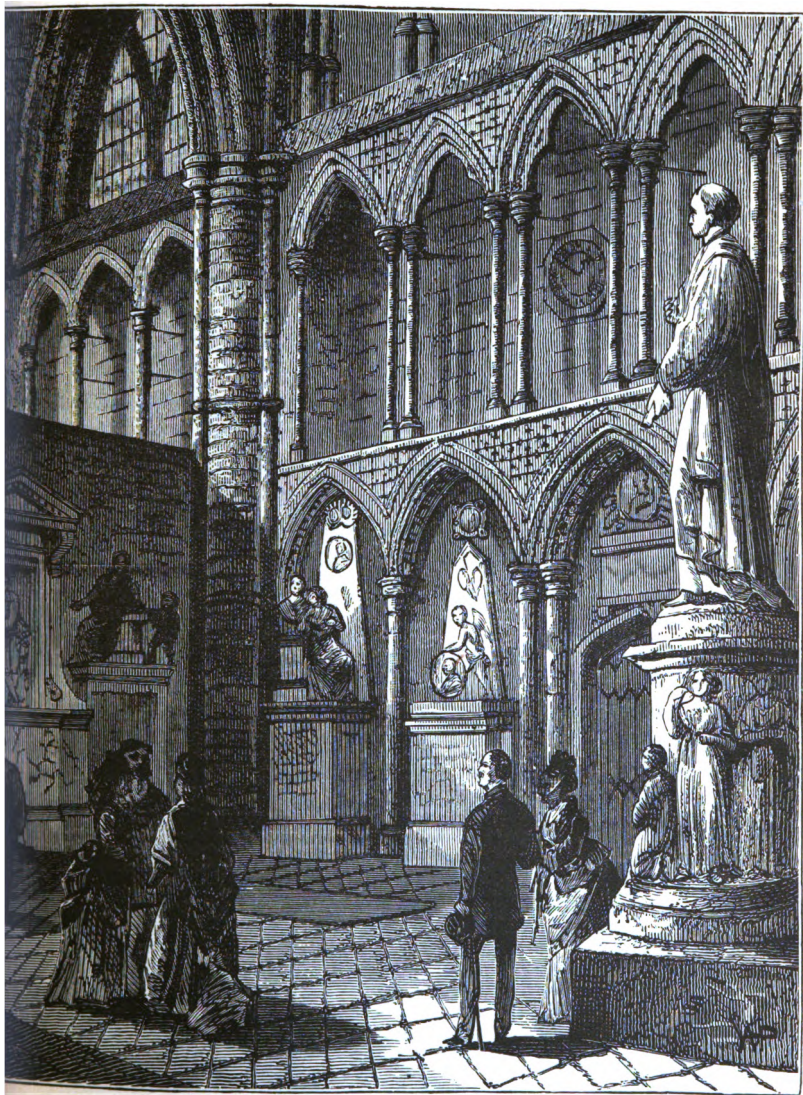
46. Edward having no children, sent to Hungary for Edward, called "the Outlaw," son of Edmund Ironside, in order to make him his successor; but this prince died a short time after his arrival in England, leaving a young son, named Edgar. William of Normandy had visited his cousin Edward, and had been induced to aspire to the English throne, claiming that Edward had promised to bequeath it to him. But the people of England were too much attached to their great and good earl Harold, voluntarily to permit a foreigner to rule over them; and all looked upon him as their future sovereign.

47. William, therefore, feared Harold very much, as a rival; and once, when the latter was on a visit to his court, he was compelled by the Norman duke to take an oath that he would sustain his claim to the throne; and, to make the pledge more solemn, William secretly placed under the altar, on which Harold swore, the sacred relics of some of the most revered martyrs, which, after the oath had been taken, were

48. What was done by Godwin? Who succeeded him?

46. Whom did Edward propose first as his heir? Whom next? Who was the people's choice?

47. What oath did William extort from Harold? How?



POET'S CORNER.—WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

shown him. But on his return, he regarded not the oath, it having been extorted from him by violence. [Note 5.]

48. Harold was successful in an important expedition against the Welsh; and was also despatched to reduce the Northumbrians to submission, who had revolted against the government of his brother Tostig. Finding, however, that Tostig had ruled with injustice and oppression, he abandoned his cause, and yielded to the people the ruler whom they had elected in his place. Tostig, therefore, greatly enraged against his brother, departed the kingdom, and took refuge in Flanders. A short time after this Edward died (January 5th, 1066), having, it is said, recommended the council to choose Harold as his successor. He was buried in Westminster Abbey,* which had been consecrated only a few days previously.

49. This reign was prosperous and peaceful, not from any ability displayed by the monarch, but on account of the circumstances in which he was placed. The Danes had ceased their incursions; and the troubles with the Welsh were soon extinguished by the energy and talent of Godwin and his son Harold. The virtues of Edward were rather those of the cloister than the court. He was pious and beneficent, and earnestly endeavored to administer justice with impartiality, for which purpose he caused a very useful body of laws to be compiled. He was the first to touch for the scrofula (called the King's Evil); and for seven centuries those afflicted with that disease were, at times, presented to the English monarchs to be cured in this way. About a century after his death, Edward was canonized by the Pope, with the surname of "the Confessor." He was the last of the royal Saxon line; but not

* This church had been erected by Edward, and dedicated to St. Peter, in accordance with the injunction of Pope Leo IX., as the condition for releasing Edward from the duty of making a pilgrimage to Rome.

48. What expeditions were conducted by Harold? What was his course toward his brother Tostig? Edward's death? Where was he buried?

49. Why was his reign peaceful? What is said of Edward's character? The "King's Evil"? When was Edward canonized?

the last of the Saxon kings, since the Saxon noble Harold succeeded him.

50. Harold II. Edgar Atheling, son of Edward the Outlaw, was the only surviving male of the royal line; but he was considered by the council too young to occupy the throne; and consequently Harold, son of Earl Godwin, was elected king, and crowned in Westminster, on the very day of king Edward's burial. William of Normandy was very indignant when he received the news of this election, and sent an embassy to England to remind Harold of his oath, and to demand that he should at once resign the crown in his favor. This being refused, he immediately prepared to make good his claim by force of arms. Harold had also to contend against his brother Tostig, who sought, with the aid of Harold Hardrada, king of Norway, to regain his power, and with a large army invaded the north of England. Harold met the allied forces at Stamford Bridge and defeated them with great loss, both Tostig and the Norwegian monarch being slain (September 25th, 1066).

51. Scarcely had he time to rejoice over this great victory, when he received the intelligence that William had landed with a large and splendidly equipped army on the southern shore. With his accustomed energy and promptitude, he hastened by rapid marches to oppose this formidable invader; but on a near approach to the enemy, found his forces much reduced by desertion, many being disaffected on account of an unsatisfactory distribution of the Norwegian spoils, and others discouraged by superstitious forebodings of defeat, on account of the solemn oath which Harold had violated, and for which he had been excommunicated by the pope.

52. On this account Harold's brother, Gurth, endeavored to dissuade him from engaging with the enemy, urging the

50. Why was Harold made king? What did William of Normandy do? What other enemy had Harold? What victory did he gain?

51. What other conflict awaited him? How were his forces weakened?

52. Gurth's advice? What is said of the "Battle of Hastings"? Its date?

Progressive Map, No. 4



policy of wearing out William's forces by delay ; but Harold was too eager for battle, and too confident of victory to listen to this advice. The spot on which this important conflict occurred was called *Senlac* (now *Battle*), nine miles from Hastings—the place near which William had landed. Harold posted his men advantageously to receive the onset of the Normans, who advanced singing the “song of Roland ;” and for nine hours the battle raged with the utmost fury, both leaders displaying the greatest skill and valor. At last the brave Harold fell,* pierced in the eye with an arrow ; and the English fled, leaving the Normans in possession of the field (October 14th, 1066).

53. Harold's two brothers were also among the slain, and with them likewise perished nearly all the nobility of the south of England. Harold's body was found with great difficulty, and was at first buried on the sea-shore ; but subsequently, it was disinterred, and by permission of the conqueror, deposited in the church which Harold had founded at Waltham, before he ascended the throne. This event, commonly called the **Battle of Hastings**, terminated the rule of the Anglo-Saxons in England, and gave the kingdom to the Normans.

STATE OF SOCIETY AMONG THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

54. The great council of the nation, called the *Witenagemót* (meeting of the *witan*, or wise men), by whom, as it will have been already observed, the kings were elected, was composed of representatives of the nobles and clergy and the great officers of the kingdom, such as the earls, aldermen, and thanes. The *ceorls*, churls, or common people, had no voice therein ; neither were there deputies from the *shires*, or counties, or from the cities. Its assent was

* Upon the spot where Harold fell, William afterward founded *Battle Abbey*, a rich and splendid edifice for many years. Its venerable ruins still remain.

53. Who were among the slain ? Harold's remains ? Result of the battle ?
54. What was the *Witenagemót* ? Of whom composed ?

necessary for all laws, and the clergy took an influential part in its proceedings.

55. Justice was administered principally in the *shire-mote*, or county court, from which there was the right of appeal to the king. The finding of a verdict was assigned to twelve of the principal thanes (lowest order of nobles), who thus bore some resemblance to a modern jury. The accused cleared himself by his own oath, or those of others, called *compurgators*, who swore to his innocence. Without these, he was subjected to the *ordeal* (great judgment); that is, he was compelled to thrust his arm into boiling water, hold a piece of red-hot iron in his hand, or walk over burning ploughshares; and if at the end of three days no signs of injury appeared upon him, his innocence was deemed to be established.

56. The dwellings of the Anglo-Saxons were constructed of wood, having, instead of a chimney, an aperture in the roof. The windows were of lattice-work, but sometimes were covered with a linen blind: in the houses of the rich they were often glazed. The floors were covered with rushes, and the walls sometimes hung with rich tapestry, embroidered with gold or colored thread, the women of this period being skilled in needlework. The furniture was very rude and simple; stools, benches, and settees being used in place of chairs; and these were made of wood, often curiously carved. Many of the vessels employed in eating and drinking were of silver and gold beautifully wrought. Drinking horns supplied the place of glass vessels.

57. The Anglo-Saxons were hospitable, and fond of feasting and merriment; and at their banquets, the harp was passed around, that each, in turn, might contribute by his skill to the entertainment. Their amusements were active and exciting. Among the higher classes, hunt-

55. How was justice administered? What were *compurgators*? The *Ordeal*!
 56. What is said of the dwellings of the Saxons? Their furniture? The drinking vessels?

57. Character of the Anglo-Saxons? Their amusements? The ladies?

ing and hawking were favorite sports; while the churl delighted in bear-baiting, the feats of jugglers and tumblers, and the songs of the gleeman, or minstrel. Backgammon,* chess, and dice were also resorted to for more quiet pastime. The ladies were much occupied in spinning; hence the name *spinster* came to be applied to a young unmarried woman.

58. The foreign commerce of England during this period was considerable, London being the great emporium of the nation. Wool was the chief article of export, and was received back from the continent in fabrics of various kinds. Mints were established in some of the cities and towns, and many of the Anglo-Saxon coins still preserved exhibit remarkable skill.

59. There were no means of diffusing knowledge. The monasteries were almost the only schools; and in these a very few persons received instruction in Greek, Latin, theology, and astronomy; also in some of the fine arts, the monks being often skilled in painting, music, and sculpture. They also spent much of their time in copying and illuminating books on vellum or parchment, which being executed with so much labor, were very costly, a considerable fortune being requisite to obtain a few volumes.

60. Little was done after Alfred's reign to encourage learning and science, the irruptions of the Danes preventing any progressive efforts to cultivate the arts of peace. Almost the only characters conspicuous for their erudition, during the period from Alfred's death to the close of the Anglo-Saxon sway, were Odo, Archbishop of Canterbury, and St. Dunstan, his successor; and the learning of these is only remarkable, as a faint glimmering amid the prevailing darkness.

* Backgammon—*Little Bettle*, was a game invented by the Welsh.

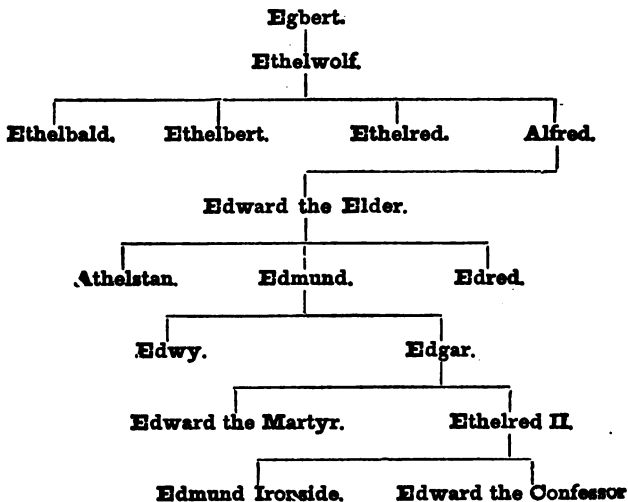
58. Commerce? Chief export? Coinage?

59. What place of learning existed? Branches of instruction? Fine arts? Illuminated books?

60. What prevented the promotion of learning? Distinguished scholars? The degree of their attainments?

<i>Date of Accession.</i>	<i>Kings.</i>	<i>Duration of Reign.</i>
827.	Egbert.....	9 years.
836.	Ethelwolf.....	22 "
858.	Ethelbald and Ethelbert.....	2 "
860.	Ethelbert.....	6 "
866.	Ethelred I.....	5 "
871.	Alfred the Great.....	30 "
901.	Edward the Elder.....	24 "
925.	Athelstan.....	16 "
941.	Edmund.....	5 "
946.	Edred.....	9 "
955.	Edwy.....	4 "
959.	Edgar.....	16 "
975.	Edward the Martyr.....	3 "
978.	Ethelred II. (the Unready).....	38 "
1016.	Edmund Ironside.....	7 months
"	Canute.....	19 years.
1035.	Harold Harefoot.....	4½ "
1040.	Hardicanute.....	2 "
1042.	Edward the Confessor.....	23½ "
1066.	Harold II.....	9 months

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SAXON KINGS.



NOTES.

1. Danish Dominions in England (p. 33, ¶ 12).—"Alfred never subdued the Danes, nor became master of the whole kingdom. The Thames, the Lea, the Ouse, and the Roman road called Watling-street determined the limits of Alfred's dominions. To the northeast of this boundary were spread the invaders, still denominated the *armies* of East Anglia and Northumberland; a name terribly expressive of foreign confederacy without melting into the mass of their subject population. Three able and active sovereigns—Edward, Athelstan, and Edmund, the successors of Alfred—pursued the course of victory, and finally rendered the English monarchy coextensive with the present limits of England. Yet even Edgar, the most powerful of the Anglo-Saxon kings, did not venture to interfere with the legal customs of his Danish subjects."—*Hallam's Middle Ages*.

2. Alfred the Great (p. 34, ¶ 15).—"King Alfred founded schools; he patiently heard causes himself in his courts of justice; the great desires of his heart were, to do right to all his subjects, and to leave England better, wiser, happier, in all ways, than he found it. His industry in these efforts was quite astonishing. Every day he divided into certain portions, and in each portion devoted himself to a certain pursuit. That he might divide his time exactly, he had wax torches or candles made, which were all of the same size, were notched across at regular distances, and were always kept burning. Thus, as the candles burnt down, he divided the day into notches, almost as accurately as we now divide it into hours with the clock. He had the candles put into cases formed of wood and white horn; and these were the first lanthorns ever made in England. All this time he was afflicted with a terrible unknown disease, which caused him violent and frequent pain, that nothing could relieve. He bore it, as he had borne all the troubles of his life, like a brave good man, until he was fifty-three years old; and then, having reigned thirty years, he died. He died in the year nine hundred and one; but, long ago as that is, his fame and the love and gratitude with which his subjects regarded him are freshly remembered to the present hour."—*Dickens's Child's History of England*.

3. Assassination of Edward the Martyr (p. 38, ¶ 24).—"Elfrida had a son named Ethelred, for whom she claimed the throne; but Dunstan did not choose to favor him, and he made Edward king. The boy was hunting one day, down in Dorsetshire, when he rode near to Corfe Castle, where Elfrida and Ethelred lived. Wishing to see them kindly, he rode away from his attendants and galloped to the castle gate, where he arrived at twilight, and blew his hunting-horn. 'You are welcome, dear King,' said Elfrida, coming out, with her brightest smiles. 'Pray you, dismount and enter.' 'Not so, dear madam,' said the king. 'My company will miss me, and fear that I have met with some harm. Please you, give me a cup of wine, that I may drink here, in the saddle, to you and to my little brother, and so ride away with the good speed I have made in riding here.' Elfrida, going in to bring the wine, whispered to an armed servant, one of her attendants, who stole out of the darkening gateway, and crept round behind the king's horse. As the king raised the cup to his lips, saying, 'Health!' to the wicked woman who was smiling on him, and to his innocent brother whose hand she held in hers, and who was only ten years old, this armed man made a spring and stabbed him in the back. He dropped the cup and spurred his horse away; but, soon fainting with loss of blood, dropped from the saddle, and in his fall entangled one of his feet in the stir-

rup. The frightened horse dashed on; trailing his rider's curls upon the ground; dragging his smooth young face through ruts, and stones, and briars, and fallen leaves, and mud; until the hunters, tracking the animal's course by the king's blood, caught his bridle, and released the disfigured body."—*Dickens's Child's History of England.*

4. *Massacre of St. Brice* (p. 39, ¶ 28).—"In this year, a certain Huna, King Ethelred's chief military commander, an undaunted and warlike man, beholding the insolence of the Danes—who after the establishment of peace had grown strong throughout the whole of England, presuming to insult the wives and daughters of the nobles of the kingdom—came in much distress to the king and made his doleful complaint before him. Greatly moved thereat, the king, by the advice of the same Huna, sent letters into all parts of the kingdom, commanding all the people that, on one day, the feast of St. Brice the bishop, they should rise and put to death all the Danes settled in England, leaving none surviving, so that the whole English nation might once and for ever be freed from Danish oppression. And so the Danes, who a little before had made a league with the English, and had sworn to live peaceably with them, were shamefully slain, and their wives and little ones dashed against the posts of their houses. The decree was mercilessly carried into effect in the city of London, insomuch that a number of Danes who had fled to a church for refuge were all butchered before the very altars. But some Danish youths, flying on board a vessel, escaped to Denmark, and reported to King Sweyn the bloody end of his people. Moved to tears thereat, he called together all the nobles of his kingdom, and making known to them what had happened, inquired of them diligently what they advised to be done; whereupon they all with one acclamation determined that the blood of their kinsmen and friends should be revenged."—*Roger of Wendover—Flowers of History.*

5. *Harold's Oath* (p. 46, ¶ 47).—"In the town of Avranches, or in that of Bayeux—for the testimonials vary with regard to the place—Duke William convoked a great council of the lords and barons of Normandy. The day before that fixed for the assembly, William caused to be brought from all places around bones and relics of saints, sufficient to fill a great chest, or cask, which was placed in the hall of council, and covered with cloth of gold. When the duke had taken his seat in the chair of state, holding a drawn sword in his hand, crowned with a circlet of gems, and surrounded by the crowd of Norman chiefs, amongst whom was the Saxon, two little caskets of relics were brought and laid upon the cask of relics. William then said: 'Harold, I require thee before this noble assembly to confirm by oath the promises thou hast made me, viz., to assist me in obtaining the kingdom of England after King Edward's death, to marry my daughter Adela, and to send me thy sister, that I may give her to one of my followers!' The Englishman, once more taken by surprise, and not daring to deny his own words, approached the two reliquaries with a troubled air, laid his hand upon them, and swore to execute, to the utmost of his power, his agreement with the duke, if he lived, and with God's help. The whole assembly repeated, 'May God be thy help!' William immediately made a sign, on which the cloth of gold was removed, and discovered the bones and skeletons which filled the cask to the brim, and which the son of Godwin had sworn upon without knowing it. The Norman historians say that he shuddered, and his countenance changed at the sight of this enormous heap. Harold soon after departed, taking with him his nephew, but was compelled to leave his younger brother behind him in the power of the Duke of Normandy."—*Thierry's History of England.*

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Give the early history of Egbert, king of Wessex.....	26-28
2. What further account can you give of him?.....	28-29
3. Give the early history of Mercia, East Anglia, and Northumbria.....	23-26-28
4. Of the first invasions of England by the Danes?.....	29
5. Who was Ethelwolf, and what was his character?.....	29-30
6. Give an account of the troubles he had with the Danes.....	30
7. What other events of his life can you mention?.....	30
8. How many and what sons of Ethelwolf became kings?.....	32
9. State all you can in relation to Ethelbald.....	30
10. State all you can in relation to Ethelbert.....	30
11. What division of England was made in Ethelwolf's reign?.....	30
12. How did it originate, continue, and end?.....	30
13. Give an account of the reign of Ethelred.....	31
14. Under what circumstances did Alfred become king?.....	31
15. What early troubles did Alfred have with the Danes?.....	31-32
16. Give the account in connection with Guthrum.....	32-33
17. What various peace measures did Alfred adopt?.....	33
18. Give an account of his contest with Hastings.....	33
19. Why was he entitled to be called "Alfred the Great?".....	33-34
20. State fully what he did to benefit his people.....	34
21. Now give a full account of his contest with the Danes.....	31-32-33
22. Name the important events of the reign of Alfred the Great.....	31-34
23. Who was Edward the Elder, and what was his character?.....	34-35
24. What troubles did he have with his nephew, Ethelwold?.....	34
25. Give an account of his contests with the Danes.....	34-35
26. What dominion did Edward hold at his death?.....	35
27. Give the steps by which his successes were secured.....	35
28. Name the important events in the reign of Edward the Elder.....	34-35
29. What sons of Edward the Elder became kings?.....	52
30. Give an account of Athelstan and the events of his reign.....	35
31. Of Edmund and the events of his reign.....	35-36
32. Of Edred and the events of his reign.....	36
33. Of Edwy and the events of his reign.....	36-37
34. Who was Edgar, and what was his character?.....	32-37
35. Give an account of the events of his reign.....	37-38
36. State what you can of Edward the Martyr and his reign.....	38
37. Who was Ethelred II., and how did he obtain the throne?.....	38
38. State all you can of Dunstan.....	36-37-38, Note, p. 38
39. Give an account of Ethelred's contests with the Danes.....	38-39-40
40. Of Edmund Ironside's contests with the Danes.....	40-41
41. State further what you can in relation to Edmund Ironside.....	40-41
42. Give an account of Olaf of Norway.....	38-39-41
43. Of Sweyn, king of Denmark.....	40
44. Of Canute, Sweyn's son.....	40-41-42-43
45. State the events in detail which made Canute king of England.....	40-41
46. Who was Harold, and what were the events of his reign?.....	43
47. State what you can of Hardicanute and the events of his reign.....	43-44
48. Give an account of Queen Emma.....	42-43-45
49. Of Edward the Confessor and the events of his reign.....	44-48
50. Of Harold II. and the events of his reign.....	43-49

SECTION II.

THE NORMAN FAMILY.

Extending from the Accession of William the Conqueror (1066) to the death of Stephen (1154).

1066 **1. William I.** (surnamed *the Conqueror*). After
to the disastrous battle of Hastings, the English found
1087 they could make no successful opposition to the victor; and therefore as soon as he approached London, all the chief nobility, with Edgar Atheling himself, who on the first intelligence of Harold's death had been proclaimed king, came into his camp and offered him submission. On the Christmas following, he was crowned in Westminster Abbey, in the presence of the English and Norman nobles, both of whom with acclamations accepted him as their sovereign. Indeed, the shouts were so vociferous that the Normans outside, thinking their leader was suffering violence, assaulted the populace and set fire to the city, occasioning a tumult which the newly-crowned king found it difficult to subdue.

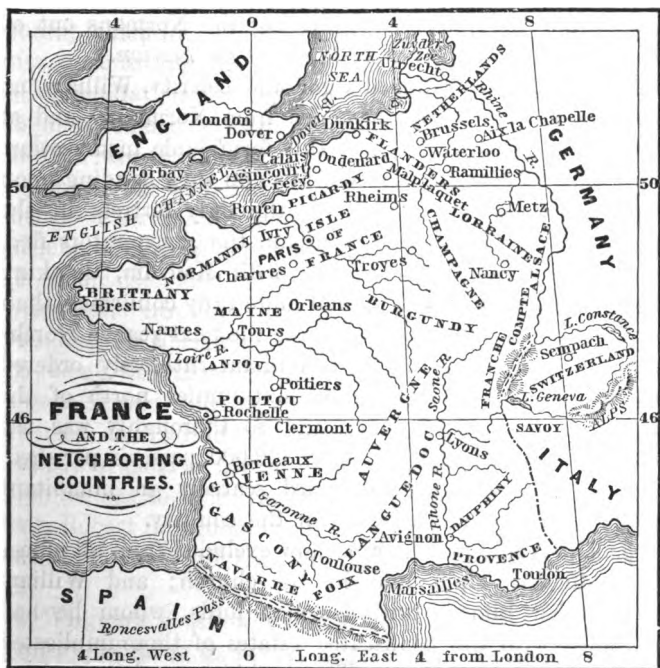
2. Having thus secured the fruits of his great victory, he commenced the government of his new subjects with justice and lenity, treating even Edgar, the heir of the royal Saxon line, with kindness, as being the nephew of his friend and benefactor, Edward the Confessor. He was,

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Progressive Map, No. 4.) What were the boundaries of England at the period referred to? What were its chief divisions? Where was Wessex? Mercia? East Anglia? Northumbria? Where was Cornwall? Devonshire? Somersetshire? Berkshire? Sussex? Essex? Dorsetshire? Norfolk? Suffolk? North Wales? South Wales? What were the boundaries of Scotland? Where were the settlements of the Northmen? What is the situation of Dover? Hastings? Senlac? Waltham? Winchester? Exeter? Bristol? Gloucester? Norwich? Oxford? Warwick? Durham? Cardiff? Where was Stamford Bridge?

1. What was the conduct of the English after the battle of Hastings? When and where was William crowned? What tumult occurred?

2. What was the conduct of William at first? How did he reward his followers? What precautions did he take?

however, careful to reward his followers with the confiscated estates of the Saxon nobles, and omitted no precaution necessary to confirm his authority, and protect his government against revolt. He disarmed the city of London and such other places as appeared most formidable, built citadels to overawe the inhabitants, and kept himself constantly in readiness to repel any hostile attack.



3. The people, notwithstanding all this, eagerly watched for a favorable opportunity to recover their lost liberties; and during the absence of William, the year after his coronation, he being in Normandy, secret conspiracies were en-

3. What occurred during William's absence? What league was formed?

tered into against his government, and hostilities broke out in many places (1067). Many of those who had been deprived of their lands by the Conqueror banded together, and keeping themselves concealed in woods and marshes, made havoc of all the Normans that came within their reach. The Saxon nobles, including Edgar Atheling and the sons of Harold who had fled to Ireland, with Malcolm, king of Scotland, and Sweyn, king of Denmark, formed a league for the purpose of driving the Normans out of England (1068). [*See Note 1, end of the Section.*]

4. With his accustomed vigor and celerity, William, on hearing of these events, hastened from Normandy, and at once took measures to quell this formidable insurrection. The sons of Harold were defeated on their landing upon the western coast; and York, the only fortress in the north, being captured by William, the conspirators fled, and having concluded a peace with Malcolm, the king found his conquest of England more fully confirmed than ever. Similar outbreaks occurring the next year in Northumbria, and being subdued, William ruthlessly ordered the fertile country, extending sixty miles north of the Humber, to be laid waste; and so thoroughly was the mandate obeyed, that at least 100,000 persons perished, and for several years afterward scarcely an inhabitant could be found in that part of the country.

5. The Anglo-Saxons were now excluded from all offices both in the state and in the church; and William surrounded himself with Norman lords, whom he had enriched with the confiscated estates of those implicated in the late insurrections. The Archbishop of Canterbury was degraded from his dignity on frivolous charges, and Lanfranc, a Milanese monk, distinguished for his piety and learning, was promoted to the vacant see (1070). The Nor-

4. How was the rebellion subdued? What similar outbreaks occurred? How were they prevented for the future?

5. How were the Anglo-Saxons treated? What is said of the Archbishop of Canterbury? The Norman nobles and the Saxons?

man nobles built castles in every part of the kingdom to protect their newly-acquired estates; and the Saxon people were reduced to the condition of serfs. [Notes 2, 3, and 5.]

6. William was passionately fond of hunting, and passed the severest laws to protect the game, making the punishment for killing a deer or a wild boar greater than for killing a human being. In order to make a new forest near his palace at Winchester, he laid waste a tract of country extending thirty miles, driving out the inhabitants, demolishing houses and even churches, but making no compensation for the injury (1081). He also obliged the people to extinguish their fires and candles at a certain hour, on the ringing of a bell, called the *curfew* (*couvre feu*—cover the fire). This requirement was to the English a badge of servitude, although in Normandy, the practice had long been observed as a precaution against fires.*

7. The latter part of William's life was made unhappy by domestic troubles. His eldest son Robert made war upon him in Normandy; and on one occasion, the king's face being concealed by his helmet, a combat occurred between Robert and his father, in which the latter was unhorsed, and would have been slain, had not his voice disclosed in time to his rebellious son the dreadful crime which he was about to commit. Struck with horror at the event, Robert immediately submitted; but it was not until some time afterward that the king consented to pardon him.

8. William's death was caused by a severe injury which he received during an invasion of France. Philip, king of that country, had offended him by some insulting words which he had used concerning him, and was suspected also of having instigated an attack which had been made on Normandy by some of the French barons. William in re-

* See Notes 5 and 6, end of the Section.

6. What is said of the game-laws? The New Forest? The Curfew?
7. What domestic troubles had William? What is said of his son Robert?
8. What caused the king's death? What is said of his remorse?

venge carried fire and sword into the French territories; and having taken the city of Nantes, he laid it in ashes. As he rode through the town, his horse stepping on some burning embers, plunged so violently, that he threw his rider on the pommel of the saddle, and inflicted a mortal hurt. The Conqueror died a few weeks afterward near Rouen, filled with remorse, it is said, for the many wicked and cruel acts which he had committed (1087).

9. William left Normandy and Maine to his eldest son, Robert; directed that his third son, William, should receive the English crown; and bequeathed to his other son, Henry, 5,000 pounds of silver. His second son, Richard, had been killed while hunting in the New Forest. At his death the Norman power had become firmly established in England, the former inhabitants being reduced to a condition of total subjection. In accordance with the *Feudal System*, most of the lands had been parcelled out among the followers of the Conqueror, they in like manner dividing them among their dependents, on the sole condition of performing the duties of vassalage.* The introduction of this system into England was one of the results of the Norman conquest.

10. The year before William's death, a register was completed of all the estates in the kingdom, showing the extent, nature, and divisions of all the landed property in the several counties, with the products of each, and the woods, mines, &c., contained therein. This important compilation was called "Domesday Book." It is still extant, and in 1783 was printed by the English government. From facts furnished by this record, it is computed that the number of families in England during this reign was about 300,000,

* Every vassal was bound to do homage to his superior. Unarmed, and with bare head, he knelt before him, and putting his hands in those of his lord, promised to be "his man" thenceforward, and to serve him faithfully for the lands which he held.

9. William's bequests to his sons? How was his son Richard killed? What was the condition of England at the death of William? What was the Feudal System?

10. What was Domesday Book? Population of England at that time?

and that the population probably amounted to but little over a million. [See Note 7, end of the Section.]

1087 11. William II. (surnamed *Rufus*, the Red, from to the color of his hair). Before the intelligence of the **1100** Conqueror's death had reached England, William arrived, and taking possession of some of the strongest fortresses, and of the royal treasure, was easily enabled to obtain the crown, which, to prevent resistance, the primate Lanfranc and the principal nobility promptly conferred upon him. The Norman barons, however, disliked him, and entered into conspiracy to dethrone him in favor of Robert; but he craftily won over his English subjects by fair promises, and through their aid entirely thwarted the plots of his enemies, who were obliged to flee into Normandy.

12. Indignant at Robert, as the instigator of this rebellion, he in revenge invaded Normandy; but an accommodation was soon entered into between the two brothers, who then united their forces against Prince Henry, and besieged him in a strong fortress which he had seized on the coast of Normandy. The prince was soon obliged to submit, and being deprived of his patrimony, wandered about for some time in great poverty and distress. William, assisted by Robert, then made war upon Malcolm, king of Scotland, and compelled him to accept terms of peace, the Scottish king consenting to do homage to William, and to relinquish Cumberland, which thereafter became an English county (1091).

13. About this time the first crusade was preached, and Robert, wishing to join it, mortgaged to William the duchy of Normandy for five years, receiving therefor a large sum, which the English king obtained by means of forced levies upon his subjects, even compelling the convents to melt their plate in order to furnish their quota. Indeed, Wil-

11. How did William II. obtain the crown? Opposition made by the nobles?

12. What quarrels with his brothers ensued? War with Malcolm, king of Scotland?

13. How did William obtain Normandy? His love of money?

liam showed, in his desire to obtain money, no religious feeling or respect for the Church. After the death of Lanfranc he neglected to appoint a successor, so that he might keep for his own use the revenues of Canterbury, and failed, in like manner, to fill other vacant bishoprics.

14. At last, falling sick, he, in a fit of remorse, sent to Normandy for An'selm, an abbot much celebrated for learning and piety, and persuaded him to accept the primacy; but when he recovered his health he prosecuted his schemes of rapine with as much violence as before. This brought on a contest between him and Anselm, the latter boldly defending the revenues of the Church against the king's injustice and rapacity. The struggle, however, ended in the retirement of Anselm to Rome, where he was received by the pope with every mark of respect.

15. The taking of Jerusalem by the Crusaders prompted other princes to embark in the enterprise; and William, duke of Guienne (*ghe-en'*) and count of Poitiers (*poi-têrz'*), had agreed to mortgage all his dominions to the king of England in order to raise money for the purpose. The latter was about sailing with a fleet and army to pay the money and take possession of these rich provinces, when his reign was suddenly terminated. While hunting in the New Forest, he was shot with an arrow; according to the popular account, accidentally, by his companion Walter Tyrrel;* but, as some suspect, by the unseen hand of an assassin. He was found dead in the forest by a poor charcoal burner, and carried by him to the cathedral at Winchester, where he was buried (1100). At his death he was 42 years of age, and had reigned 13.

16. The character of William Rufus is chiefly remarkable for despotism, rapacity, and debauchery. His temper

* A French gentleman, remarkable for his skill in archery. After the death of the king, he fled to France; but solemnly asserted his innocence, even when he might have confessed his guilt with safety. He afterward went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land.

14. What led to the quarrel with Anselm? Its termination?

15. Mortgage of Guienne, &c.? What account is given of William's death and burial? His age?

16. What is said of his character? What structures were erected? Popular feeling with regard to his death?

was extremely violent, and his manners haughty and fierce. He inherited some of the talents of his father, but was more perfidious and cruel. In person he was short and corpulent, with a remarkably florid complexion. He built a new bridge across the Thames at London, surrounded the tower with a wall, and erected Westminster Hall, which still remains a noble specimen of the architecture of the time. William was the third of his race that had perished in the New Forest,—a circumstance regarded by the people as the just vengeance of Heaven for the cruelty of the Conqueror in expelling the inhabitants from their homes in order that he might indulge his passion for hunting.

1100 17. **Henry I.** (surnamed *Beauclerc* (*bo-clerk*)—the
to *Scholar*). Henry was in the forest, engaged in hunt-
1135 ing, when he heard of his brother's death; and hast-
ening to Winchester, he obtained possession of the royal
treasures, and thus secured his succession to the throne,
notwithstanding the just claims of his elder brother Robert,
then on his return from the Holy Land. He was crowned
at Westminster the third day after William's death. One
of his first acts was the publication of a charter of liberties,
in which he granted to the Church and the barons certain
privileges, and promised to the people to restore the laws of
Edward the Confessor, conferring at the same time special
immunities on the citizens of London. The forest laws were,
however, retained in all their severity.

18. Still further to gain the respect and good-will of the
nation, he recalled Archbishop Anselm, and married
Matilda, daughter of the king of Scotland, and niece of
Edgar Atheling. This Saxon princess was particularly
dear to the English, and her marriage with the king was
the cause of great rejoicing to them. She was beautiful

17. How did Henry obtain the throne? His first acts?

18. Who was recalled? The king's marriage? What is said of Matilda?
What was done by Robert?

and amiable, winning from the Saxon chroniclers the appellation of *Maud the Good*. Meanwhile, Robert had returned to Normandy, and having laid claim to the English throne, determined to make it good by force of arms, being encouraged in the enterprise by many of the Norman barons. He landed in England with his forces, and Henry advanced with an army to meet him; but, through the influence of Anselm, peace was made between the brothers, Robert, who was easy and good-natured, giving up all claim to England for a pension of 3000 marks (1101). [See Note 8, end of the Section.]

19. Robert's dissoluteness, indiscretion, and neglect soon afforded a pretext to Henry to invade Normandy, which, under the misrule of Robert, had become a scene of violence and anarchy. He gained a great victory over Robert, made a complete conquest of the duchy, and carried his unfortunate brother a prisoner to England (1106). Robert remained a captive at Cardiff, in Wales, until his death, twenty-eight years afterward; having, it is said, in the early part of his confinement, been deprived of sight by his cruel brother, for an attempt to escape. Edgar Atheling, who had fought with Robert, was also made a prisoner; but Henry soon restored him to liberty, and settled a pension on him. He lived to a good old age in England, totally neglected and forgotten.

20. Robert's son William (called Fitz-Robert) was also spared, and afterward gave the king considerable trouble; for the king of France, uniting with the counts of Anjou and Flanders in support of his cause, invaded Normandy, and took many towns and castles. In the wars which ensued, Henry was generally successful; but it was not until William Fitz-Robert's death (1128) that he was released from anxiety on his account. Previous to this

19. Further history of Robert? Of Edgar Atheling?

20. What is said of Robert's son? What domestic calamity happened to Henry? Its effect upon him and on the people?

he suffered a terrible blow in the loss of his only son, William, who perished by shipwreck on his return from Normandy (1120). Henry fainted away when he received the sad news; and from that moment, it is said, he lost all cheerfulness, and was never seen to smile. The loss of Prince William was a source of joy to the English; for he was a cruel and dissolute young man, and had boasted that when he came to the throne he would yoke his English subjects to the plough like oxen.

21. The king being without male heirs, made the barons take an oath of fealty to his daughter Matilda, who had been married first to Henry V., emperor of Germany, but was now the wife of Geoffrey Plantagenet,* son of the earl of Anjou. Henry's death occurred, a few years after, in Normandy, in the sixty-seventh year of his age and the thirty-fifth of his reign (1135). His character resembled that of his father, in the great qualities of body and mind which enabled him to acquire the throne, and to administer the government with vigor and address. His person was manly, his countenance engaging, his eyes clear and penetrating. His unusual progress in literature had obtained for him the surname of *Beauclerc*, the Scholar. He was afterward styled the "Lion of Justice," from the severity with which he punished offenders against the laws. His private life was, however, very immoral; and he was so deceitful and treacherous, that even his favorites mistrusted him.

1135 22. Stephen. Notwithstanding the oath which to the barons had taken in favor of Matilda, Stephen, a **1154** grandson of William the Conqueror, and son of the count of Blois (*blwah*), found little difficulty in obtaining the throne. With the royal treasures he hired great numbers of

* *Plantagenet* means, in French, *broom-plant*; and was given as a surname to this family, it is said, because one of their ancestors had done penance by scourging himself with twigs of that plant. Pronounced *Plan-tij'-e-net*.

21. To whom were the barons compelled to swear fealty? What is said of Henry's death? His character? Why was he styled *Beauclerc*? What other appellation did he receive? Why? His private life?

22. Who obtained the throne? What measures did Stephen take? Result?

foreign soldiers, in order to secure himself in possession of the kingdom; and to satisfy the people, issued a liberal charter of privileges. To induce the nobles to submit to his usurped authority, he granted them permission to fortify their castles; and all England was, accordingly, filled with these fortresses, garrisoned by the vassals of their proprietors, or by licentious soldiers gathered from all parts of Europe, who made the country a scene of rapine and desolation.

23. The king of Scotland, in defence of his niece's title, invaded the northern counties, and committed the most barbarous devastations. He was, however, defeated in the great battle of the *Standard*, so called from a high crucifix carried by the English as a military ensign (1138). The next year, Matilda, encouraged by some of the English prelates, with whom Stephen had quarrelled, landed in England with a small retinue, and was soon joined by many of the barons. Civil war ensued, occasioning the most dreadful anarchy and disorder. Licensed robbers sallied forth day and night from the castles of the nobles, and committed every species of lawless violence upon the defenceless people. Villages and cities were burned, the lands remained untilled, and famine and pestilence swept away both the spoilers and their victims.

24. At length, after several conflicts, Stephen was defeated near Lincoln, and made prisoner (1141). The claims of Matilda were solemnly recognized by the clergy; but her imperious behavior soon disgusted all parties, and she was finally compelled to flee into Normandy, after several years of war (1146). The king, who had previously been released, was now restored. A few years afterward his right was again assailed by Henry, son of Matilda, who had acquired Normandy and Maine from his

23. What invasion occurred? Battle of the Standard? What caused civil war? Its effects?

24. What happened to Stephen? What was the conduct of Matilda? What followed? What aid of Henry? What treaty was made?

mother; from his father by inheritance, Anjou (*ahn'joo*) and Tou-raine'; and by his marriage with Eleanor, the divorced queen of France, Guienne, Poitou (*pwah-too'*), and several other provinces. Encouraged by these great possessions, he invaded England, but after gaining some advantages over Stephen, he was induced to make a treaty, by which, upon the death of the king, he was to succeed to the throne (1153). This event occurred the following year.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE NORMAN KINGS.

25. The Norman Conquest wrought many great changes in the social as well as political condition of the people. Among these, the establishment of the *Feudal System* was the most considerable; which system continued to exist in England during about four centuries. Something like feudal tenures had existed among the Saxons; but they were only of a special or exceptional character. William made them universal, and based upon them the whole framework of his political system. In accordance with this system, the title of all the land was possessed by the king, who assigned certain portions to the nobles or barons, by whom these were subdivided among the next lower class, partly consisting of the Saxon thanes, or *franklins*, as they were called by the Normans; and these again distributed them among their dependents. Thus, in each case, the title was made to depend upon the relation of the vassal to his superior.

26. This peculiar relation was established for the purpose of obtaining and preserving military strength; and was admirably adapted to this end. Thus, when the king needed an army he summoned his barons, who in like manner called upon their vassals, and they at once made a similar demand upon their dependents; so that, with

25. Changes wrought by the Norman conquest? The Feudal System?

26. Objects of the Feudal System? The barons?

wonderful promptitude, the whole force of the nation was brought into the field. The barons lived on their estates almost with the power of sovereign princes, each having his court and train of dependents, and protected by his strong castle against all attacks.

27. These feudal castles soon became a striking feature of the Norman period, their whole appearance indicating that the only objects of their construction were strength and security. They were surrounded by walls often more than twelve feet high, within which was a lofty tower called the *Keep*, whose massive walls, pierced with small windows or loop-holes, defied the fiercest assault. Here the baron lived, and here was stored the property of the castle. Under it, was a gloomy dungeon in which those who had offended its haughty master were thrust, and often left to die of famine. The ruins of some of these castles still exist.

28. The most numerous class in England were the Saxon *churls*, or, as called by the Normans, *villains*. These were farmers, and were obliged to place themselves under the protection of some noble, as otherwise they might be seized as robbers. They were bound to reside on the lands which they held from their lords, unless permitted to leave them. Next below these, were the *serfs*, who were in all respects bondmen, being attached to the soil, and subject to the will of their masters. The number of these registered in Domesday Book amounts to 25,000.

29. Closely connected with *feudalism*, was the peculiar institution entitled *Chivalry*, or *Knighthood*. The former constituted the basis of the political system, the latter was of a moral and social character. It was a singular combination of religion, military valor, and gallantry; and for several centuries exercised a prevailing influence upon the

27. The fendal castles? How were they constructed?

28. Different classes of society? Number of serfs according to Domesday Book?

29. Chivalry, or knighthood? Its origin? How affected by the Crusades?

manners, customs, and opinions of all classes of the people. Although its origin can be faintly discerned in the institutions and practices of the German and Gothic nations, its full development was not reached till the eleventh or twelfth century, being rapidly matured by the Crusades, from which it received a strong religious character.

30. Those destined for knighthood received, from their earliest years, a peculiar training. The first degree was that of *page* (called sometimes *child* or *varlet*): after the age of fourteen, the page might be made an *esquire*, and was allowed to bear arms. He was then kept in constant service, waiting upon the master and mistress of the castle, and acquiring habits of perfect obedience and courtesy. Every care was taken to impress indelibly upon his mind a love of chivalry,—that is, a devotion to feats of arms in behalf of the weak and oppressed, or in vindication of religion, and the honor and virtue of the female sex.

31. By means of this training, he was prepared to receive his golden spurs, and to take the vows of a *knight*. The candidate for this honor was obliged, the night before receiving it, to hold his vigil; that is, he kept silent watch within some gloomy chapel over the arms which he was about to assume. The chief of these was the lance, besides which he had a two-handed sword, the “dagger of mercy,” and sometimes a battle-axe or mace. He was clad from head to foot in armor, consisting of plates of metal riveted together, and worn over a dress of soft leather. His helmet bore a crest, ornamented by favors bestowed by the lady of his knightly devotion, and on his triangular shield was a coat of arms.

32. The display of chivalry was not confined to the battle-field, but found a frequent occasion in the tournament or joust—the highest species of amusement of this period.

30. Training of those designed for knighthood? The page? The esquire? What sentiments were imparted?

31. How was knighthood assumed? The knight's equipment?

32. The tournament? Mode of combat? Its usual result?

It consisted of fierce personal contests, held in an enclosed space called the *lists*, around which, in galleries, sat the nobles and ladies to witness the sport, the outside being thronged with eager spectators from the lower orders. At the sound of the trumpet, the combatants, covered with steel and known only by their emblazoned shields, dashed at full gallop from the opposite ends of the lists; and meeting in the centre with a terrific shock, one or the other was generally unhorsed, their lances often being shivered to pieces. The vanquished was thrown bruised and bleeding to the ground; and the victor was rewarded by receiving his horse and armor, and sometimes by the privilege of naming some lady, who, with the title of Queen of Love, presided over the remainder of the tournament. In other cases, he received a scarf, ribbon, or other favor from the lady in whose honor the tournament was held.

33. These combats were not only used for sport, but were resorted to in order to discover the guilty; it being the prevailing belief that Providence would interpose, in all such cases, for the protection of the innocent. In this conviction, those who were charged with crime were challenged by their accusers, and were compelled to abide the issue of a personal combat in the lists. This appeal of the Normans to the justice of Heaven closely resembled the *ordeal* of the Saxons; and upon it was based the practice of the *duel* in more modern times.

34. The dress of the Normans was, in many respects, peculiar. A short cloak, often richly furred and ornamented with gold lace, worn over a loose doublet reaching half way down the leg, formed the most conspicuous portion of the gentleman's costume. The shoes had very long pointed toes, sometimes twisted in a very curious manner, and occasionally fastened by gold or silver chains to the knees.

33. For what were these combats sometimes used? Why? What does this custom resemble?

34. Dress of the Normans? Of the Norman ladies?

Long hose, fastened to the doublet by strings, called *points*, and a velvet bonnet, completed the costume. The Norman ladies wore a loose wide-sleeved robe reaching to the ground, and covering a kirtle or under-gown of silk.

35. Other modes of costume were peculiar to various characters. Thus the *minstrel* was distinguished by his harp strung on his shoulder, a plate of silver on his arm, and a chain around his neck bearing the tuning-key; the fool, or jester, by his cap and bells, and his party-colored dress; the palmer, or pilgrim, by his sandals, the scallop-shells bordering his hat, and his iron-shod staff. The Saxon serf was clothed in untanned hide, sandals of hog-skin, and leathern hose, and wore a collar of brass engraved with his master's name.

36. The Normans had two regular meals—dinner and supper; and at these, flesh meats constituted a much more prominent article of food than with the Saxons. Thus, the names of these meats, as *veal*, *pork*, *mutton*, *beef*, etc., are of Norman or French origin; while the names of the animals themselves,—*calf*, *pig*, *sheep*, *ox*, etc., which were tended by the Saxon farmers or serfs, are of Saxon origin. Wine was the favorite beverage of the higher classes, while the lower orders regaled themselves with ale.

37. Learning at this period was almost exclusively confined to the cloister, the monks and priests being the only scholars. Every monastery had its *writing-room*, where the copying of books was constantly carried on. The most noted among the writers of this time were William of Malmsbury, Geoffrey of Monmouth, and Henry of Huntingdon. These were the authors of several interesting chronicles, to some of which allusion has already been made.

35. Costume of the minstrel? How was the minstrel distinguished? Jester? Palmer? Saxon serf?

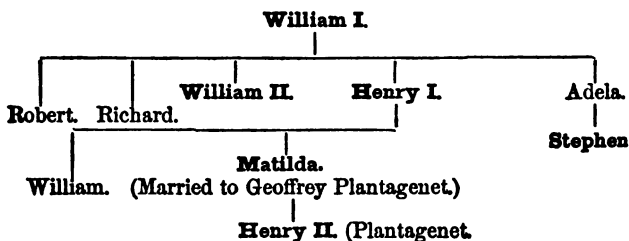
36. Meals of the Normans? Their food? Names of the meats? Names of the animals? Beverages used?

37. Learning? Monastery? Name the noted writers of this time Of what were they the authors? (See preceding pages.)

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

<i>Date of Accession.</i>	<i>Kings.</i>	<i>Duration of Reign.</i>
1066.	William the Conqueror.....	21 years.
1087.	William Rufus.....	13 "
1100.	Henry I. (Beauclerc).....	35 "
1135.	Stephen (of Blois).....	19 "

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE NORMAN KINGS.



REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	<i>PAGE</i>
1. Give an account of the battle of Hastings, with its consequences....	48-49-54
2. Detail the steps by which William I. became king.....	46-48-49-54
3. Name the important events of his reign.....	54-59
4. Detail the events by which William II. obtained the crown.....	58-59
5. What account can you give of the Crusades?.....	59-60
6. Of William's contest with the Church and Anselm?.....	59-60
7. Of the New Forest and its victims?.....	57-58-60-61
8. Of Henry I.'s efforts to obtain and hold the crown?.....	61-62
9. Mention the other events of the reign of Henry I.....	62-63
10. Give an account of Stephen and his reign....	63-64-65
11. Give as full an account as you can of Matilda.....	63-64
12. Of the Feudal System.....	58-Note, p. 58-65-66
13. Of Chivalry, or Knighthood.....	66-67-68
14. Of the dress and meals of the Normans.....	68-69
15. Of learning among the Normans, and the Norman authors.....	68

NOTES.

1. Malcolm's Invasion of England (p. 56, ¶ 3).—"Malcolm III. brought away so many captives that they were to be found for many years afterward in every Scottish village, nay, in every Scottish hovel. No doubt the number of the Saxons thus introduced into Scotland tended much to improve and civilize the manners of the people: for . . . the Scots were inferior to the Saxons in all branches of useful knowledge. Not only the Saxons, but, afterwards, a number of the Normans themselves came to settle in Scotland. King William could not satisfy the whole of them, and some, who were discontented, and thought they could mend their fortunes, repaired to the Scottish court and were welcomed by King Malcolm. He was desirous to retain these brave men in his service, and, for that purpose, he gave them great grants of land, to be held for military services; and most of the Scottish nobility are of Norman descent. And thus the Feudal System was introduced into Scotland."—*Sir Walter Scott*.

2. Sufferings of the English under William (p. 56, ¶ 5).—"After the Normans had accomplished the Lord's will on the English nation, when scarcely a single noble of English extraction remained in the kingdom, all were reduced to such a state of woe and slavery that it was considered a disgrace to be called an Englishman; then sprang up in England iniquitous customs and most evil practices, and the more the new chiefs spoke of right and of justice the greater were the offences committed; those who were called justices were the authors of every injustice; whoever took a stag or a buck was deprived of his eyes, and no one dared complain; for the wild king loved wild beasts as though he were the father of wild beasts. By a most wicked plan he contrived that, where once there used to be the conversation of human beings, or where holy worship used to be offered up in the churches, in that same place stags and every kind of wild beasts boldly ran loose; whence it was proverbially asserted that, for thirty miles and more, land capable of producing crops was converted into forests and dens for wild beasts."—*Roger of Wendover—Flowers of History*.

3. The Feudal Law (p. 56, ¶ 5).—"The conqueror divided all the lands, with very few exceptions, besides the royal demesnes, into baronies; these baronies were again let out to knights or vassals, who paid the lord the same submission in peace or war which he himself paid to his sovereign. The whole kingdom contained about 700 chief tenants, and 60,215 knights-fees; none of the natives were admitted into the first rank, but were glad to be received into the second, and thus be the dependents of some powerful Norman."—*Hume's History of England*.

4. Results of the Norman Conquest (p. 57, ¶ 5).—"The name of Englishman was turned into a reproach. None of that race for 100 years were raised to any dignity in the church or state. Their language and the characters in which it was written were rejected as barbarous; in all schools children were taught French, and the laws were administered in no other tongue. The exclusion of the English from political privileges was accompanied with such a confiscation of property as never perhaps has proceeded from any government not avowedly founding its title upon the sword. In twenty years from the accession of William almost the whole soil of England had been divided among foreigners. Of the native proprietors many had perished in the scenes of rapine and tyranny which attended this convulsion; many were fallen into the utmost poverty; and not a few, certainly, still held their lands as vassals of Norman lords. Several English nobles, desperate of the fortunes of their country, sought refuge in the court of Constanti-

noble, and approved their valor in the wars of Alexius against another Norman conqueror scarcely less celebrated than their own—Robert Guiscard.”—*Hallam's Europe*.

5. Formation of the New Forest (p. 57, ¶ 6).—“The Normans, as well as the ancient Saxons, were passionately fond of the chase, and none more so than the Conqueror. Not content with those large forests which former kings possessed in all parts of England, he resolved to make a new forest near Winchester, the usual place of his residence. For that purpose he laid waste the country for an extent of thirty miles, expelled the inhabitants from the houses, seized their property, demolished thirty-six churches, besides convents, and made the sufferers no compensation for the injury; at the same time he enacted new laws, by which he prohibited all his subjects from hunting in any of his forests, and ordained the most dreadful penalties for their violation. The killing of a deer or a boar, or even a hare, was punished with the loss of the delinquent's eyes; and that, too, at a time when the killing of a man could be atoned for by paying a moderate composition.”—*Hume's History of England*.

6. The Curfew (p. 57, ¶ 6).—“William, knowing how ill the English stood affected to him, resolved to take all possible measures to screen himself from their resentment; for that purpose he took two precautions which were equally insupportable to them. The first was to take away their arms, the second to forbid them any lights in their houses after eight o'clock, at which hour a bell was rung to warn them to put out their fire and candle, under the penalty of a great fine for every offence.”—*Rapin's History of England*.

7. Domesday Book (p. 58, ¶ 10).—“This record, sometimes called the *Doomsday Book*, consists of two volumes, a greater and a less. The first is a large folio, written in 382 double pages of vellum, in a small but plain character, each page having a double column. Some of the capital letters and principal passages are touched with red ink, and some have strokes of red ink run across, as if scratched out. This volume contains the description of 81 counties. The other volume is a quarto, written upon 450 double pages of vellum, but in a single column, and in a large and fair character. It contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk, part of the county of Rutland, including that of Northampton, and part of Lincolnshire in the counties of York and Chester.”—*Encyclopædia Britannica*.

8. Marriage of Matilda (p. 61, ¶ 18).—“Edith, or Matilda, was the daughter of King Malcolm of Scotland and of Margaret, the sister of Edgar Atheling. She had been brought up in the nunnery of Romsey by its abbess, her Aunt Christina, and the veil which she had taken there formed an obstacle to her union with the king, which was only removed by the wisdom of Anselm. The archbishop's recall had been one of Henry's first acts after his accession, and Matilda appeared before his court to tell her tale in words of passionate earnestness. She had been veiled in her childhood, she asserted, only to save her from the insults of the rude soldiery, who infested the land; had flung the veil from her again and again, and had yielded at last to the unwomanly taunts, the actual blows of her aunt. ‘As often as I stood in her presence,’ the girl pleaded passionately to the saintly primate, ‘I wore the veil, trembling, as I wore it, with indignation and grief; but so soon as I could get out of her sight I used to snatch it from my head, fling it on the ground, and trample it under foot. That was the way, and none other, in which I was veiled.’ Anselm at once declared her free from conventual bonds, and the shout of the English multitude when he set the crown on Matilda's brow drowned the murmur of churchman and baron. For the first time since the conquest, an English sovereign sat on the English throne.”—*Green's Short History of the English People*.

Progressive Map, No. 5

Orkney Islands



SECTION III.

THE PLANTAGENETS.

Extending from the Accession of Henry II. (1154), to that of Henry IV. of Lancaster (1399).

1154 1. **Henry II.** (Plantagenet). Adding his extensive possessions in France to the English dominions, **1189** Henry became, on the death of Stephen, one of the richest and most powerful monarchs in Europe. He commenced his reign with vigor and resolution; and the foreign mercenaries who had so long infested the country were ordered to leave it, under the penalty of death. He revoked the grants of land which had been unjustly made during the previous reign, reclaimed the castles belonging to the crown, and compelled the disorderly nobles to dismantle their fortresses, by which they had been enabled to inflict so many cruelties upon the people.

2. Having thus restored order to the kingdom by reducing the inordinate power of the barons, he next determined to bring the ecclesiastical power into subjection to that of the crown. As a fit instrument for carrying this into effect he chose Thomas à Becket, whom, on his accession, he had appointed chancellor, and subsequently had treated with the highest regard and honor, intrusting to him the education of his eldest son. Becket was of English descent, and had risen to eminence through his own talents and industry. The pomp of his retinue, the sumptuousness of his furniture and apparel, and the luxury of his table, are said to have been scarcely surpassed by those of the king, who himself frequently con-

1. What did Henry become, and how? Where was Guienne? (See Map of France, page 55.) How did Henry II. commence his reign?

2. What was his next object? What is said of Thomas à Becket?

descended to partake of the entertainments of his proud minister.

3. On the death of the archbishop of Canterbury, Henry naturally supposed that he should greatly facilitate his design with respect to the Church by conferring the primacy upon a man so wedded to his interests as Becket. He accordingly issued orders to this effect, and the chancellor was duly installed in that high dignity. The king, however, soon found that he had been mistaken in his estimate of Becket's character; for the latter at once resigned the office of chancellor, abandoned all secular affairs, and devoting himself exclusively to his sacred duties, in a short time became as famous for his austerity and piety, as he had previously been for gayety, luxury, and splendor. He wore sackcloth next his skin, partook only of bread and water; frequently scourged himself in the severest manner; and it is said, daily on his knees washed the feet of thirteen beggars, to evince his humility, and show penitence for his former pride and arrogance.

4. Determined to defend the privileges of his order, he was soon brought into a conflict with the king; the latter insisting that clergymen charged with the commission of crimes should be tried in the civil courts, while the archbishop asserted that they were amenable only to the ecclesiastical authority. The king therefore summoned an assembly of the prelates, and submitted to them the question in dispute; but receiving only an evasive answer, he called a general council of the nobility and prelates at Clarendon, at which were proposed and adopted sixteen articles, called the "Constitutions of Clarendon," by which the clergy were made subservient to the royal authority (1164).

3. Why was Becket made chancellor? What course did he pursue?

4. What conflict ensued? What was done by the king? What were the Constitutions of Clarendon?

5. Becket for a time withheld his assent to these propositions; but finding himself deserted by the other bishops, he at last solemnly promised to observe them. The Roman pontiff, however, annulled them; and Becket repented of his compliance, and renewed his opposition to the king. Henry, highly exasperated, caused the inflexible prelate to be prosecuted and condemned for contempt of the royal authority; and also demanded of him restitution of several large sums of money. Becket, finding resistance useless, secretly departed from England, and took refuge with the king of France, by whom, as well as by the Pope, he was encouraged and sustained, the latter threatening Henry with excommunication.

6. A settlement was, however, effected; and the king consented to the return of Becket, after six years of banishment, on terms quite favorable to the archbishop. The people and clergy received him with joyful acclamations, and the king hoped that all cause of trouble was at an end; but the archbishop had brought letters of suspension and excommunication against three prelates for being concerned with the king in illegal acts during his absence, and proceeded violently to enforce them. When the intelligence of this was brought to Henry, he burst into a paroxysm of rage, and exclaimed, "Is there no one of my subjects who will rid me of this insolent priest?" Four knights, construing this as a command, immediately proceeded to the residence of the prelate, and, pursuing him into the cathedral, barbarously slew him before the altar (1170).

7. Henry was in Normandy when this occurred, and when he heard of it, was thrown into the greatest consternation. He expressed the deepest sorrow for the words he had hastily uttered, and evinced the sincerity of his repent-

5. What was the further course of Becket? Of Henry? What followed?

6. What settlement was effected? How was the king exasperated? The consequences?

7. Effect of the murder of Becket upon the king? Upon the king's cause? How was Henry absolved?

ance by acts of the severest penance. Four years later he resolved to go as a pilgrim to the tomb of the murdered prelate, already canonized as a saint and martyr; and for miles of the way walked barefoot over the flinty road, marking his steps with blood. Independently of its atrocity, nothing could have been more disastrous to the king's cause than the murder of Becket; for the Church party gained more by the death of their champion than all his best efforts could have won for them if he had lived, talented and determined as he was. Henry could obtain absolution from the Pope only by taking a solemn oath of innocence, and by promising to abolish all customs hostile to the liberties of the clergy, which had been introduced since his accession.

8. One of the most important events of this reign was the conquest of Ireland, which Henry partly effected in 1172. Ireland, anciently called *Hibernia*, was peopled by a race similar to the Britons; but little is known of its history before the fourth century. Each province had its separate king, but was dependent upon the monarch who held his court at *Tara*. In the fifth century the people were converted to Christianity, chiefly through the efforts of the renowned St. Patrick.* From the sixth to the twelfth century, Ireland became famous for its progress in literature and art, and sent forth many learned men and missionaries from the monasteries which had been established. For three centuries it was much harassed by the Northmen or Danes; but in 1014, the latter were utterly defeated in a great battle fought at *Clon'tarf*, near Dublin. [See Note 1.]

9. Some years before the death of Becket, Henry obtained permission from the Pope to subdue the island; but it was not until 1172 that an opportunity offered for effecting this

* This celebrated missionary was born in the northwestern part of France, near Boulogne. He commenced his labors in 432, and after a life of indefatigable exertion, died at an advanced age in 472.

8. What important event occurred during this reign? History of Ireland? St. Patrick? Battle of Clon'tarf? Situation of Clon'tarf?

9. What account is given of the conquest?

object. One of the five subordinate kings having been expelled from his province, and having taken refuge in England, succeeded in enlisting a force from the Anglo-Norman nobles and adventurers commanded by Richard de Clare, surnamed Strongbow, with which he regained his kingdom. The English under Strongbow then so rapidly prosecuted the conquest of the country, that the next year Henry went there, and having received the submission of most of the native chiefs, committed the government of the conquered territory to a viceroy whom he appointed (1172).

10. This successful undertaking of Henry was followed by great troubles, occasioned by family dissensions. Three of his five sons, Henry, Richard, and Geoffrey, demanded a share of his dominions, and being refused, went to France, and entered into an alliance with Louis, king of that country, against their father. In this rebellion they were encouraged by their mother, Eleanor, who had become incensed against the king for his licentiousness, and particularly on account of his attachment to Rosamond Clifford, styled, in the ballads of the time, the "Fair Rosamond." William, king of Scotland, also entered into the league against Henry, and invaded the northern counties. It was in these distressful circumstances that the pilgrimage to Canterbury was made, when he received absolution from all connection with the murder of Becket.

11. So immediate seemed the answer to Henry's prayers and repentance, that the next day he received intelligence that the Scottish king had been defeated in a great battle, and taken prisoner (1174). This event destroyed the confederacy, and compelled its members to make submission to the English monarch. Peace was made with Louis, the rebellious princes returned to their obedience, and the

10. What dissensions occurred in Henry's family? Conduct of his sons? Of Eleanor? Of William of Scotland? Pilgrimage of Henry?

11. Defeat of the Scots? The result? On what terms was peace made?

king of Scotland was released on condition that he would thereafter hold his throne as a vassal to the king of England; and, to enforce this, the cities of Berwick and Roxburgh, together with the castle of Edinburgh, were placed in the possession of the English (1175).

12. The latter part of Henry's reign was embittered by the renewed rebellion of his sons; but, in the midst of it, Henry, the eldest, was seized with a fatal illness, and died, feeling the deepest remorse for his unnatural conduct (1183). Geoffrey was killed in a tournament (1186); but Richard continued in his disobedience, and, encouraged by Philip of France, again took up arms against his father. Disheartened by these renewed misfortunes, Henry submitted to a very humiliating treaty of peace with the French king (1189); and when in the list of those who had been connected with Richard, and whom he had consented to pardon, he found the name of his youngest son, John—his especial favorite—the unhappy father yielded to despair, and heart-broken, sank a few days afterward into the grave (1189). [*See Note 2, end of Sec.*]

13. He was undoubtedly a great monarch, distinguished for wisdom and ability. He was averse to war; but when it was unavoidable, he entered into it with spirit and energy, and conducted it with talent and success. His administration of the government was characterized both by vigor and justice; and he did much to establish the royal authority in opposition to the violence of the feudal barons, and to the exorbitant claims and pretensions of the clergy. He was a patron of learning and art; and many Gothic edifices of great splendor were erected during his reign. The arts of civilized life also made considerable progress during the same period. [*See Note 3, end of Sec.*]

12. Latter part of Henry's reign? Conduct of his sons? Rebellion of John? Death of the king?

13. Character of Henry II.? His government? Learning? The arts?

1189 **14. Richard I. Cœur de Lion** [*kyur duh lo-ong*
 to —the Lion-hearted).—Henry's two elder sons having
1199 died, he was succeeded by his third son, Richard. Before the death of his father, Richard had engaged with Philip of France to enter upon a crusade against the infidels in Palestine; and accordingly the year after his accession, leaving his kingdom to be administered by two bishops, whom he appointed its guardians, he set out. Previous to his departure some of the Jews, having brought him presents on the day of his coronation, were insulted by the populace; and a rumor spreading that the king had commanded a massacre of these people, the populace, not only in London, but in York, and other cities, rose up against them, and many were put to death with barbarous cruelty.

15. After many delays, Richard and Philip arrived at their place of destination, and joined their forces to the other Christians, who, for two years, had besieged Acre (*a'ker*)*. In a short time the city surrendered; but Philip, jealous of the superior abilities of Richard, and offended at his arrogance, determined to return home. Richard then marched his army to As'calon,† which, after many battles with the renowned Saladin, he succeeded in taking. He could, however, only obtain a sight of Jerusalem; for when he came near that city he found his forces so reduced in numbers, and so enfeebled by famine and hardship, that he was obliged to return (1192).

16. He therefore concluded a truce with Saladin, who agreed that Acre and other seaport towns in Palestine should remain in the hands of the Christians, and that the pilgrims should be permitted to visit the Holy City

* A seaport of Syria, noted for the memorable sieges it has sustained. It was taken by the first Crusaders in 1104, retaken by the Saracens in 1187, and regained by Richard four years afterward, as mentioned in the text.

† A seaport of Syria, south of Acre, and about 40 miles W. S. W. of Jerusalem. It is now in ruins.

14. Who succeeded Henry II. ? What enterprise did he engage in ? The Jews ?
15. What account is given of the Crusade ?

16. Terms of peace with Saladin ? Richard's conduct and reputation in Palestine ? What is said of the generous conduct of Saladin ?

without molestation (1192). Richard had performed prodigies of valor in his numerous battles with the Saracens, and had exhibited the highest characteristics of an able and daring leader. So well known were his strength and courage, that, it is said, the Saracens would often say to their horses when restive, "What! do you think you see King Richard?" When it was necessary to repair the ruined walls of Ascalon, Richard, to encourage the soldiers, labored in person; and so great was the admiration in which he was held by Saladin, that, when he was dangerously sick with a fever, the generous sultan sent him fruits, ice to cool them, and other things necessary to aid in his recovery.

17. On his voyage homeward, Richard was shipwrecked on the coast of Istria. As he had given great offence to the duke of Austria in Palestine, he undertook to travel through Germany in the disguise of a pilgrim to prevent discovery and arrest. He was, however, discovered, made a captive by the duke, and delivered to the emperor, by whom he was kept in confinement until his subjects consented to pay a large ransom for his liberation. This unjust treatment of so valiant a champion of the cross excited great indignation, not only in England, but in other countries of Europe; but Philip, although he had promised not to invade the dominions of his colleague, with the grossest treachery and falsehood plotted with John to seize upon the dominions of the English monarch, and divide them between themselves.

18. This scheme was disconcerted by the return of the lawful sovereign, on whose appearance the joy of the English was beyond bounds; and John was obliged to ask pardon of his much-injured brother (1194). It was generously granted, at Queen Eleanor's intercession, with

17. What happened to Richard while on his return? What was the conduct of Philip and John?

18. Return of Richard? What was his conduct toward John? Toward Philip? His death?

the exclamation: "O, that I could forget his injuries as soon as he will my forgiveness!" After settling the affairs of England, Richard made war upon Philip in revenge for his treachery, and transported an army into Normandy for the purpose. Hostilities continued, with occasional interruptions, until Richard's death, which was caused by a wound received while besieging the castle of a rebellious vassal in France (1199). He died in the tenth year of his reign, and the forty-second of his age. [See Note 4.]

19. The character of this monarch is one of the most romantic to be found in history, and displayed a love of adventure, a military daring, and a strength and skill in feats of arms, unsurpassed in ancient or modern times. His people, oppressed by the taxes which were ruthlessly levied to carry out his useless projects, were yet proud of his fame, though he accomplished nothing for their benefit, nor advanced in any respect, the prosperity of the country. The best traits of his character were his fearlessness, generosity, and candor; but these were counterbalanced by his haughtiness, cruelty, and disregard for the good of others. He was passionately fond of music and poetry, being himself the author of several songs, which have given him a reputation among the *troubadours*, or poets of the time. Blondel, one of these minstrels, was his especial favorite.*

1199 20. John (Lackland).—Richard, having left no
120 children, was succeeded by his brother John;
1216 although Arthur, Geoffrey's son, a youth of twelve years, was the rightful heir to the throne. Indeed, the barons in the French provinces declared in his favor; and Philip also embraced Arthur's cause. John, having been crowned,

* According to tradition, it was Blondel who discovered, after many wanderings, the place of his captivity in Germany, by singing under the walls of his prison his favorite song, to which Richard at once responded.

19. Character of Richard? His popularity? What is said of Blondel?

20. Who succeeded Richard I.? Who was the rightful heir? What wars were waged in his favor? His fate?

immediately took active measures to defend his authority; and the French king, always actuated by selfish motives, entered into a treaty with him, and deserted the young prince (1200). Two years afterward the war was renewed, and Philip again brought Prince Arthur forward as a claimant to the throne against John; but the latter succeeded, in the course of the war, in taking his nephew prisoner, and caused him to be cruelly murdered (1203).

21. Philip, at the instigation of the nobles of Brittany, then summoned John, as duke of Normandy and Aquitaine, to answer for this offence before a court of peers; but he refused to obey the summons, and was accordingly adjudged to lose all his French territories, which Philip, in a few years, succeeded in conquering and annexing to his own dominions. Thus, of all the French provinces which Henry Plantagenet had acquired, scarcely a single castle was left to acknowledge the sovereignty of his wicked and imbecile son.

22. John was next involved in a quarrel with the Roman pontiff (Innocent III.), who, on the death of the archbishop of Canterbury (1205), had, without regard to the king's authority, caused Stephen Langton to be elected to the vacancy. John refusing to give his sanction to the appointment, Innocent placed the kingdom under an interdict, the effect of which was, that the churches were closed, the dead were refused Christian burial, and all other religious offices ceased (1208). The king still resisting, was formally excommunicated by the pope (1209); his people were then absolved from their allegiance to him, and a solemn injunction was laid upon Philip to execute the sentence and take possession of the kingdom (1212).

23. John, finding that he could not rely upon his subjects to make opposition to the French monarch, at last

21. Why was John deprived of his French territories?

22. What led to a difficulty with the pope? What was done by Innocent?

23. Submission of John? Disaster to Philip? Why interesting?

submitted, acknowledged Langton as primate, and solemnly surrendered his dominions to the pope, promising to hold them as his obedient vassal, and to pay him an annual tribute (1213). Philip, persisting in his design to conquer England, sustained a great disaster in the loss of his fleet, which was attacked by the English and destroyed (in the harbor of Damme (*dam*), in Flanders). This was the first naval action of importance between the French and English.

24. John's next contest was with his own subjects, whom he had inspired with universal discontent and hatred by his insolence, tyranny, and arbitrary exactions; and to these was now added the disgrace which they felt he had brought upon the nation by abandoning its independence, and surrendering it to a foreign power. The barons, therefore, under the leadership of Langton, determined to wrest from the king a charter of privileges, by which the royal authority should be restrained, and the liberties of the people more securely established.

25. This, John steadily refused until a large army had been raised by the barons, and the city of London taken, when he finally submitted, and signed the famous *Magna Charta* (the Great Charter) at Runnymede (June 15, 1215). One of the most important articles of this instrument was, that "no delay should take place in doing justice to every one; and no freeman should be taken or imprisoned, dispossessed of his free tenement, outlawed, or banished, *unless by the legal judgment of his peers.*" This celebrated charter, therefore, although granted to the nobles, protected the rights of all, and is justly regarded as the palladium of English liberty.

26. Although he had signed this instrument, and solemnly pledged his word to observe its provisions, John,

24. John's next contest? What course did the barons pursue?

25. *Magna Charter*? Where and when was it signed? One of its most important articles?

26. What is said of the treachery of John? What foreign army was levied?

with his accustomed faithlessness and treachery, determined if possible to disregard it and to punish its authors. For this purpose he raised an army of foreign soldiers, and, under the sanction of a decree of the pope, revoked his assent to the charter. The barons were taken by surprise; and John, with his barbarous mercenaries, marched through the kingdom, perpetrating every species of cruelty, and laying waste county after county with fire and sword.

27. The barons, seeing no other means of redress, then had recourse to Philip of France, and offered to acknowledge his son Louis king of England on condition of receiving aid against their tyrannical sovereign. An army was accordingly sent over with Louis at its head; and John took measures to assemble all his forces to oppose it; but, passing from Lynn to Lincoln, his road lay along the sea-shore, and being overtaken by the tide, he lost all his carriages, treasures, and baggage. This disaster, coupled with the distracted condition of his affairs, threw him into a fever, of which he in a few days expired, in the eighteenth year of his detestable reign (1216).

28. Few characters in history deserve so thoroughly the execration and contempt of mankind as this wicked king. Falsehood, cowardice, tyranny, and licentiousness marked his whole conduct; and not a redeeming trait seems to have existed to save him from utter reprobation. His ingratitude to his kind father, his treachery to his generous brother, and his cruelty toward his innocent nephew, were only equalled in baseness by the cowardice with which he surrendered the rights of his subjects when it seemed necessary to serve his own interests. Yet, bad as he was, he proved an instrument for good in the hands of a beneficent Providence; since his intolerable oppression drove the barons into rebellion, and was thus the means of securing the freedom of the people.

27. Course taken by the barons? Disaster to the king? His death?

28. Character of John? How was he an instrument of good?

1216 to 1272 **29. Henry III.**—At the time of John's death, the earl of Pembroke was marshal of England, and he, without delay, caused Henry, the son of the late king, a youth nine years of age, to be crowned. Pembroke, who was an able and virtuous nobleman, was, at a general council of the barons, chosen protector of the realm. One of his first acts was to cause the Great Charter to be renewed and confirmed; and consequently most of the rebellious nobles soon made their submission to his government. The army of Louis being defeated at Lincoln, and a fleet bringing him succor being destroyed, he was obliged to leave the kingdom. This ended the civil war which the oppression of King John had excited. Pembroke soon after died (1219); and the government was subsequently administered for nearly ten years by Hubert de Burgh, a nobleman who had acquired great renown in the recent naval action with the French.

30. As the young king advanced in age, he was found to resemble his father in the weakness of his character, but was gentle, merciful, and humane. For years he showered favors upon his minister Hubert de Burgh, and implicitly followed his counsels; but, at length, in a fit of caprice, not only dismissed him, but subjected him to a series of the most merciless persecutions (1231). Peter, bishop of Winchester, a native of Poitou (*pwah-too'*),* then became his chief counsellor; and, acting on his advice, he invited over a great number of foreigners, on whom he conferred the most important offices and dignities, in order that through them he might counterbalance the power of the English nobles. Having married Eleanor, daughter of the count of Provence (*pro-vonse'*)* (1236), he also

* A country in France. (See map of France, page 55.)

29. Who was crowned king? Who was chosen protector? His first measures? End of the French war? Who afterward administered the government?

30. Character of the young king? How did he treat Hubert de Burgh? His next counsellor? His course toward foreigners? His marriage?

brought over a number of strangers from that country, whom he enriched at the expense of his own subjects.

31. To these grievances were also added the exactions of the court of Rome, to which Henry had, on his accession, renewed the oath of allegiance taken by his father. All the chief offices in the Church were bestowed on Italians, and a large part of the ecclesiastical revenues were claimed by the Roman pontiff. Moreover, the latter having decreed the forfeiture of the crown of Sicily, offered it to Henry, who, accepting the proposal, spent vast sums of money in attempting to complete its conquest; and, in order to pay the debt thus incurred, applied to the Parliament for supplies. This, with other unwise and arbitrary acts, involved him in a difficulty with the barons, who compelled him in the most solemn manner to promise compliance with the provisions of Magna Charta; but, under the influence of his unworthy favorites, he broke all his engagements.

32. The barons, therefore, under the leadership of Simon de Montfort, earl of Leicester (*les'ter*), being resolved to take the government into their own hands, appointed a council of state from their own number to redress the grievances under which they suffered; and Henry was compelled to acquiesce in their authority (1258). This proceeding was at first popular; but the council becoming exorbitant in their demands, the favor of the people inclined toward the king; and the influence of the barons became still farther impaired by the dissensions between the chief leaders, the earls of Leicester and Gloucester (*glos'ter*). Louis IX. also sustained the cause of the king against the rebellious barons, and exerted himself to pacify the contending parties.

33. Civil war soon broke out, and Leicester, summoning

31. What other grievances did the people suffer? What was done with regard to the crown of Sicily? What is said of the deceitful conduct of Henry?

32. What course did the barons take? How did the barons become unpopular? Which side did Louis IX. favor?

33. What led to the battle of Lewes? Where is Lewes? (See Progressive Map, No. 5.) Effects of this battle? Institution of the House of Commons?

his partisans from all quarters, gained a decisive victory over the royal forces at Lewes (1264), taking Henry and his son Edward prisoners. The whole power of the kingdom was thus thrown into the hands of Leicester, who, in order to strengthen his influence, summoned a parliament, giving seats in it, not only to the barons and knights, but to the *representatives of the boroughs, or towns* (1265). This is considered the first institution of the House of Commons, which, representing the will of the great body of the people, has ever proved the chief bulwark of the political and civil liberty of the country.

34. Prince Edward having escaped from the confinement in which he had been kept by Leicester, raised an army; and in the battle of Evesham, entirely defeated the forces of Leicester, who, with his eldest son, was among the slain (1265). The victors, with savage ferocity, wreaked their vengeance upon his lifeless body; but the people long regarded him as a martyr to their cause and the champion of their liberties. By this victory Henry's authority was re-established in all parts of the kingdom; and Prince Edward having by prudent measures restored general tranquillity, and infused a wiser and more popular spirit in the government, went on a crusade to the Holy Land, in connection with King Louis of France (1270). Before his return his father died, after the exceedingly long reign of fifty-six years (1272).

35. Henry was mild and pacific in his disposition, but possessed neither the talents nor force of character required to cope successfully with the difficulties of so disturbed a period. Like all weak sovereigns, he was inconsistent and vacillating in his measures, and thus acquired the reproach of great insincerity. England, during his reign, increased in wealth and influence, and widely ex-

34. What led to the battle of Evesham? Where is Evesham? What were the results of it? What was done by Prince Edward? Death of Henry III?

35. Character of Henry III.? Progress made during his reign in commerce? Change in the people? Language? Dress?

tended her commercial relations with other countries. This period also appears to mark the thorough intermingling of the Saxon and Norman races. The English language began to assume its present form; and the difference in dress, so long a mark of distinction between the conquering and the conquered people, had nearly passed away before the end of Henry's reign.

1272 **36. Edward I.**—The son of the late king, who
to had already acquired among the English a high
1307 reputation for talent and address, was at once acknowledged sovereign by the barons, although absent, not having returned from his expedition to Palestine. After many glorious achievements in that country, he had hastened his departure, having heard of his father's illness; and had reached Sicily, when he received tidings of the king's death, and of the peaceful settlement of the crown upon himself. He, accordingly, made no haste to occupy the throne, but spent more than a year in Italy and France before he arrived in England. After his coronation (1274), he made provision for the proper administration of justice and for a strict execution of the laws.

37. The first event of importance during this reign, was the conquest of Wales. Llew-el'lyn, prince of that country, had been concerned in the rebellion of Simon de Montfort, but after his death had been pardoned. Edward, on his accession, repeatedly sent him a summons to perform the duty of a vassal; and on his refusal invaded the country with an army, and compelled him to yield obedience (1277). Five years afterward the Welsh prince, with the aid of his brother David, again asserted his independence; but in an action with the English, under Edward, was defeated and slain (1282). David was a short time afterward taken

36. Who succeeded Henry III. ? What is said of his exploits in Palestine ? His return ? His first measure ?

37. Llewellyn, prince of Wales ? David, his brother ? What was done with Wales ? What title was given to the heir apparent ?

prisoner, sent in chains to Shrewsbury, and there executed as a traitor (1283). The principality was then annexed to the crown, and vested in the king's son, Edward, who was born at Caernarvon (*ker-nar'von*), and by the death of his elder brother became heir to the English throne. Ever since that event the heir-apparent has been styled the "Prince of Wales."

38. The persecutions to which the Jews were exposed illustrate the bigotry as well as barbarity of these times. Clipping the coin was made a capital offence; and in the first part of this reign, 280 Jews were hanged, the sole evidence of their guilt being the possession of some of this coin (1278). A few years afterward, all the Jews in England were imprisoned, and were only released on their paying to the king £12,000; and finally the whole race, to the number of over 16,000, were banished the kingdom (1290). It was nearly four centuries before any of that proscribed race were allowed again to come into England.

39. The wars with Scotland occupy nearly all the rest of this reign. Alexander III., king of that country, having died without heirs, numerous competitors arose for the throne, the most prominent of whom were John Ba'liol and Robert Bruce, the former being the *grandson* of the *eldest* daughter, and the latter a *son* of the *second* daughter, of David, the brother of William II., the king whom Henry II. had defeated and taken prisoner. The parliament of Scotland, wishing to avoid a civil war, referred the matter to the arbitration of Edward, who took advantage of the circumstances to claim his right, as lord paramount, to the Scottish throne; and to this the Scots, though with great indignation, were compelled to submit (1291).

38. What is said of the persecutions of the Jews? Their banishment?

39. What wars occupy much of this reign? What question arose as to the succession in Scotland? What course did Edward pursue?

40. The question between Baliol and Bruce having been decided by the most celebrated lawyers of Europe in favor of the former, as being the most direct heir, he was accordingly placed upon the throne, after having taken the oath of fealty to the English monarch (1292). Not satisfied with this, Edward so harassed Baliol with frequent and degrading commands, that the latter determined at all hazards to make a stand for his own and his country's liberty, especially as at that time a war had broken out between England and France. This war had its origin in a quarrel between the crews of an English and a Norman vessel, who happening to go to the same place to fill their water-casks, fell into a dispute, in the course of which one of the Normans was slain. This bred dissensions between the sailors of both countries, and the sea soon became a scene of constant combat and piracies between them. At length a fleet of English ships encountered one of Norman vessels, and after a fierce battle, destroyed or captured nearly the whole (1293).

41. Philip, king of France, being then appealed to, summoned Edward, as duke of Guienne (*ghe-en'*), to appear and answer for these offences committed by his subjects; and afterward artfully persuaded him temporarily to relinquish possession of the duchy, as a satisfaction for all injuries. The French king thus obtaining control of Guienne, again cited Edward, and on his refusal to appear, declared the duchy forfeited, and annexed it to his own dominions (1294). In order still farther to embarrass Edward, he entered into a secret alliance with Baliol, thus commencing that union between the Scottish and French nations which for centuries was maintained by their common hostility to the English. In order to obtain the supplies needed to carry on this double war, Edward

40. How was the question settled? Why did Baliol revolt? What led to a war with France?

41. How did Philip obtain Guienne? What alliance did he enter into? What did this begin? What measure was adopted by Edward?



STIRLING CASTLE (AT THE PRESENT TIME).

It is supposed that this castle was fortified by Agricola, with the view to secure the Roman Settlements in the South of Scotland against the incursions of the Northern Caledonians. It was frequently taken and retaken during the warfares in the ninth and tenth centuries and in the later wars between England and Scotland. It remains at the present day very much as it was when Scotland was a separate kingdom.

called a parliament, to which he directed that the representatives of the boroughs should be summoned, stating that "what concerns all should be approved by all,"—a principle that lies at the foundation of all civil and political freedom (1295).

42. Edward, with characteristic energy, marched into Scotland with a large army, and having defeated the Scots near Dunbar, reduced all the southern part of the country (1296). Baliol at once submitted, and was carried a prisoner to London. He was kept in confinement for two years, after which he was allowed to retire to France, where he died in obscurity. Scotland, although subdued for a time, soon found a noble champion in the renowned *William Wallace*, who defeated an English army of 40,000 men near Stirling, and committed great ravages in the north of England (1297). The next year, however, Edward defeated Wallace in the battle of Falkirk (*fawl'-kirk*), and again established his power in Scotland. Wallace was never afterward able to gain a decisive victory over his country's enemies, although he fought bravely for several years, until, having been betrayed by one of his own countrymen into the power of Edward, that remorseless king sent him to London; and, in order to intimidate the Scottish leaders, caused him to be executed (1305).*

43. The people of Scotland, indignant at the oppressions of the English, and at the cruel and ignominious treatment of their illustrious champion Wallace, determined to make another effort to regain their liberties, finding a gallant and patriotic leader in Robert Bruce, son of the competitor of Baliol, who being acknowledged the rightful heir to the throne, had been solemnly crowned in the abbey of Scone. The English were soon driven again from the country; but Edward immediately sent

* See Note 6, end of the Section.

42. How was Baliol subdued? What became of him? William Wallace? Battle of Falkirk? Fate of Wallace?

43. What is said of Robert Bruce? By whom was he defeated? Death of Edward? His last injunction to his son?

thitner a considerable army under Ay'mer de Valence (*val-ons'*), a skilful general, by whom Bruce, in spite of the most heroic exertions, was defeated, and compelled to take shelter in the western isles. Edward, determined to take vengeance upon the Scots, marched with a great army to the north; but worn out with care and fatigue, fell sick at Carlisle and died (1307). His last injunction to his son and successor was to continue the war until Scotland should be entirely subdued. [*Note 7, end of Sec.*]

44. Edward was one of the ablest and most successful monarchs that ever reigned. He was politic and warlike, and very popular on account of his majestic personal appearance, his military successes, and the efforts which he made to reform and establish the laws. These efforts gained for him the appellation of the "English Justinian." The Great Charter was solemnly confirmed by him in the twenty-fifth year of his reign, although with great reluctance on his part; and he was compelled also to give his formal assent to the principle, so important in the English Constitution, that "no taxes can be lawfully imposed without the consent of parliament." It is very much to the credit of the English, that they were able to wrest these important concessions from so able and vigorous a monarch as Edward I.

45. The people not only made progress in political freedom during this reign, but in general intelligence and social culture. Many discoveries in science and many useful inventions were made by Roger Bacon,* among the latter that of gunpowder, although he failed to adapt it to any practical purpose. Considerable foreign commerce was

* Roger Bacon was born in 1214, and educated at Oxford. His scientific knowledge was so far above the comprehension of his contemporaries, that he was accused of sorcery. He died in 1294. It was not until 1320 that Schwartz discovered a method of producing *granulated gunpowder*, and thus adapted it to practical use.

44. What is said of the character of Edward I.? What was he styled? What political principles were established?

45. What progress was made during this reign? Roger Bacon? Foreign commerce? How was trade carried on? Origin of the name "sterling money?" (See note, page 91).

carried on, chiefly by Germans,* the principal commodities being tin, lead, leather, and wool. The native merchants remonstrating to Edward against permitting "merchant strangers" to settle in the kingdom, he replied that they were of great benefit to the country, and should not be expelled. The trade was, to a considerable extent, carried on at fairs, which often continued for more than a fortnight, and were attended by vast crowds of people, sometimes equalling the population of large cities.

1307 **46. Edward II.**—"Edward of Caernarvon," so
10 called from the place of his birth, proved a very
1327 unworthy successor of his talented and illustrious father. Disobeying the solemn injunction imposed upon him, he speedily withdrew his forces from Scotland; and thus Robert Bruce was enabled gradually to recover from the English the fortresses which they had seized, and to re-establish the freedom of his country. In the mean time Edward gave himself up to the influence of an unworthy favorite, Gaveston by name, the son of a Gascon knight, brave, accomplished, and of handsome appearance; but of frivolous manners, and very much hated by the English nobles, whom, priding himself upon his power over the king, he treated with haughty disdain. [See Note 8.]

47. Twice compelled by Parliament to banish him from the kingdom, Edward as often recalled him, and restored him to his former wealth and dignity. At length, a confederacy of the nobles being formed to accomplish his ruin, he was captured by their forces, conducted to Warwick Castle, and without trial, or any legal process whatever, beheaded, as an enemy to the kingdom (1312). Edward was at first very indignant at the murder of his

* These German merchants were called *Esterlings*, (people from the east,) from the situation of their country; and as they coined a large part of the money, good currency came to be called *sterling* money.

46. Title given to Edward II. ? What is said of him ? The Scots ? Conduct of Edward ? What account is given of Gaveston ?

47. Further account of Gaveston and his fate ? Behavior of Edward toward the nobles ?

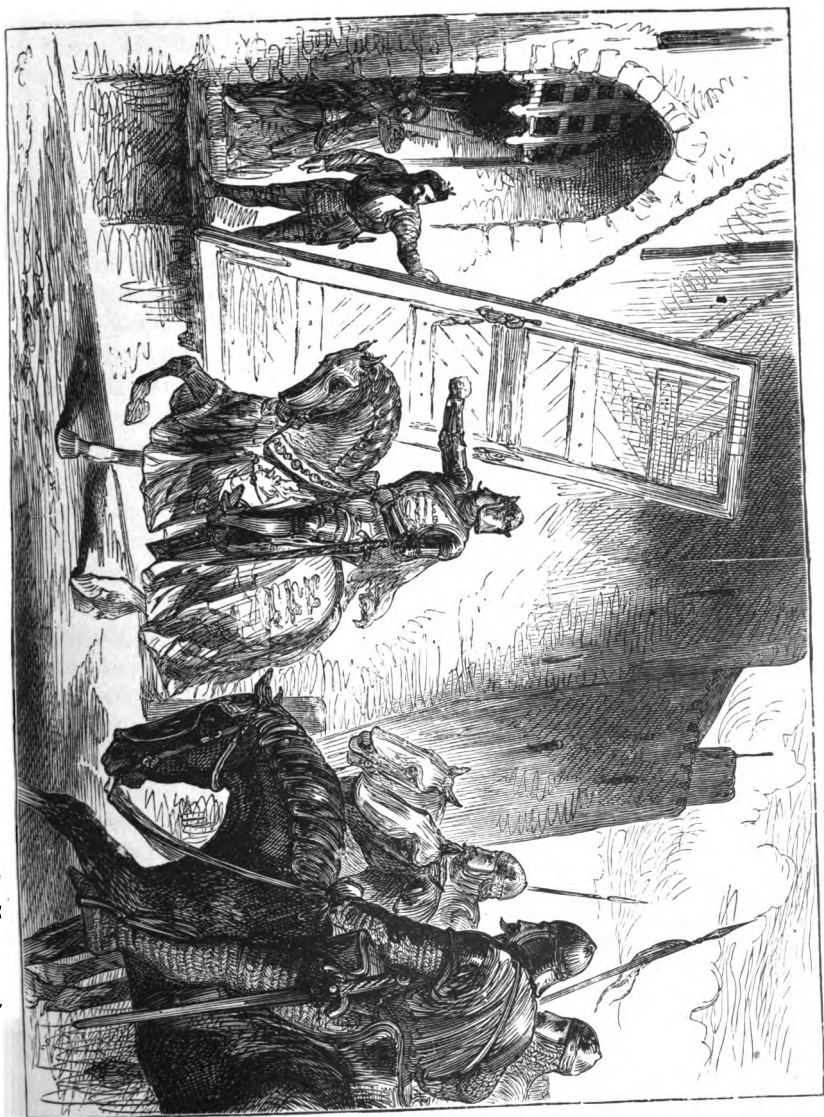
favorite, and vowed vengeance against the nobles who had been concerned in its perpetration; but soon afterward granted them a full pardon, on their consenting to supplicate him for it publicly on their knees.

48. Soon after these events the attention of the king was called to the Scots, who, not content with defending their own country, had made successful inroads into England. The union of all parties, after the death of Gaveston, seemed to offer a favorable opportunity to concentrate all the forces of the kingdom against Scotland, and to recover all that had been lost in that country by the lethargy of the king. The castle of Stirling was the only fortress, except Berwick, which the English still retained; and this had long been closely besieged by Edward Bruce, brother of the Scottish king. [*See Note, bottom of page 107.*]

49. Thither, with an immense army (100,000 according to the Scotch writers), Edward marched to relieve the garrison; and Robert Bruce, being determined to risk a battle, drew up his forces (about 30,000 in number) at Bannockburn, about two miles from Stirling, where his army was protected by a hill on his right, a morass on his left, and a rivulet on his front. The English advanced with great confidence; but their cavalry were immediately thrown into disorder by an ingenious device of Bruce, who had caused deep pits to be dug in the plain which extended between his army and the rivulet. Before the English army could recover from this disaster, they were dismayed by seeing what appeared to be a second Scottish army coming over the hill, but which was, in fact, only a large number of waggoners and servants of the army, whom Bruce had supplied with banners, and stationed behind the hill. The English, panic-stricken, fled from the field, and were pursued with great slaughter till they reached Ber-

48. What had, meanwhile, been done by the Scots? What castle was besieged?

49. Edward's invasion of Scotland? Battle of Bannockburn? Escape of the king? What was the effect of this victory?



wick. The king only escaped capture by taking shelter at Dunbar, whence he sailed to Berwick (*ber'rik*) (1314). This victory secured the independence of Scotland.

50. The embarrassment of Edward, caused by this severe disaster to his arms, was increased by insurrections in Ireland and Wales; and still further by the factious opposition of the English barons, prominent among whom was the Earl of Lancaster. With no force of character, or capacity for serious business, the king was unable to cope with these difficulties, and weakly surrendered himself to the influence of another favorite, named Spenser, a young man of high rank, engaging appearance and manners, and attractive accomplishments. So extravagant were the honors and authority bestowed by Edward upon this new minion as well as upon his father, that Lancaster and the other great barons, jealous of his influence, combined against him; and raising an army, compelled Parliament to sentence both the Spensers to perpetual exile.

51. The king subsequently succeeded in uniting his friends, and, with a considerable army, proceeded against Lancaster, whom he defeated, and caused to be executed in a very ignominious manner, together with others of the same faction (1322). The Spensers were therefore recalled and invested with increased dignities; but they gave new offence by the arrogance of their demeanor. Edward's queen, Isabella, daughter of Philip the Fair, of France, a woman remarkable for her beauty, but of unrestrained dissoluteness, was especially hostile to these insolent favorites; and she became indignant at the king for his imbecility and neglect. Forming the acquaintance of one Roger Mortimer, she made him her companion and paramour, and entered into a plot for the destruction of the favorites and the dethronement of her husband (1325).

52. The king, deserted by all his subjects, fled into

50. How was Edward's embarrassment increased? His conduct? The Spensers?

51. What led to their recall? What was the conduct of Queen Isabella?

52. Flight and captivity of the king? His fate?

Wales, but was soon obliged to surrender himself a prisoner (1326). Soon afterward, a parliament was called by the queen; and he was formally deposed, and subsequently confined for a time in Kenilworth Castle,* his son Edward being placed on the throne, under a council of regency, although the government was really administered by Isabella and Mortimer (1327). The unfortunate king was afterward removed to Berkeley Castle,† and placed in the power of brutal keepers, who treated him with the most revolting cruelty and insult. At last, by order of Mortimer, these ruffians put him to death in a most shocking manner, and reported that he had died of a violent disease, since they had contrived that his person outwardly should betray no signs of the murderous treatment to which he had been subjected (1327). [*See Note 9, end of the Section.*]

1327 **53. Edward III.** was only fourteen years of age
to when he was crowned king; and, the year after, he
1377 was married to Philippa, daughter of the Count of Hainault (*ha-no'*), having been for some time previously affianced to this princess by his mother, Isabella. During the regency an unsuccessful expedition was undertaken against the Scots; and a disgraceful treaty was entered into with them, Mortimer consenting to give up all claim to homage from the Scottish monarch. This treaty was ratified by Parliament, but created great discontent among the people (1328). The arbitrary conduct of Mortimer, and his insolent usurpation of royal power, made all parties hostile to him; and the young prince, with a spirit and judgment beyond his years, contrived a method to put an end to his rule. With the aid of several of the nobles, he entered the castle occu-

* Kenilworth is a town in the western part of England, beautifully situated on the Avon. The castle, now an extensive, ivy-covered ruin, was founded in the reign of Henry I. It remained entire till sacked by the soldiers of Cromwell. The name, *Kenilworth*, is said to be derived from *Kenulph*, a Mercian king.

† Berkeley is near the Severn, in the western part of England. The castle is a large, irregular pile, enclosing a spacious court, and regarded as one of the finest specimens of feudal architecture in England. The apartment in which the unfortunate Edward met his fate is still shown to visitors.

53. Who was crowned king? His marriage? Treaty with the Scots? Conduct of Mortimer? End of his misrule?

pied by the guilty pair, and seizing Mortimer, had him brought to trial, and being condemned, he was hanged on a gibbet (1330). The queen was kept in close confinement during the remainder of her life. [See Note 10.]

54. Robert Bruce, who had fully achieved the independence of Scotland, left the throne to his son David, who, at the time of his father's death, was only five years old. Edward, taking advantage of this circumstance, endeavored to depose the young king, so as to place on the throne Edward Baliol, son of the former king of that name; he having agreed to hold it as a vassal of the English monarch. This the Scots resisted, but were severely defeated by Edward in the great battle of Hal'down Hill (1333), and were thus again brought into subjection to the English crown, David having fled from his country and taken refuge in France.

55. Edward's next object of ambition was to acquire possession of the throne of France, circumstances seeming at this time to favor the project; for Charles IV., the French king, having died without heirs, the nation had placed his cousin Philip on the throne. But Edward, through his mother Isabella, was a more direct descendant; and on this ground, notwithstanding that the ancient laws of France (the *Salic law*—i. e., the *law of the Salian Franks*) excluded females from the throne, he claimed his right to the succession, and proceeded to vindicate it by force of arms.

56. Having destroyed the French fleet in a great naval battle (1340), he invaded France, and, with forces far inferior to those of Philip, defeated him in the memorable battle of Crecy (*kres'e*). This battle was made particularly interesting, not only by the greatness of the victory achieved by Edward, but also by the fact that in it cannon were for

54. What led to the battle of Halldown Hill? Its result?

55. What was the occasion of Edward's claiming the French throne? What was the Salic law?

56. Invasion of France? Battle of Crecy? Why especially interesting?

the first time employed by the English,* and also as the occasion on which the king's son Edward, styled the *Black Prince* (from the color of his armor), commenced his brilliant military career (1346). [See Note 11, end of Section.]

57. Edward next took Calais (*kal'is*), after a siege of nearly twelve months; and having expelled all the inhabitants, peopled it anew with English, thus making it in fact an English city. He also made it an emporium for the four chief commodities of his kingdom—wool, leather, tin, and lead. By this policy he was the means of preserving this city, regarded as the key of France, to his successors for nearly two centuries. While Edward was thus engaged, the Scottish people rallied for the restoration of their independence, and again placed David Bruce upon the throne, who, invading England, was defeated and taken prisoner in the battle of *Neville's Cross*, near Durham (1346).

58. This victory was in some measure due to the activity and heroism of Queen Philippa, who, previous to the action, rode through the ranks of the army, exhorting every man to do his duty in repelling the invaders of their country. Having caused David to be lodged in the Tower, she joined her husband before Calais, arriving in time to prevent the commission by him of a most ruthless act of cruelty; for he ordered to execution six of the citizens of Calais, who had been sent, on his demand, to make a formal surrender of the city; but was moved from his revengeful purpose by the earnest supplications of his brave and noble queen.

59. A truce was concluded, a short time afterward, be-

* Fire-arms appear to have been used by the Chinese as early as 618 A. C., nearly two thousand years before the battle of Crecy. They were also used in various forms in India; and in the eighth century by the Saracens. The invention of gunpowder is generally attributed to Friar Bacon, who, in 1270, announced its composition; but it was not until 1320 that the proper mode of making it was understood. King Edward's cannon were, of course, very small, being about the size of duck-guns.

57. Capture of Calais? How did Edward treat the inhabitants? Further history of the city? What led to the battle of Neville's Cross?

58. To what was this victory due? What was done by Queen Philippa? What cruel act did she prevent?

59. What truce was agreed upon? How protracted? The Great Plague?

tween the French and English monarchs, which was protracted by a dreadful plague that swept away many thousands of the people, not only in England, but in most of the other countries of Europe. This dreadful pestilence first made its appearance in Asia; and so frightful were its ravages, especially among the lower orders of the people, that in some places scarcely enough of the inhabitants remained alive to till the ground. Above 50,000 persons are said to have perished by it in the city of London alone. The brute creation also suffered from its destructive virulence, vast numbers of cattle dying from the wide-spread contagion (1349).

60. Philip, king of France, having been succeeded by John (1350), and the country being distracted by factious dissensions, Edward, at the expiration of the truce, resolved again to assert his claim to the French throne. Accordingly, the Black Prince sailed to the Garonne (*gah-ron'*) with a fleet of three hundred vessels, containing a large army, with which he invaded the south of France, and, meeting with no opposition, committed the most dreadful ravages, reducing towns and villages to ashes, and laying waste the country wherever his march extended. At the same time, the king himself made a similar incursion from Calais; but John kept at a distance, not deeming his forces sufficient to risk a battle (1355).

61. The next year, the Black Prince, encouraged by the success of the previous campaign, proceeding from Guienne with an army of about 12,000 men, penetrated into the heart of France; but at Poitiers (*poi-têrz'*) found himself unexpectedly confronted by a splendidly equipped force of 60,000 men, commanded by John in person. Unable to retreat, and unwilling to risk an engagement with an army so greatly superior to his own, he offered to restore all his conquests and to give up the war, on condition that

60. What led to another invasion of France? Describe it.

61. How was the battle of Poitiers caused? Describe it.

he might be permitted an honorable retreat; but the French king declining every proposal except that of unconditional surrender, a battle ensued, which, owing to the skill and valor of the Black Prince, resulted in the entire overthrow of the French, John himself being made a prisoner (1356). [*See Notes 12 and 13, end of the Section.*]

62. In accordance with the manners of the times, John was treated by his conqueror with the most chivalric courtesy and respect.* He was, however, kept in captivity at London till ransomed by his subjects (1360), when he resumed the throne; but, subsequently, not being able to fulfil the terms of his release, he returned to London, where he died a short time afterward (1364). Under his successor, Charles, the war was renewed between the two countries; but Edward gained no permanent advantage, although the Black Prince displayed all the qualities of an able and enterprising general. The prince was generally very humane; but the town of Limoges (*le-môzh'*), which had received very many benefits from him, having revolted and taken part with his enemies, he was so much exasperated at the ingratitude of its inhabitants, that on its capture he cruelly caused them to be put to the sword.

63. These events terminated his military career. He returned to England, and, after six years of painful and lingering sickness, caused by incessant toil and exposure, died universally esteemed, not only for his heroism and skill as a military commander, but for the generosity, moderation, and amiability which shed still greater lustre on his character (1376). The king survived him only a year, expiring in the sixty-fifth year of his age, after a reign of more than fifty years (1377). [*See Note 15, end of the Section.*]

64. Edward III. was a wise and powerful monarch,

* See Note 14, end of the Section.

62. How was John treated? Why did he return to London? His death? When was the war renewed? With what result? How was Limoges treated?

63. Further history of the Black Prince? His character? Death of Edward III.?

64. Character of Edward III.? What was he called, and why? Trade? Literature? What authors are mentioned?

popular not only for his military success and prudent administration, but for his many personal accomplishments. He took no important steps without consulting Parliament, refused to pay the tribute to Rome to which John had submitted, and so greatly encouraged trade, that he has been called the "Father of English commerce." Wool was the chief article of export, and an extensive trade was carried on with the ports of the Baltic. During this reign, also, commenced the FIRST ERA OF ENGLISH LITERATURE,—the earliest work in prose, the *Travels of Sir John Mandeville*, being published about 1360. The famous *John Wickliffe* and the poets *Chaucer* (*chaw'ser*) and *Gower* also flourished during a part of this reign.*

1377 to 1399 **65. Richard II.**—Edward III. was succeeded by his grandson Richard, son of the Black Prince, a youth eleven years of age; and, at the request of the House of Commons, a council was appointed by the Lords to administer the government, which was presided over by the three uncles of the king, among whom John of Gaunt,† Duke of Lancaster, exercised the chief authority. Hostilities were carried on in France; but little was effected, in consequence of the prudent measures of Charles the Wise. Scotland, under its king, Robert Stuart, the first of that name, was in close alliance with France, and hence shared in the war.

66. To defray the expenses thus incurred, Parliament imposed an unusual tax of three groats on every person, male and female, above fifteen years of age; and this, added to the miseries which the lower orders of the people suffered from the unjust laws of the period, produced an insurrection. The immediate occasion of the outbreak was the indignity with which a young maiden, the daughter

* See Note 16, end of the Section.

† John of Gaunt, or Ghent, was so called from the place of his birth.

65. By whom was Edward III. succeeded? How was the government administered? What is said of France? Scotland?

66. What caused an insurrection? What incensed Wat Tyler?

of one Wat Tyler (or Wat, the tiler), was treated by one of the brutul tax-gatherers. This outrage so incensed her father, that he struck the officer dead with his hammer, and, being joined by his friends and neighbors, raised a revolt, placing himself at the head of the insurgents (1381).

67. The mutinous populace, amounting to 100,000 men, assembled at Blackheath, near London, under their leaders Wat Tyler and Jack Straw. They were still further excited by one John Ball, an itinerant preacher, who inflamed their minds by depicting the wrongs which were inflicted upon them by the wealthy classes, in depriving them of their natural right to liberty and an equal share in the government.* Thus incensed, they broke into the city, burned the palaces and mansions of the nobles, plundered the warehouses, and murdered the archbishop and many other persons of distinction (1381).

68. The king having entered upon a conference with Wat Tyler, the latter, it is said, acted with so much insolence, that Wal'worth, the mayor of London, struck him with his sword, whereupon Tyler was immediately despatched by others of the king's retinue. Richard, in order to quell the mutiny, acceded to the demands of the insurgents, and they accordingly dispersed; but the nobility having raised a large army, the ringleaders were apprehended and executed, and the concessions of the king were annulled (1381). This made Richard very unpopular with the lower orders, for their demands had been reasonable and just. The most important was, that *villanage* or slavery should be abolished, the people paying a fixed rent for their lands, instead of being bound to do such services as their feudal lords might require. Serfdom, however,

* He took the following lines as the text of his harangues :

When Adam delved and Eve span,
Where was then the Gentleman?

67. What was done by the insurgents? By whom were they led? John Ball? Effect of his preaching?

68. How was Tyler killed? What course did Richard pursue? What made him unpopular? What were the demands of the lower orders? Serfdom?

continued to exist in England for more than four centuries after these events. [*See Note 17, end of the Section.*]

69. Richard, although displaying so much spirit and courage in these times of disturbance, was afterward characterized by indolence, and a want of judgment and capacity. He quarrelled with the great officers and distinguished nobles of his court, and gave his entire confidence to unworthy favorites. He had banished his cousin Henry, son of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, for being concerned in a duel; and, on the death of the duke, proceeded to dispossess Henry of his estates and annex them to those of the crown. Henry, however, taking advantage of Richard's absence in Ireland, landed in England with a small force; and so unpopular had the king become, that the invader was soon joined by a force of 60,000 men.

70. Richard, deserted by every one, after wandering for some time among the mountains of Wales, was obliged to surrender himself, and was carried a prisoner to the Tower. With the most abject pusillanimity, he resigned the crown to Henry, and was formally deposed by Parliament, who placed Henry on the throne (1399). Richard, according to the English historians, died of starvation* after a few months' imprisonment (1400). During this reign, Wickliffe,† called by some the "Morning Star of the Reformation," translated the Bible. He and his doctrines were much favored by John of Gaunt. Chaucer,‡ styled the "Father of English Poetry," who wrote the celebrated poem, "The Canterbury Tales," was a follower of Wickliffe.

* The French historians state that he was murdered by violent means; but some of the Scotch writers assert that he escaped from confinement and fled to the Western Isles of Scotland; and there being recognized, he was carried to the court of the Scottish king, where he lived for some years, and died at Stirling in 1419.

† Wickliffe advocated many of the doctrines which were afterward preached by Luther and his followers, in the sixteenth century. His disciples were called *Lollards*. He died in 1384.

‡ Chaucer was born in 1388, it is supposed, and died a short time after the deposition of Richard II., in 1400. His poems are characterized by vigor and fertility of imagination, and great dramatic power. His prose writings have also very superior merit.

69. Subsequent conduct of the king? What was done by Henry of Lancaster?
70. Further history of Richard? How did the parliament proceed? Fate of Richard? What is said of Wickliffe? Of Chaucer?

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE PLANTAGENETS.

71. The most important of all the changes that took place during this period was the institution of the House of Commons. It gave the death-blow to the feudal system, by conferring upon the vassal some of the political rights enjoyed by his superior. The English monarchs constantly sought to evade the provisions of *Magna Charta*, but without success; for no less than thirty-eight times were they compelled to ratify it. By this great fundamental law, private property and personal liberty were equally protected, it being clearly provided that the king could levy no money without the consent of Parliament. This clause, sometimes omitted in the ratification of the Charter, was fully established during the reign of Edward I.

72. Trial by jury, during this period, took the place of the "judicial combat" of the Normans. The Great Charter prescribed "the legal judgment of his peers" as necessary for the condemnation of one accused of crime; but in the reign of Henry II., a person unwilling to risk a judicial combat might refer the case to four knights chosen by the sheriff, who, in their turn, selected *twelve* more. In the reign of Henry III., the employment of twelve jurors to decide cases was often resorted to; but these were witnesses as well as judges, and it was not until some time afterward that jurymen were made exclusively judges, deciding the case solely on the testimony of others.

73. Although so much had been accomplished toward laying the foundation of English liberty, the condition of the common people was very little improved. A degrading system of serfdom continued to exist. Slaves were bought and sold at the fairs, and it is said that the price of a man

71. The House of Commons? Effect of its establishment? Successive confirmations of it? What did it protect?

72. Trial by jury? Of what did it take the place? What were the jurors at first?

73. Serfdom? Modes of living among the higher classes? What means of comfort were introduced? Improvement in the dwellings? Furniture?

was less than that paid for a horse. The modes of living among the higher classes had, however, become more refined. Glass windows, vessels of earthenware, the use of coal for fire and of candles for light enlarged their means of comfort; the appearance of their dwellings was improved by the substitution of tiles for straw thatch. The furniture was still scanty and uncouth.

74. The costume of the period was curious and fantastic. Long pointed shoes, with the toes fastened to the knees or the girdle; stockings of different colors; a coat half blue or black, half white, with trousers reaching scarcely to the knees, were some of the most prominent peculiarities in the dress of the fine gentlemen. The ladies wore party-colored tunics, very short tippets, small caps, and girdles ornamented with gold and silver, in which they carried two small swords. Their trains were very long; and their head-dresses towered sometimes two feet above their heads, and were decked at the summit with waving ribbons of various colors. -

75. Wool was the most important article of commerce; and in this traffic the king himself did not disdain to take part. On this account Edward III. was called by his French rival, in derision, the "Royal wool-merchant." This, with the other commodities, was sold principally to the German traders, who imported gold, silver, silks, wines, spices, and other luxuries in return. Agriculture was carried on in a very rude manner, being left to the lowest classes; although Edward I. did not disdain to insert in a book of laws, issued during his reign, a series of directions as to the manner of tilling the soil. Horticulture received considerable attention, every house of the better class having a garden or "pleasance;" while the monasteries had besides, a "herberie" or physic garden attached to them, for the growth of herbs used in medicines.

74. Costume? Dress of the gentlemen? Of the ladies?

75. Traffic in wool? The German traders? Agriculture? Horticulture?

76. Science made some progress during this period. Roger Bacon applied the learning which he had acquired at Oxford to the discovery of useful knowledge. Besides the composition of gunpowder, he made many other discoveries, and invented various mathematical and philosophical instruments. His wonderful knowledge made the people regard him as a magician; and he was consequently thrown into prison, where he was kept many years. Astrology was the favorite study of these times, not only in England but in most other countries of Europe. The astrologer was supposed to be able to foretell future events by observing the appearances of the heavenly bodies; and it was a long time before the futility of this pretence was discovered. The constant observations of the astrologers, and the construction of instruments required for making them, led to improvement in the science of astronomy.

77. Learning made, nevertheless, but little advancement, and was still confined to the clergy; for the attention of the higher classes of the laity was absorbed in the pursuits of war and hunting. There were no books except such as had been prepared with great expense of time and labor in the writing-rooms of the monasteries; and these brought a very high price, as much as \$200 being paid for a copy of the Bible. Toward the close of the period, the English mind began to awaken from its bondage; and literature sprang into existence, being ushered in by those great lights,—Geoffrey Chaucer and John Wickliffe. The language of these writers differs considerably from modern English, and is therefore difficult to read. It is called “Middle English,” since it comes between the “Semi-Saxon,” which preceded it, and modern English, which commenced during the reign of Queen Elizabeth.

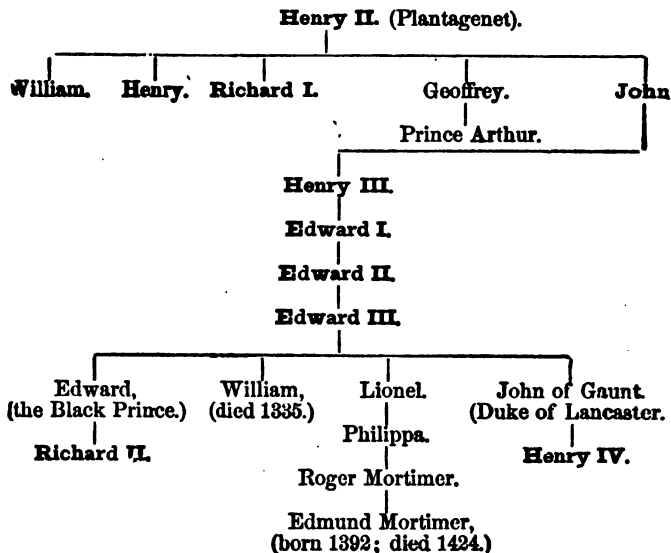
76. Science? Roger Bacon? Astrology? To what did its cultivation lead?

77. Learning? Books? How were they made? What was their value? Dawn of literature? Chaucer and Wickliffe? Language of the period? Why called Middle English?

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1154. **Henry II.** Reigned 35 years.
1164. Constitutions of Clarendon adopted.
1170. Murder of Thomas à Becket.
1172. Conquest of Ireland.
1189. **Richard I.** Reigned 10 years.
1192. Treaty of Richard with Saladin.
1199. **John.** Reigned 17 years.
1203. Murder of Prince Arthur.
1215. Magna Charter signed.
1216. **Henry III.** Reigned 56 years.
1219. Death of the Earl of Pembroke.
1264. Battle of Lewes.
1265. House of Commons instituted.
 " Battle of Evesham—Death of Leicester.
1272. **Edward I.** Reigned 35 years.
1278. Persecution of the Jews.
1283. Conquest of Wales.
1292. Baliol placed on the Scottish throne.
1296. Battle of Dunbar: Baliol defeated and deposed.
1298. Battle of Falkirk; defeat of Wallace.
1305. Execution of Wallace.
1307. **Edward II.** Reigned 20 years.
1314. Battle of Bannockburn; the English defeated by Bruce.
1327. **Edward III.** Reigned 50 years.
1330. Execution of Roger Mortimer.
1333. Battle of Halidown Hill; the Scots defeated.
1346. Battle of Crecy; the French defeated.
 " Battle of Neville's Cross; the Scots defeated.
1347. Taking of Calais by the English.
1349. The Great Plague.
1356. Battle of Poitiers; the French defeated.
1376. Death of the Black Prince.
1377. **Richard II.** Reigned 22 years.
1381. Insurrection under Wat Tyler.
1384. Death of Wickliffe.
1399. Invasion by Henry, Duke of Lancaster.
 " The king taken prisoner, and deposed.
1400. Death of Chaucer.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE PLANTAGENETS.



REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Relate the events which made Henry II. king.....	64-65-71
2. How extensive was Henry's domain?.....	64-65-71
3. What were the first measures of his rule?.....	73
4. Give an account of Thomas à Becket.....	71-72-73-74, Note 74
5. Give the early history of Ireland.....	8-74-75
6. What troubles did Henry have with his sons?.....	75-76
7. Name the important events in the reign of Henry II.....	71-72-73-74-75-76
8. Give an account of his troubles with France.....	75-76
9. What did he accomplish for England?.....	76
10. How did Richard I. become king?.....	77
11. Give an account of Richard's crusade.....	77-78
12. Of his return from Palestine to England.....	78
13. State the events of his reign connected with those of Philip's.....	77-78-79
14. State what you can further in relation to Richard.....	79
15. State what you can of John before he became king.....	76-78-79

	PAGE
16. Of the circumstances attending his accession to the throne.....	79-80
17. Of his difficulties with Philip of France.....	79-80-81-82
18. Of his difficulties with the Church of Rome.....	80-81
19. Of his contest connected with the Great Charter.....	81-82
20. Of John's death and character.....	82
21. State all you can of the Earl of Pembroke.....	82
22. Of Hubert de Burgh.....	82
23. Of Henry's contests with Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester.....	84-85
24. Name in order the principal events in the reign of Henry III.....	83-84-85-86
25. When did the coronation of Edward I. occur?.....	86
26. Give the previous history of Edward.....	84-85-86
27. Give an account of the conquest of Wales.....	86-87
28. Of the persecution of the Jews in England.....	87
29. Of Edward's contest with Scotland.....	87-88-89-90
30. State what you can of Baliol.....	87-88-89
31. Of William Wallace.....	89
32. Of Robert Bruce.....	89-90-91-92-95
33. Name the principal events in the reign of Edward I.....	86-91-105
34. State what you can of the character of Edward II.....	91-92-93-94
35. Name the principal events in his reign.....	91-92-93-94-105
36. Who was Edward III., and when was he crowned?.....	94
37. Give an account of Roger Mortimer.....	93-94-95
38. Of Edward's contest with Philip of France.....	95-96
39. State all you can of Philippa, Edward's wife.....	94-96
40. Of the Black Prince.....	96-97-98
41. Name the principal events in the reign of Edward III.....	94-95-96-97-98-99-105
42. Who was Richard II., and when did he become king?.....	99
43. Give an account of the Wat Tyler Insurrection.....	99-100
44. Name the principal events in the reign of Richard II.....	99-100-101-105
45. Narrate the closing events of his life.....	101
46. State what you can of the origin of the House of Commons.....	85-89-102
47. Of the trial by jury, its early history, etc.....	50-102
48. Of serfdom or slavery in England.....	66-102-103
49. Of the costume worn during the Plantagenet period.....	86-103
50. Of the mode of living during the same period.....	103
51. Of commerce during the same period.....	86-90-91-99-103
52. Of the progress in science.....	76-90-104
53. Of the progress made in learning and the language.....	86-99-104
54. Name the noted scientific and literary men of the period.....	90-99-101-104
55. Give an account of Chaucer.....	99-101
56. Of Roger Bacon, his knowledge and discoveries.....	90-104
57. Name in chronological order the Plantagenet monarchs.....	105
58. What was the origin of Henry II.?.....	63-64-65
59. Give the names of his sons.....	75-77-106
60. Of the state of society under the Plantagenets.....	102-104

NOTE.—Edward II. repulsed from Stirling Castle. (See cut facing p. 92). Philip de Mowbray, the commander of the castle, had agreed to surrender it if not relieved by the 24th of June, the feast of St. John the Baptist. After the battle of Bannockburn, fought on the 24th, Edward fled to Stirling, but De Mowbray, as the battle was lost, knowing that he was in honor bound to deliver up the castle to Bruce, refused to admit Edward, who, in consequence, was compelled to seek other refuge.

NOTES.

1. Christian Ireland (p. 74, ¶ 8).—"The five hundred years, one-half of which preceded the birth of our Lord, may be considered the period of Ireland's greatest power and military glory as a nation. The five hundred years which succeeded St. Patrick's mission may be regarded as the period of Ireland's Christian and scholastic fame. In the former she sent her warriors, in the latter her missionaries, all over Europe. Where her fierce hero-kings carried the sword, her saints now bore the cross of faith. It was in this latter period, between the sixth and the eighth centuries particularly, that Ireland became known all over Europe as the *Insula Sanctorum et Doctorum*—'the Island of Saints and Scholars.' Churches, cathedrals, monasteries, convents, universities, covered the island. From even the most distant parts of Europe, kings and their subjects came to study in the Irish schools."—*Sullivan's Story of Ireland*.

2. Death of Henry II. (p. 76, ¶ 12).—"He was taken ill at a conference with King Philip of France, and conveyed to the castle of Cherion, near Saumur, where his death was hastened by grief and rage, caused by the rebellious proceedings of his sons, Henry, Richard, and John. In his last moments, he was heard to utter broken exclamations, which alluded to his misfortunes and the conduct of his sons. He cried aloud, 'Shame! shame! on a conquered king! Cursed be the day when I was born! The curse of God be on the sons I leave behind me!' The bishops and the religious men who surrounded him used all endeavors to make him retract this malediction against his offspring; but he persisted in it to his latest breath. When he had expired, his corpse was treated by his servants as William the Conqueror's had formerly been; they all abandoned him, after stripping him of his last clothes, and carried off all that was valuable in the chamber and in the house."—*Thierry's History*.

3. Suburbs of London in 1180 (p. 76, ¶ 13).—"The historian Fitz-Stephen thus describes the suburbs of London in the year 1180: 'On the west is the king's palace, which is an incomparable building, rising with a bulwark aloft upon the river, two miles from the wall of the city, but yet conjoined with a continued suburb. On all sides, without the houses of the suburbs, are the citizens' gardens and orchards, planted with trees, both large, slightly, and adjoining together. On the north side are pastures and plain meadows, with brooks running through them, turning water-mills with pleasant noise. Not far off is a great forest, a well-wooded chase, having good coverts for harts, bucks, does, boars, and wild bulls. The corn-fields are not of a hungry, sandy mould, but, as the fruitful fields of Asia, yielding plentiful increase, and filling the barns with corn. There are, near London, on the north side, especial wells, in the suburbs, sweet, clear, and wholesome; amongst which, *Holy-well*, *Clerken-well*, and *St. Clement's-well* are most famous and most frequented by scholars and youths of the city, in the summer evenings, when they walk forth to take the air.'"—*Selby—Events to be Remembered in the History of England*.

4. Death of Richard I. (p. 79, ¶ 18).—"The last scene of Richard's life is an epitome of his qualities. He perished, not fighting for a dukedom, but for a paltry treasure which one of his barons had discovered on his estate. The royal right to treasure so found was asserted by the king. The Viscount of Limoges refused to surrender all the gold and silver, though he offered a large portion. Rich-

ard accordingly laid siege to the viscount's castle of Chaluz; and would allow the garrison no conditional surrender. They asked for safety of life and limb; but the king 'swore that he would take them by storm, and hang them all,' and accordingly the knights and men-at-arms returned to the castle in sorrow and confusion, and prepared to make a defence. Reconnoitring the fortress, Richard was wounded in the arm by an arrow, aimed by Bertrand de Gurdun. The castle being captured, the king ordered all the people to be hanged, one alone excepted—the youth who had wounded him."—*Knight's History of England.*

5. Murder of Prince Arthur (p. 79, ¶ 20).—"The circumstances which attended this deed of darkness were, no doubt, carefully concealed by the actors, and are variously related by historians; but the most probable account is as follows: The king, it is said, first proposed to William de Bray, one of his servants, to dispatch Arthur; but William replied that he was a gentleman, not a hangman, and he positively refused compliance. Another instrument of murder was found, and was dispatched with proper orders to Falaise; but Hubert de Burgh, chamberlain to the king and constable of the castle, feigning that he would himself execute the king's mandate, sent back the assassin, spread the report that the young prince was dead, and publicly performed all the ceremonies of his interment. But finding that the Bretons vowed revenge for the murder, and that all the revolted barons persevered more obstinately in their rebellion, he thought it prudent to reveal the secret, and to inform the world that the prince was still alive, and in his custody. This discovery proved fatal to the young prince. John first removed him to the castle of Rouen, and coming in a boat, during the night-time, to that place, commanded Arthur to be brought before him. The young prince, aware of his danger, and now more subdued by the continuance of his misfortunes and by the approach of death, threw himself on his knees before his uncle, and begged for mercy; but the barbarous tyrant, making no reply, stabbed him with his own hands, and, fastening a stone to the dead body, threw it into the Seine."—*Hume's History of England.*

6. Betrayal of Wallace (p. 89, ¶ 42).—"A price was set on his head. Hunted from covert to covert, he had taken refuge in the strong and wooded country between Glasgow and Dumbarton. Sir John Menteith, once his friend, and now commander of the castle of Dumbarton in the service of Edward, bribed Wallace's servant to discover the place of his retreat. Wallace used to lodge at Rob-rastoun, a solitary village near Glasgow. He had but two attendants, Kerlie, or little Ker, and a nephew of Menteith. About midnight on the night of his capture, Wallace and his two attendants repaired to their lodging. He and Kerlie lay down to sleep, the young man, Menteith's nephew, keeping watch. When they were locked in deep sleep, the villain crept in softly and took away their arms. His uncle was at hand with sixty men. The house was surrounded, and the sleeping men mastered. Kerlie was dragged to the door and killed. Wallace was bound with cords, and hurried away to the south before daybreak. They conveyed him across Solway Sand to Carlisle, and thence to London."—*Mackenzie's History of Scotland.*

7. Bruce and the Spider (p. 90, ¶ 43).—"The English, assisted by a body of Galloway men, eagerly endeavored to hunt Bruce down. Driven from haunt to haunt, weary, toll-worn, and dejected, he had retired one day into a wretched hovel to snatch some repose. There, as he lay upon a heap of straw, his mind darkly pondering on his gloomy situation, he had well-nigh resolved to abandon the whole enterprise, leave Scotland, and engage in the Crusade. A spider, hanging by its

long thread from the roof of the hovel, caught his eye. The creature was endeavoring to swing itself from one rafter to another. Its movements interested the king. Six times it made its attempt, and failed. Would it try once more, and succeed after all? Bruce thought within himself, If this creature tries again, and succeeds in its object, I too will make another attempt. The history of this proud old country hung by a spider's thread. Bruce watched. The spider launched itself from its rafter the seventh time, and succeeded. The perseverance and success of the insect struck the king like a cheering omen. He thought no more of giving up his enterprise, and the strength of his mighty purpose was renewed within him. Never, surely, was little thing so great as that day in the Carrick hovel. Such is the famous tradition of Bruce and the spider."—*Mackenzie's History of Scotland*.

8. Edward II. of Carnarvon (p. 91, ¶ 46).—"Edward II. unfortunately possessed no single quality to make us love or respect him. He was, in everything, the very opposite of his father, whose dying commands it was the first act of his reign to disobey. He was, seemingly, of an easy disposition, but his yielding temper was only weakness, and his semblance of good nature was rank selfishness; he was disposed to make friendships; but his fondness for his friends was so unnatural, so excessive, that he sacrificed to them his duty to his country and the respect of his subjects."—*Longman*.

9. Character of Edward II. (p. 94, ¶ 52).—"He is said to have resembled his father in the lineaments of his face, as well as the exact elegance and symmetry of his shape, having a majestic and noble stature, and a deportment altogether engaging and agreeable; but the qualifications of his mind bore no kind of proportion to his bodily perfections, for he was deficient in foresight, in judgment, and in courage. His mental debility urged him to a conduct that had all the appearance of infatuation. Being a slave to his own passions, he too readily committed to others the weight of that government which he had neither the ability nor the inclination to support."—*Spencer*.

10. Capture and Execution of Mortimer (p. 95, ¶ 53).—"The queen and Mortimer lodged in the fortress of Nottingham; and as the castle was strictly guarded, the gates locked, and the keys conveyed to the queen, who slept with them under her pillow, it was necessary to communicate the plot to Sir Richard Eland, the governor, who zealously took part in it. By Edward's orders, his associates were admitted through a subterranean passage; and Mortimer, notwithstanding the queen's cries and exclamations, entreating them to spare the gallant *Mortimer*, was apprehended and conducted under a strong guard to the Tower of London. A parliament was immediately summoned for his condemnation. He was accused of having procured the death of the late king; of having obtained exorbitant grants of the royal domains; of having dissipated the public treasure; of having seduced the queen; of having secreted 20,000 marks of the money paid by the king of Scotland; and of other crimes and misdemeanors. The parliament condemned him from the supposed notoriety of the facts, without trial, or hearing his answer, or examining a witness; and he was hanged on a gibbet at the Elms (Tyburn), in the neighborhood of London.

"It is remarkable that this sentence, twenty years after, was reversed by parliament in favor of Mortimer's son, on account of the alleged illegality of the proceeding. This shows that the principles of justice were beginning to prevail, though not sufficiently established. The descendants of Mortimer, by the female line, subsequently succeeded to the throne. The queen was deprived of her exorbitant income, which she had granted to herself, and reduced to a pension of £3,000 a year.

She was also confined to her house at Risings, near London, where she lived twenty-eight years after; the king, her son, visiting her once or twice a year, more out of decency, Rapin says, than affection."—*Hume's History of England*.

11. Battle of Crecy (p. 95, ¶ 56).—"On the day of the battle, and on the ensuing, there fell, by a moderate computation, 1,200 French knights, 1,400 gentlemen, 4,000 men-at-arms, besides about 80,000 of inferior rank. Many of the principal nobility of France, the Dukes of Lorraine and Bourbon, the Earls of Flanders, Blois, Vaudemont, and Aumale, were left on the field of battle. The kings, also, of Bohemia and Majorca were slain. The fate of the former was remarkable: he was blind from age, but being resolved to hazard his person, and set an example to others, he ordered the reins of his bridle to be tied on each side of the horses of two gentlemen of his train; and his dead body and those of his attendants were afterwards found among the slain, with their horses standing by them in that situation. His crest was three ostrich feathers, and his motto these German words, *Ich Dien*, 'I serve,' which the Prince of Wales and his successors adopted in memory of this great victory. The action seems no less remarkable for the small loss sustained by the English, than for the great slaughter of the French. There were killed in it only one esquire and three knights, and very few of inferior rank; a demonstration that the prudent disposition planned by Edward, and the disorderly attack made by the French, had rendered the whole rather a rout than a battle; which was, indeed, the common case with engagements in those times."—*Hume's History of England*.

12. Battle of Poitiers (p. 97, ¶ 61).—"This memorable victory was obtained on the 19th of September, 1356, without the loss of one person of distinction among the English; whereas the principal noblemen of France fell in the contest. Two dukes, nineteen counts, five thousand men-at-arms, and about eight thousand infantry are said to have been killed on the side of the French. Two thousand men-at-arms were taken prisoners, among whom, besides John, King of France, were three princes of the blood, the Archbishop Sens, the Counts of Estampes, Vaudemont, and many other noblemen."—*Spencer*.

13. Spoils of the Victory at Poitiers (p. 97, ¶ 61).—"When they were all collected they found they had twice as many prisoners as themselves; they therefore consulted if, considering the risk they might run, it would not be more advisable to ransom them on the spot. This was done; and the prisoners found the English and Gascons very civil, for there were many set at liberty that day on their promise of coming to Bordeaux before Christmas to pay their ransom. When all were returned to their banners, they retired to their camp, which was adjoining the field of battle. Some disarmed themselves, and did the same to their prisoners, to whom they showed every kindness: for whoever made any prisoners, they were solely at his disposal to ransom or not, as he pleased. It may be easily supposed that all those who accompanied the prince were very rich in glory and wealth, as well by the ransoms of his prisoners as by the quantities of gold and silver plate, rich jewels, and trunks stuffed full of belts, that were weighty from their gold and silver ornaments, and furred mantles. They set no value on armor, tents, or other things, for the French had come there as magnificently and richly dressed as if they had been sure of gaining the victory."—*Froissart's Chronicles*.

14. Magnanimity of the Black Prince (p. 98, ¶ 62).—"Here commences the real and truly admirable heroism of Edward; for victories are vulgar things in comparison of that moderation and humanity displayed by a young prince of twenty-seven years of age, not yet cooled from the fury of battle, and elated by as extraordinary and as unexpected success as ever crowned the arms of any commander.

He came forth to meet the captive king with all the marks of regard and sympathy, administered comfort to him amidst his misfortunes, paid him the tribute of praise due to his valor, ascribed his own victory merely to the blind chance of war, or to a superior Providence which controls all the efforts of human force and prudence. The behavior of John showed him not unworthy of his courteous treatment; his present abject fortune never made him forget for a moment that he was a king. More touched by Edward's generosity than by his own calamities, he confessed that, notwithstanding his defeat and captivity, his honor was still unimpaired; and that, if he yielded the victory, it was at least gained by a prince of such consummate valor and humanity."—*Hume*.

Froissart says: "The prince himself served the king's table, as well as the others, with every mark of humility, and would not sit down at it, in spite of all his entreaties for him so to do, saying that he was not worthy of such an honor, nor did it appertain to him to seat himself at the table of so great a king, or of so valiant a man as he had shown himself by his actions that day."

15. Death of the Black Prince (p. 98, ¶ 63).—"In the year 1396, on Trinity Sunday, that flower of English knighthood, the Lord Edward of England, Prince of Wales and of Aquitaine, departed this life in the palace of Westminster, near London; his body was embalmed, placed in a leaden coffin, and kept until the ensuing Michaelmas, in order that it might be buried with greater pomp and magnificence when the parliament assembled in London."—*Froissart*.

"He died of a fever, June 8, 1396, in his forty-sixth year, and by his will ordered his body to be buried in the cathedral at Canterbury. He was universally regretted, and the parliament, as a mark of their esteem, attended his funeral. Over his grave is erected a stately monument of gray marble, with his portraiture of copper-gilt; the ends and sides are garnished with escutcheons, also of copper, enamelled with his arms and devices, and superscribed with words *Houmont* and *Ich Dien*. On an iron bar over the tomb are placed the helmet and crest, coat of mail, and gauntlets; and on a pillar, his shield of arms, richly diapered with gold. On a fillet of brass is circumscribed a French epitaph, and on the south side of the foot, and north side of the tomb, are verses in that language. He was called the Black Prince from the color of his armor. He is described by historians as the most excellent prince England had ever produced, and little inferior in virtue and talent to the Roman Scipio. He was a good soldier, a great general, brave without fierceness, bold in battle, but affable in conversation, and of a most modest demeanor. Ever submissive and respectful to the king his father, whom he never once disobliged. Generous, liberal, pleased with rewarding merit wherever he found it, he wanted no qualification to form a perfect hero. Such is the character given of this renowned warrior."—*Kings of England*.

16. John Wickliffe (p. 99, ¶ 64).—"John Wickliffe's name is first mentioned in the year 1360, in a controversy with the different orders of friars. He was educated at Oxford, where he took his degree of doctor of divinity. He was so eminent for his parts, learning, and fine genius, that the Archbishop of Canterbury, having founded a new college, made him the rector. Wickliffe's behavior in his situation gave universal satisfaction. On the death of his patron he was removed to the living of Sutterworth, in the diocese of Lincoln; and it was there that he first published in his sermons and writings his doctrines. Gregory XI. hearing of this new religion, dispatched an order to the Bishop of London to apprehend and examine Wickliffe, and send his deposition to Rome. But these orders were not easy to execute, the Duke of Lancaster and the Earl Marshall having openly declared they

would not suffer Wickliffe to be imprisoned. The prelate was obliged to content himself with summoning Wickliffe before him in St. Paul's Church, where there was a vast concourse of people to hear the examination. The Duke of Lancaster and Lord Percy accompanied the reformer, assuring him that there was no danger, and that he might make his defence with courage before men who were mere ignoramuses in comparison to him. A violent altercation took place betwixt Percy and the bishop; the former insisting that Wickliffe should sit, the latter that he should stand, during the examination. The examination became so violent that the assembly broke up abruptly, and no further attempt was afterwards made to prosecute Wickliffe. He retired to his living at Sutterworth, where he died, in the year 1384. His followers were called Lollards, and rapidly increased after his death."—*Kings of England*.

17. Death of Wat Tyler (p. 101, ¶ 68).—"The next morning, Wat Tyler, Jack Straw, and John Ball, and the worst part of their associates, to the number of some twenty thousand, were suddenly come upon, at Smithfield, by the king, who was riding that way with about sixty followers. On seeing the king, Wat Tyler commanded his men to remain quiet, while he went forward to speak to him; accordingly he spurred his horse, and came so close to the king that his horse's head nearly touched him; during the conference, which was very brief, the tyler having demanded the king's sword from a squire who bore it, and being refused, swore, in a violent passion, 'he would have his head before he eat again;' the king, growing angry, said to the Mayor of London, William Walworth, who at that moment advanced with twelve of the aldermen and principal citizens, who were armed under their robes, 'Lay hands on him.' Upon this, Walworth drew a kind of scimeter (a short and broad back sword, being towards the point like a Turkish scimeter) which he wore, and struck the tyler such a blow on the head that felled him to his horse's feet. When he was down he was surrounded on all sides, so that his men could not see him, and one of the king's squires, called John Standwick, leaped from his horse, and drawing a handsome sword thrust it into his belly, and this killed him. The king certainly hazarded much by this action, but it turned out fortunate, for when the tyler was on the ground he left his attendants, ordering not one to follow him. He rode up to these rebellious fellows, and said to them, '*Gentlemen, what are you about? You shall have no other captain but me; I am your king; remain peaceable.*' When the greater part of them heard these words they were quite ashamed, and those inclined to peace began to slip away. Richard led the rest into the fields at Islington, where, being joined by a large body of the loyal citizens, who came from all quarters to his support, he was enabled to intimidate, and, without spilling blood, to subdue them. Thus did these people disperse and run away on all sides, and the king and his lords returned to London in good array. John Ball and Jack Straw were found hidden in an old ruin, thinking to steal away; but this they could not do, being betrayed by their own men. The king and lords were well pleased with their seizure; their heads were cut off, as was that of Tyler, and fixed on London bridge, in place of those of the gallant men whom they had beheaded. When the princess, the king's mother, saw the king, she was mightily rejoiced, and said, 'Ha, ha! fair son, what pain and anguish have I not suffered for you this day.' 'Certainly, madam,' replied the king, 'I am well assured of that; but now rejoice and thank God, for it behooves us to praise him, *as I have this day regained my inheritance, and the kingdom of England, which I had lost.*' Richard, at this time, was in his sixteenth year."—*Froissart*.

SECTION IV.

THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK.

Extending from the Accession of Henry IV. (1399) to that of Henry VII. (1485).

1399 **1. Henry IV.**, son of John of Gaunt, the fourth
 to son of Edward III., had been declared king by Par-
 1413 liament; but the rightful heir was *Edmund Mortimer*, Earl of March, the great-grandson of Li'onel, the third son of Edward III. (see Genealogical Table). This prince, a child of seven years, was detained in custody at Windsor Castle by Henry. A few months after the accession of the latter, a conspiracy was formed to restore Richard to the throne; but it failed, and those concerned in it were executed (1400). This probably led to the murder of the deposed monarch. Henry, in order to protect the Church from the danger of heresy, caused severe laws to be passed against the Lollards; and one of them (a clergyman) was condemned and burnt at the stake (1401). This was the first English subject who was put to death on account of his religious opinions.

2. Repeated conspiracies formed a striking feature of this reign. The most formidable was that excited by the Earl of Northumberland and his son, Harry Percy, surnamed *Hotspur*, on account of his fiery temper. This young nobleman had acquired great fame, during the preceding reign, by his exploits in a skirmish with the Scots, at Otterbourn (1388), on which battle was founded the famous ballad of "Chevy Chase." The Percies had also greatly aided Henry in his efforts to obtain possession of the kingdom; but afterward, quarrelling with him, they joined their

1. Who was Henry IV.? Who was the rightful heir? Who was Edmund Mortimer? What conspiracy was formed? The Lollards?

2. What formed a striking feature of this reign? What conspiracy under Harry Percy? How had Percy become famous? What was founded on this battle?

forces to those of the Scots under the Earl of Douglas, and to the Welsh under Owen Glendower, with the object of placing Mortimer on the throne. Richard Scrope, archbishop of York, was also engaged in the conspiracy.

3. A terrific battle was fought near Shrewsbury (1403); but the rebels were defeated, and Percy, their brave leader, was slain. The king and his son took part in the battle, and signalized themselves by their feats of strength and daring. Some of the conspirators were taken prisoners and executed; but the Earl of Northumberland was pardoned. Two years afterward, the latter, with the archbishop of York and others, again rose in rebellion; but they were unsuccessful, and the archbishop, with some of the other conspirators, was executed (1405). This was the first instance in English history of the execution of an archbishop. Northumberland escaped into Scotland; but subsequently, invading England with a hostile force, he was defeated and slain.

4. The other events of this reign are of little importance. Henry IV. died in 1413, having lost many years previously the great popularity by means of which he had been enabled to obtain the crown. His reign was beneficial to England; for the Commons acquired a considerable increase of power, especially in connection with the granting of supplies for the support of the government. He was succeeded by his son Henry. [*Note 1, end of Sec.*]

1413 5. **Henry V.**, during his father's life, had been
to noted for his riotous and disorderly conduct; and
1422 had, on one occasion, been committed to prison by the chief-justice, whom he had insulted for indicting one of his dissolute companions. On his accession, however, he dismissed his profligate associates, and thoroughly reformed his life, retaining in office the wise ministers of his father,

3. Battle of Shrewsbury? Its results? Renewal of the rebellion? The result?

4. Death of Henry IV.? How was his reign beneficial? His successor?

5. For what had Henry V. been noted? What change took place on his accession? His course toward the Lollards?

including Gascoigne (*gas'koin*), the chief-justice by whom he had been so fearlessly punished. Among his first acts was the persecution of the Lollards, now a numerous party; and their leader, Lord Cobham, with many others, was condemned and executed. [*See Note 2, end of Sec.*]

6. Henry next made an attack upon France, which he hoped to subdue; because, during the lunacy of its king, Charles VI., it was distracted by disputes as to who should have the regency. Having taken Har'fleur, after a long siege, he found his army so much reduced that he resolved to return to England. On his march to Calais, however, he was surprised by the French army at Agincourt, and was obliged to risk an engagement, although the enemy's forces were more than four times as numerous as his own. The result was very disastrous to the French, 10,000 of their army being slain, and 14,000 taken prisoners; while the English are said to have lost only forty (1415). Henry was not in a condition to take immediate advantage of this great victory, and, with his prisoners, proceeded to England, and concluded a truce with the enemy. [*See Note 3.*]

7. Two years afterward, he again invaded France, and after some successes, made a treaty at Troyes (*trwah*) with the imbecile King Charles, according to which he was to marry Charles's daughter Catharine, to have the present administration of the French government, and on the death of Charles, to succeed to the throne (1420). The terms of this extraordinary treaty were fulfilled; and Henry, proclaimed regent of France, entered Paris in triumph. His glory was, however, of short duration; for being attacked by a fatal malady, he expired, in the thirty-fifth year of his age and the tenth of his reign, leaving the throne to his son Henry, then an infant less than one year old (1422).

6. What led to the invasion of France? Give an account of it. Battle of Agincourt? Its result?

7. What led to the treaty of Troyes? (Situation of Troyes? See map of France.) Terms of the treaty? How fulfilled? Death of Henry? His successor?

8. The premature death of Henry V. was a great loss to the kingdom; for his abilities, both as a statesman and a soldier, were of a very high order; and though his ambition was excessive, it was unalloyed with those vices by which this passion is so often stained. The personal appearance and manners of the king were such as became his exalted character and station, and he excelled in all warlike and manly exercises. None of the princes of the house of Lancaster ventured to impose taxes without the consent of Parliament; and so far their imperfect title to the throne favored the progress of political freedom in England. [*See Note 4, end of the Section.*]

1422 9. **Henry VI.**—At the commencement of this
to reign, Parliament appointed the Duke of Bedford,
1461 elder brother of the late king, protector of England, upon whom was also conferred by Charles VI. the regency of France. The French king, however, died a few months afterward; and his son Charles, an energetic and popular prince, boldly asserted his claim to the throne, and was crowned at Poitiers. A war of many years ensued, under the conduct of Bedford, who was not only an accomplished prince, but a most skilful general and statesman. In order to divert the power of Scotland from the support of Charles, the Scottish king, James I.,* who had been for several years a prisoner in England, was restored to the throne of his ancestors.

10. After several campaigns, which though indecisive, had reduced Charles to very great distress, Bedford resolved to invade the south of France; and with this object, laid siege to Orleans, a city which was loyal to the French

* This prince, in a voyage to France, whither he had been sent to save him from the wicked wiles of his uncle, the Duke of Albany, who had seized the government of Scotland, was taken by the English, and was detained for nineteen years prisoner in England. He was treated kindly, educated with care; and during his captivity he wrote several beautiful poems.

8. Loss occasioned by the death of Henry V.? His character? Personal appearance? The Lancastrian princes?

9. Who was appointed protector? What followed the death of Charles VI of France? What is said of Bedford? James I. of Scotland? (*See Note.*)

10. What led to the siege of Orleans? Describe it. Who was Joan of Arc?

monarch. This siege was continued for many months, and the French had given up all hope of successfully repelling their assailants, when their deliverance was effected by one of the most extraordinary occurrences recorded in history. *Joan of Arc*, a simple peasant girl, had been told of a prophecy to the effect that France could only be delivered from its enemies by a virgin; and the idea became impressed upon her mind that to herself had been divinely committed the task of effecting this great object.

11. She soon induced others to believe in the truth of her mission, among them the king himself and his chief officers, and was admitted into Orleans, arrayed in armor, and provided with a train of attendants. Under her leadership the French seemed to be inspired with almost superhuman courage; and the English, struck with terror, were soon obliged to raise the siege (1429). She next urged the king to march to Rheims (*reemz*), in order to assume the crown of his ancestors according to the accustomed rites; and this being triumphantly achieved, she demanded to be dismissed, considering her mission at an end.

12. The French, however, selfishly detained her: and a short time afterward she fell into the power of the English, who cruelly caused her to be burnt to death in the market-place of Rouen (*roo'en*), on a charge of sorcery and impiety (1431). But nothing was gained by this ruthless execution of the "Maid of Orleans." The Duke of Bedford died (1435), and Charles was enabled to re-enter his capital, after having been excluded from it for twenty years (1437). The English continued to suffer defeat, until finally this long war was interrupted by a truce which lasted six years (1444).

11. How was the siege of Orleans raised? What was then done by Joan of Arc?

12. Further history of the Maid of Orleans? Of the English invasion?

13. Henry, on arriving at the age of majority, showed neither the capacity nor the disposition to take control of the government, which, since the death of Bedford, had been administered by the Duke of Gloucester, the king's uncle, and by Cardinal Beaufort, his guardian. Through the influence of the latter, the king married Margaret of Anjou, one of the most beautiful and accomplished princesses of the age, and well suited by the masculine energy of her character to supply the defects and weaknesses of her husband (1444). By the terms of the marriage treaty Margaret's father, the Duke of Anjou, was to receive from the English king a large sum of money, and the cession of Maine and Anjou, provinces which had been conquered by the English at great cost of life and treasure. [Note 5.]

14. The protector Gloucester having violently opposed this treaty, became an object of great dislike to Margaret, and through her contrivance was arrested on a charge of treason. Previous to the day appointed for his trial, he was found dead in his bed; and the Duke of Suffolk, a favorite of the queen's, was chosen his successor, as the king by his increased imbecility had become entirely unfit to administer the government. The Duke of York was succeeded as regent of France by another of Margaret's favorites, the Duke of Somerset, under whom the English lost all their French possessions except Calais (1451).

15. The death of the virtuous Duke of Gloucester, generally styled by the people "the good duke Humphrey," together with the disgraceful losses of territory in France, caused intense popular indignation against the queen and her minister Suffolk. The latter was impeached by the Commons, and the king, to save his life, banished him from the kingdom; but on his passage to France,

13. Character of the king? Whom did he marry? Her character? Terms of the marriage treaty?

14. Conduct of the queen toward Gloucester? His death? His successor? Who became regent of France?

15. What made the queen and her minister unpopular? What happened to Suffolk? What insurrection broke out?

he was seized by order of his enemies, and executed. The misconduct of the government also led to an insurrection of the lower orders, under a leader named Jack Cade; but it was soon put down, Cade being slain (1450).

16. The total incapacity of the king, and the disorders which it occasioned in the government, induced many of the people to favor the claims of Richard, Duke of York, to the throne, in right of his descent from the third son of Edward III. Richard was a man of vigor and ability, and though greatly disliked by the queen, had obtained the appointment of *Protector of the Realm*, in opposition to his rival the Duke of Somerset, the favorite of the queen and her party. The latter, however, afterward triumphed, and Richard was compelled to resign his office.

17. Richard and his adherents then raised an army, ostensibly for the redress of grievances; and in the battle of St. Albans defeated the royalists, and took the king prisoner (1455). This was the first conflict in that great civil war, styled the "War of the Roses" (from the badges worn by the respective parties, the Lancastrians wearing a red rose and the Yorkists a white rose),—a war which lasted thirty years, and was signalized by twelve pitched battles; which deluged England with blood, and in which the ancient nobility of the kingdom were almost annihilated.

18. The next year after the battle of St. Albans the king was restored to his authority; but the contest soon broke out with increased fury, and in the battle of Northampton (1460) the king was defeated and taken prisoner by the Earl of Warwick (commonly called, from subsequent events,

16. Richard, Duke of York,—his claim to the throne? His character? What office did he obtain? How displaced?

17. What led to the battle of St. Albans? What civil war was then commenced? Its duration and consequences? The badges of the respective parties?

18. What events followed the battle of St. Albans? (Where is St. Albans? What is said of the Earl of Warwick? (See note.)

the "king-maker").* After the battle of Northampton the Duke of York was proclaimed the lawful successor of Henry; and Edward, the son of Henry and Margaret, was excluded from the throne. The administration of the government was, meanwhile, to be committed to the Duke of York.

19. The queen, however, fled to Scotland, and, with the aid of the northern barons, raised a large army, with which, in the battle of Wakefield, she defeated the Duke of York, who was taken prisoner and put to death with great ignominy. By the order of Margaret his head was cut off and fixed on the gates of York, with a paper crown upon it, in derision of his claim to royalty. Other cruelties were perpetrated by the victorious Lancastrians. A few weeks after this, Margaret defeated the Earl of Warwick in the second battle of St. Albans, and thus regained possession of the king; but Edward, son of the late Duke of York, joining his forces with those of Warwick, compelled her to retreat, and triumphantly entering London, was proclaimed king, under the title of Edward IV. (1461).

20. This virtually ended the reign of Henry VI.,—a monarch who commenced life with the most splendid prospects, inheriting not only his father's extensive dominions in England and France, but the love and admiration with which the martial glory of that prince had inspired the English people. With an inoffensive disposition, and many virtues that might have adorned a private station, his unfitness for the exercise of regal sway, especially in so stormy a period, plunged the nation into a civil war, during the progress of which he became the mere sport of fortune, tossed

* *Richard Neville*, Earl of Warwick, was the most powerful of England's feudal barons. His vassals formed a vast army; and so numerous were his retainers, that he is said to have feasted daily, at his various manors and castles, upward of 30,000 persons, while the whole population of the kingdom is estimated to have been at that time only about two and a half millions. Warwick was the Duke of York's brother-in-law. [See Note 6, end of the Section.]

19. What did the queen do? Battle of Wakefield? (Where is Wakefield?) What followed it? Where was Warwick defeated? How did Edward IV. become king?

20. What is said of Henry VI.? His character? Of what was he the founder?

to and fro by the contending parties. As the founder of Eton College, and of King's College* at Cambridge, he has, however, left some claim to the respect and gratitude of posterity. [*See Note 7, end of the Section.*]

1461 21. Edward IV.—Young Edward had acquired to the throne chiefly through the exertions of Warwick, **1483** and his character and talents were such as enabled him to retain it. He was bold, active, and enterprising, and pursued his enemies with the most unrelenting vengeance. Queen Margaret was, however, not entirely subdued. She succeeded in collecting an army of 60,000 men in the northern counties, with which she encountered the forces of Edward and Warwick, in the terrific battle of Towton; but was totally defeated, nearly one-half of her entire army being slain, either in the battle or the pursuit, Edward having issued orders that no quarter should be given (1461).

22. Margaret having fled with her husband into Scotland, Edward returned to London; and a parliament being summoned, his title to the throne was solemnly recognized and confirmed. Three years afterward, Margaret made another effort to recover her lost kingdom, with a small army obtained from Louis XI. of France; but she was defeated in two battles, and with great difficulty succeeded in making her escape (1464). Henry, after remaining concealed for a year, was at last discovered, and being delivered into the power of Edward, was imprisoned in the Tower.

23. Edward's vices, however, and his marriage with Elizabeth Gray, a Lancastrian knight's widow, upon whose relatives the infatuated monarch showered all his favors, so disgusted the brave and high-spirited Warwick, that he

* The chapel of King's College is a very beautiful specimen of Gothic architecture—so beautiful, indeed, that it is said Sir Christopher Wren, the renowned architect, went once every year to contemplate it. It presents the appearance of being cut out of a solid mass of stone, so exquisite is the harmony as well as the finish of the work.

21. What was the character of Edward? What did Queen Margaret do? Battle of Towton? (Where is Towton?)

22. Whither did the queen flee? What was done by Parliament? What other effort was made by Margaret? Its result? What became of Henry VI.?

23. What offended Warwick? What did he accomplish?

Ladies' Head Dresses. (*Froissart.*)



Hats and Caps.



Ladies' Head Dresses.



Male Costumes.



COSTUMES—REIGN EDWARD IV. (*From old MSS.*)

deserted the cause of Edward, and formed an alliance with Margaret. After obtaining a supply of men and money from the king of France, he landed at Dartmouth; and so popular was the earl, that in a few days he collected an army of 60,000 men, and having compelled Edward to flee, took the imprisoned Henry from the Tower and proclaimed him king. This act was ratified by Parliament, and the regency was intrusted to Warwick and his son-in-law, the Duke of Clarence, brother to Edward IV. (1471).

24. Disaster soon followed this great victory; for Edward landing in England with a small force, was soon joined by an immense army; and regaining possession of London, he once more made the hapless Henry a prisoner, and marched against Warwick, who had taken a position at Bar'net, in the neighborhood of London. The king-maker, deserted by his son-in-law, the Duke of Clarence, who, with a considerable force, went over to the Yorkists, was defeated and slain, fighting on foot and in the thickest of the engagement (1471).

25. On the same day Margaret landed in England with her son Edward, and advanced into the country, increasing her army as she proceeded. At Tewks'bury, however, she was overtaken by Edward; and her army being entirely defeated, she and her son were made prisoners. The young prince was cruelly put to death by the Dukes of Clarence and Gloster, brothers of the king; and Margaret herself was imprisoned in the Tower. A few days after the battle, Henry expired in the Tower, according to general belief, by the murderous hand of the wicked and cruel Duke of Gloster. Queen Margaret afterward found a refuge in France, where she died (1482). [*See Note 8, end of Sec.*]

26. All the hopes of the Lancastrians were now extin-

24. What led to the battle of Barnet? (Where is Barnet?) What was the result?

25. The battle of Tewksbury? (Where is Tewksbury?) Its result? Who was put to death? Death of Henry VI.? Of Margaret?

26. What was the conduct of Edward? Execution of Clarence? By whom instigated? Death of Edward?

guished; and Edward, being secure on the throne, gave himself up to every species of vice and debauchery. He caused his brother, the Duke of Clarence, to be put to death on a charge of treason, being probably instigated to this crime by his younger brother Richard, Duke of Gloster,—a prince noted for his designing character and unrelenting ambition. Edward was about to engage in a war with France, when he was seized with a distemper, of which he died (1483). [*See Notes 9 and 10, end of the Section.*]

27. During this reign, the art of printing was introduced into England by William Caxton, who, after having acquired a practical knowledge of the art in Holland and Germany, returned to his own country and set up a printing-press at Westminster. The first book printed in England by him was one entitled "*The Game and Playe of Chesse*" (1474). The types used by him were such as were employed in Germany; and all English books continued to be printed in such letters (called *black-letter*) until the reign of James I., when they were superseded by the Roman characters. King Edward greatly encouraged trade and manufactures, particularly in wool. The Feudal System, by the destruction of the ancient nobility, during the War of the Roses, almost entirely disappeared.

28. Edward V., the eldest son of the late king, a youth of twelve years, was proclaimed king; and his uncle Richard, Duke of Gloster, was appointed Protector. This artful and wicked prince, obtaining possession of the young king and his brother, the Duke of York, placed them in the Tower, and caused Lord Rivers, their maternal uncle, and Lord Hastings, with several other distinguished persons, to be executed on a charge of treason. He then gave out that the young princes were illegitimate; and contrived that some of his friends should publicly solicit him to take

27. Art of printing? William Caxton? First printed book? Black-letter? Trade? The feudal system?

28. Who was proclaimed king? Who made Protector? What wicked deed did Richard perpetrate? How did he obtain the crown?

the crown, which, with pretended reluctance, he accepted, and was proclaimed king, under the title of *Richard III.* (1483).

29. Richard III.—The first act of this wicked usurper was to destroy the two young princes, who are supposed to have been smothered in their beds, in the Tower, by his orders. The Duke of Buckingham, through whose assistance he had gained the object of his ambition, was loaded with honors; but he soon became disgusted with the tyranny of Richard, and entered into a conspiracy to dethrone him and place Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, on the throne. This prince was a Lancastrian, being descended, on his mother's side, from John of Gaunt; on his father's he was grandson of Sir Owen Tudor, who had married Catharine, the widow of Henry V.

30. Buckingham took up arms in Wales, with the expectation that his accomplices would raise an insurrection in other parts of the kingdom; but in this being disappointed, he was deserted by his followers, and obliged to conceal himself for safety. He was, however, soon discovered; and being brought to the king, was immediately beheaded (1483). Richard, everywhere triumphant over his enemies, summoned a parliament, and obtained from it a recognition of his title. In order still further to strengthen it, he resolved to espouse Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV.; to accomplish which, he caused his consort, Anne, to be poisoned. This unfortunate princess was the second daughter of the great Earl of Warwick, and had been married to Margaret's son, the hapless Edward, whom Richard had slain at Tewksbury.

31. These abominable crimes excited universal detestation against the usurper; and Henry, Earl of Richmond

29. His first act as king? Duke of Buckingham? Henry Tudor?

30. What befell Buckingham? What was next done by Richard? Queen Anne?

31. Effect of Richard's crimes? What led to the battle of Bosworth? (Where Bosworth?) Its result? Who was crowned king? By whom?

being invited into the kingdom, sailed from Normandy, and landed at Milford Haven with a small force. Re-enforcements flocked to him from all parts, as he advanced toward Shrewsbury; and at Bosworth he was opposed by Richard, at the head of forces double in number those of his own. A fierce battle ensued; but Richard, being deserted by Lord Stanley and a large part of his army, was defeated and slain while fighting desperately in the conflict. The Earl of Richmond was crowned king on the battlefield, with the title of HENRY VII., by Sir William Stanley, brother of Lord Stanley (1485). [See Note 11.]

32. The body of Richard was buried at Leicester; but, at the destruction of the monasteries in the reign of Henry VIII., it was exhumed, and the stone coffin in which it had been interred was long used as a horse-trough at an inn in that town. Richard was brave and sagacious; and had he been the rightful occupant of the throne, there is reason to think he would have adorned it by great and worthy deeds. His ruling passion, ambition, was boundless; and he stopped at no crime that seemed necessary to secure its gratification. It must, however, be borne in mind that his character has been drawn by historians who wrote in the interests and praise of the Tudors; and that, therefore, his acts have been represented in the worst possible light. The stories told of the deformity of his person, and which the genius of Shakespeare has served to preserve, are believed by some to be exaggerations. He was a patron of learning, bestowing many benefactions on the universities, and affording encouragement to the newly-invented art of printing. He also sought to protect the interests of English merchants in foreign countries, by appointing consuls, and established postal facilities by the appointment of couriers for the speedy transmission of news. [See Note 12, end of Sec.]

32. Where was Richard buried? When exhumed? His coffin? What is said of his character? What should be borne in mind? What did he encourage?

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK.

33. This period was characterized by civil commotions, the result of which was to introduce great changes in the political and social character of the nation. One of the most important of these was the extinction of *villanage*, or serfdom. The nobles being obliged to arm their serfs in the "Wars of the Roses," could never thereafter compel them to return to a state of servitude. Besides, the ancient nobility having nearly all perished in these long wars, feudalism was destroyed, and a sounder and more liberal system took its place. [*See Notes 13 and 14, end of the Section.*]

34. In other respects, these wars suspended for a time the march of improvement. Agriculture was necessarily very much neglected; and consequently widespread famine was a frequent calamity, the lower classes being sometimes obliged to live upon roots and herbs. Large tracts of land which had been carefully tilled were converted into pasturage for sheep, in order that the grain of foreign countries might be purchased with the wool thus obtained. Hence it has been remarked, that the Wars of the Roses did not check the commercial prosperity of the country. Many of the merchants amassed great wealth, and were thus enabled, by large loans, to relieve the necessities of their sovereign. To this period belongs the famous Whittington, who was "thrice Lord Mayor of London,"* and who, according to the story, commenced his fortunate career with the possession of only a cat.

35. The most prominent innovation in manufactures was the introduction of silk-making; and in 1455 a statute

* During the reign of Henry V.

33. How was this period characterized? The result? What was extinguished in what way?

34. Agriculture? Commerce? The wealth of merchants? Whittington

35. Silk-making? The fisheries?

was passed to protect those engaged in it from the destructive competition of the Lombard merchants, by checking their importations. The fisheries, also, commenced to receive a very large share of attention. On the eastern coast, the herring-fisheries became exceedingly valuable; and at Yarmouth an annual fair was held for trade in this fish, which attracted ships from many ports of Europe.

36. Science received some additions, being cultivated at the schools especially established in the two universities for the various departments, such as astronomy, chemistry or alchemy, mathematics, etc. The methods and objects of research were, however, very fanciful. Thus, the alchemist expended all his energies in searching for the *Philosopher's Stone*—a substance that would transmute into gold all the other metals; the physician, instead of carefully observing the phenomena connected with diseases, and by means of careful experiment discovering remedies for them, spent all his time in trying to find the *Elixir of Life*—a universal remedy. These fanciful notions, however, prompted to experiment and observation, and thus led to the discovery of useful scientific knowledge. [See Note 15.]

37. The great event of this period was the introduction of printing. By means of it the printed black-letter volume took the place of the expensive manuscript; and thus books became much cheaper, and learning more widely diffused. New schools and colleges sprang into existence; and the education of the scholar began to assume some degree of respectability, when contrasted with the training of the knight or the soldier. This also led to a greater degree of refinement in the language, which gradually approached the character of modern English. The want of a standard of orthography, however, greatly retarded its progress. No two authors spelled alike; and an author often spelled the same word differently on the same page. [See Note 16.]

36. Science? The principal objects of research? To what did this lead?

37. Printing? Effects of its introduction? Orthography?

38. Dramatic performances began to be of a more regular character. They were acted chiefly by the clergy, being designed to teach the lower classes the Bible history; and hence such subjects were chosen as *The Creation*,—*The Flood*,—*The Birth of Christ*, etc. These were called *Mysteries*, or *Miracle Plays*. They were succeeded, in the reign of Henry VI., by the *Moral Plays*, the object of which was to impress upon the minds of the spectators the excellence of virtue, by means of the representation of ingenious allegories. The performers in these plays were laymen, and personated Mercy, Truth, Justice, etc.

39. Architecture was not encouraged as much as during the preceding period; but many changes in the mode of building houses were introduced. The feudal castles being swept away in the storm of war, large manor-houses of wood took their places. These were decorated with much carving and painting, and the rooms were adorned with tapestry. The furniture was, however, still scanty, and of clumsy form, although considerably improved. The bed furniture appears to have been comparatively luxurious.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

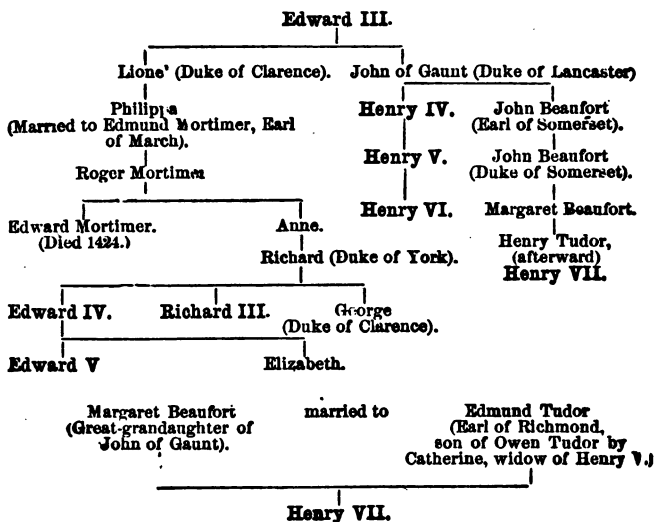
- 1399. Henry IV.** Reigned 14 years.
- 1403.** Battle of Shrewsbury. Percy defeated and slain.
- 1413. Henry V.** Reigned 9 years.
- 1415.** Battle of Agincourt.
- 1420.** Treaty of Troyes.
- 1422. Henry VI.** Reigned 39 years.
- 1429.** Siege of Orleans raised.
- 1431.** Joan of Arc burnt at Rouen.
- 1435.** Death of the Duke of Bedford.
- 1444.** Truce concluded with the French. **Marriage of Henry and Margaret of Anjou.**
- 1451.** The English possessions in France lost, except Calais.

38. Dramatic performances? The *Miracle Plays*? The *Moral Plays*?

39. Architecture? What took the place of the feudal castle? The furniture.

1455. First battle of St. Albans. Henry taken prisoner.
1460. Battle of Northampton. Lancastrians defeated.
1461. Battle of Wakefield. Yorkists defeated.
- “ Second Battle of St. Albans. Earl of Warwick defeated.
1461. **Edward IV.** Reigned 23 years.
- “ Battle of Towton. Margaret defeated.
1464. Margaret again defeated. Henry imprisoned in the Tower.
1471. Flight of Edward IV. Henry again proclaimed king.
- “ Battle of Barnet. Warwick defeated and slain.
1474. First book printed in England by Caxton.
1482. Death of Queen Margaret in France.
1483. **Edward V.** Reigned 74 days.
1483. **Richard III.** Reigned 2 years.
1485. Battle of Bosworth. Richard defeated and slain.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE LANCASTRIAN AND YORK FAMILIES.



REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Who was Henry IV., and how did he become king?.....	101-108
2. Who was Edmund Mortimer, and what can you state of him?.....	108-109
3. What conspiracies were formed against Henry IV. ?.....	108-108
4. Give an account of the one in which the Percies were engaged.....	108-109
5. Now name in chronological order the principal events in the reign of Henry IV.....	108-109
6. When and by whom was he succeeded on the throne?.....	109
7. State what you can of the previous life and acts of Henry V.....	109
8. What account can you give of the Lollards?.....	108-110
9. Of the contest between Henry V. and Charles VI., of France?.....	110
10. Of the closing events in Henry's career?	110-111
11. Of his character, abilities, and manners?.....	109-110-111
12. When and by whom was he succeeded on the throne?.....	111
13. Give an account of the Duke of Bedford.....	111-112
14. Give the full account of Joan of Arc.....	112
15. How did the English lose Anjou and other French possessions during the reign of Henry VI. ?.....	113
16. Give the events which led to the "War of the Roses.".....	113-114
17. Name the principal events of that war during Henry's reign	114-115
18. Who was Edward IV., and how did he become king?.....	115-116
19. What important part did the Earl of Warwick take?.....	115-116-117
20. What by the Duke of Clarence, brother to Edward IV. ?.....	117
21. Give a connected account of the career of Queen Margaret....	113-115-116-117
22. Give the leading facts in the life of Henry VI.....	111-117
23. Give the leading facts in the life of Edward IV.....	115-116-117-118
24. Give the facts in regard to Edward V.....	118-119
25. Who was Richard III., and how did he acquire the throne?.....	118-119
26. Relate the events of his reign	119-120
27. State what you can of his character and personal appearance.....	120
28. Name, in chronological order, the kings of the houses of Lancaster and York, giving the leading events in the reign of each.....	123-124
29. Name each, with the name of his father.....	108-119-124
30. Name those who died natural deaths.....	108-120
31. State how each of the others died.....	108-120
32. Give an account of agriculture during the period.....	121
33. Of silk-making.....	121-122
34. Of the advance made in science.....	122
35. Of the art of printing, and books.....	118-120-122
36. Of schools, colleges, and universities.....	116, note, p. 116-120-123
37. Of the condition and improvement of the language.....	123
38. Of dramatic performances and plays.....	123
39. Of architecture and house furniture.....	123
40. Of the destruction of the Feudal System.....	118 121
41. Now give a general view of the state of society during the Lancastrian and York period.....	108-120

NOTES.

1. Character of Henry IV. (p. 109, ¶ 4).—"Henry was of middle stature, of regular form, and perfectly skilled in all the exercises of arms and chivalry; his countenance was severe rather than serene, and his disposition sour, sullen, and reserved; he possessed a great share of courage, fortitude, and penetration; was naturally imperious, though he bridled his temper with a great deal of caution; superstitious, though without the least tincture of virtue and true religion; and meanly parsimonious, though justly censured for want of economy and ill-judged profusion. He rose to the throne by perfidy and treason; and established his authority in the blood of his subjects, and died a penitent for his sins, because he could no longer enjoy the fruit of his transgressions."—*Smollet's History of England*.

2. Misconduct of the Prince of Wales (p. 109, ¶ 5).—"Whilst Henry was endeavoring to recover his reputation, which had suffered a little since his accession to the throne, the Prince of Wales was entirely destroying his own, by his daily excesses. Though he had naturally a great and generous heart, he suffered himself to be corrupted by persons who, to serve their own ends, flattered his vicious passions, and diverted him from the paths of virtue. His court was the receptacle of libertines, debauchees, buffoons, parasites, and the like. Nothing was talked of but the riotous and extravagant pranks of the prince, or his companions. Such a conduct in a prince who was one day to sit on the throne was very amazing to the considerate, who could not help dreading the consequences. However, amidst these apprehensions a ray of hope was seen to shine, in a very unexpected mark of moderation given by the prince. One of his favorites being arraigned for felony before the chief justice, William Gascoigne, he resolved to be present at the trial, with the design to overawe the judge. But his presence not preventing the criminal's condemnation, he was so transported with passion that he struck the judge on the face. The chief justice thus affronted, considering the consequences of such an action, without regarding the quality of the offender, commanded him to be arrested on the spot and conveyed to prison. Then was seen what would never have been expected, the prince quiet as a lamb, submitting without a murmur to the judge's orders, and suffering himself to be led to prison like a private person. 'The judge's courage and the prince's moderation were equally pleasing to the king; nevertheless, Henry, who was excessively jealous of his crown, could not help giving ear to the people's insinuations that his son had ill designs against him.'"—*Rapin's History of England*.

3. Return of Henry V. to England (p. 110, ¶ 6).—"Henry arrived at Dover on the 17th of November; the crowd plunged into the waves to meet him, and the conqueror was carried in their arms from the vessel to the beach; the road to London exhibited one triumphal procession. The lords, commons, and clergy, the mayor, aldermen, and citizens conducted him into the capital; tapestry, representing the deeds of his ancestors, lined the walls of the houses; pageants were erected in the streets; sweet wines ran in the conduits; bands of children tastefully arrayed sang his praise, and the whole population seemed intoxicated with joy."—*Lingard's History of England*.

4. Henry V. (p. 111, ¶ 8).—"The exterior figure of this great prince, as well as his deportment, was engaging; his stature was somewhat above the middle size, his countenance beautiful, his limbs genteel and slender, but full of vigor; and

he excelled in all warlike and manly exercises. He possessed many eminent virtues; and if we give indulgence to ambition in a monarch, or rank it, as the vulgar are inclined to do, among his virtues, they were unstained by any considerable blemish. His abilities appeared equally in the cabinet and in the field. The boldness of his enterprises was no less remarkable than his personal valor in conducting them. He had the talent of attaching his friends by his affability, and of gaining his enemies by address and clemency."—*Hume's History of England*.

5. **Margaret of Anjou** (p. 113, ¶ 13).—"This heroic woman, whose name bears so distinguished a place in the annals of England, was the daughter of René, titular King of Sicily, and niece of the Queen of France; she is described by contemporary chroniclers as possessing 'rare perfections alike of mind and body.' Courageous, enterprising, and reflecting, she was born for dominion; and although extraordinary reverses and misfortunes attended her eventful life, she never for an instant quailed, or forgot her high estate; but, equally great in power and in sorrow, maintained to the last her dearly-bought title of the heroine of Anjou, England's warrior queen. Married at the early age of fifteen to Henry VI., a man whose character was most singularly opposed to her own, she soon discovered his utter incapacity for government, and aroused by the intrigues of the Duke of York and his faction, who, presuming on the timidity and want of firmness of the 'priest-like Henry,' were gradually working his ruin, she boldly took upon herself the care of the state, and supplied by her energy and talent the qualities which were wanting in her husband."—*Historical Characters*.

6. **The Earl of Warwick** (p. 115, note).—"This nobleman, commonly known from subsequent events by the appellation of the *king-maker*, had distinguished himself by his gallantry in the field, by the hospitality of his table, by the magnificence, and still more by the generosity of his expense, and by the spirited and bold manner which attended him in all his actions. The undesigning frankness and openness of his character rendered his conquest over men's affections the more certain and infallible; his presents were regarded as sure testimonies of esteem and friendship, and his professions as the overflowing of his genuine sentiments. No less than thirty thousand persons are said to have lived daily at his board, in the different manors and castles which he possessed in England. The military men, allured by his munificence and hospitality, as well as by his bravery, were jealously attached to his interests; the people in general bore him an unlimited affection; his numerous retainers were more devoted to his will than to the prince or to the laws; and he was the greatest, as well as the last of those mighty barons, who formerly overawed the crown, and rendered the people incapable of any regular system of government."—*Hume's History of England*.

7. **Character of Henry VI.** (p. 116, ¶ 20).—"His stature was rather above the middle standard, his limbs slim and well formed, his countenance mild and benevolent, and, but for his unhappy mental malady, and his many troubles, which began even in his early days, and wrought premature decay, he would have been thought well-favored. He was studious, inoffensive, and devout, a lover of justice, and an enemy to cruelty and the shedding of blood; and although by the weakness of his intellect he was but in title a king, his blameless private life claimed for him respect and commiseration."—*Kings of England*.

8. **Assassination of Prince Edward** (p. 117, ¶ 25).—"After the field of Tewkesbury was ended, King Edward made a proclamation that whosoever could bring Prince Edward to him, alive or dead, should have an annuity of a hundred pounds during his life, and the prince's life should be saved. Sir Richard Croftes, a

wise and valiant knight, nothing mistrusting the king's former promise, brought forth his prisoner Prince Edward, being a goodly, feminine, and a well-featured young gentleman, whom, when King Edward had well advised, he demanded of him how he durst so presumptuously enter into his realm with banner displayed. The prince, being bold of stomach and of a good courage, answered, saying, 'To recover my father's kingdom and inheritance from his father and grandfather to him, and from him, after him, to me lineally divoluted.' At which words King Edward said nothing, but with his hand thrust him from him (or, as some say, stroke him with his gauntlet), whom incontinent they that strode about (which were George, Duke of Clarence, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, Thomas, Marquis of Dorset, and William, Lord Hastings) suddenly murdered and piteously mangled; the bitterness of which murder some of the actors after, in their latter days, tasted and essayed by the very rod of justice and punishment of God. His body was homely interred with the other simple corpses in the church of the monastery of Black monks in Tewkesbury."—*Hall's Chronicle*.

9. Assassination of Clarence (p. 117, ¶ 26).—"In 1478 the Tower was the scene of another event, the interest of which, like that attached to the death of Henry VI., is rather enhanced than diminished by the obscurity in which it is enveloped—the imprisonment and extraordinary end of George, Duke of Clarence, the king's brother; who, according to popular report, terminated his days within the Tower, by drowning in a butt of Malmsey. The vaulted room in the Bowyer Tower is the place where the supposed assassination is said to have taken place, and if the perpetrators of the foul deed considered it necessary to choose a spot more dismal and secluded than another for the scene of such a tragedy, the story derives a probability from the situation and character of the place in question; but it is unsupported by any historical evidence."—*Bayley's History of the Tower*.

10. Character of Edward IV. (p. 118, ¶ 26).—"In his person he was one of the handsomest men in England, and perhaps in Europe; his noble mien, his free air, his affable carriage, prepossessed every one in his favor; these qualities, joined to an undaunted courage, rendered him extremely popular. He had, however, many vices; he was false, cruel, and vindictive, a slave to his pleasures, and wholly insensible to pity and generosity; indeed, in the words of a contemporary chronicler, 'He had no good qualities but courage and beauty.'"—*Kings of England*.

11. Crowning of Henry VII. (p. 120, ¶ 81).—"Then Lord Stanley picked up his crown, battered and blood-stained, and put it on the head of Henry. The Duke of Norfolk, the Lord Ferrers, Sir Richard Ratcliffe, Sir Robert Brackenbury, and a few other knights shared the fate of their master. It is said that, in the battle and in the flight, three thousand men perished; but, considering the way in which the affair was managed, and Henry's politic anxiety to reconcile parties and to show himself a clement sovereign, it is probable that this number is somewhat exaggerated. The battle of Bosworth Field, which terminated the wars of the Roses, was altogether on an inferior scale to that of several preceding conflicts. — Counting both armies, there were not eighteen thousand men on the field, and of these the greater part were never engaged."—*Cabinet History of England*.

12. Richard the "Crock-Back" (p. 120, ¶ 32).—"Many historians have endeavored to throw discredit on the popular tradition of Richard's deformity, and quote Buck, Rous, and the old Countess of Desmond, who state that he 'was well-formed and active, and with the exception of one shoulder being a trifle higher than the other, he was, save his brother Clarence, the handsomest man of his

time; ' but from his portrait in the Rous-roll, in the *Heralds' College*, and the drawings published by Horace Walpole, in his '*Historic Doubts*,' there is good reason to believe that his title to the surname of 'crook-back' was well founded."—*Selby's Events to be Remembered*.

13. Civil Convulsions in the 15th Century (p. 121, ¶ 33).—"During that portion of the 15th century which comprised the reigns of Henry the Sixth and succeeding monarchs down to the accession of Henry the Seventh, English history exhibits a rapid succession of violent and bloody convulsions. In that period the throne was twice lost and twice regained by each of the rival houses that laid claim to it. Thirteen pitched battles were fought between Englishmen and on English soil. Three out of four kings died by violence; eighty persons connected with the blood royal were reckoned as having perished in war or by the hand of the executioner or of the assassin; and the great majority of the noble families became extinct or sank into obscurity."—*Kirk's Charles the Bold*.

14. Alchemy in the Reign of Henry VI. (p. 122, ¶ 36).—"Henry VI., Evelyn observes in his *Numismata*, endeavored to recruit his empty coffers by alchemy. The record of this singular proposition contains the most solemn and serious account of the feasibility and virtues of the philosopher's stone, encouraging the search after it, and dispensing with all statutes and prohibitions to the contrary. This record was probably communicated by Mr. Selden to his beloved friend Ben Jonson, when the poet was writing his comedy of the *Alchemist*. After this patent was published, many promised to answer the king's expectations so effectually that, the next year, he published another patent; wherein he tells his subjects that the happy hour was drawing nigh, and by means of the stone, which he should soon be master of, he would pay all the debts of the nation in real gold and silver. The persons picked out for his new operators were as remarkable as the patent itself, being a most miscellaneous rabble of friars, grocers, mercers, and fishmongers!"—*Disraeli's Curiosities of Literature*.

15. Caxton and the Printing-Press (p. 122, ¶ 37).—"A Kentish boy by birth, but apprenticed to a London mercer, William Caxton had already spent thirty years of his manhood in Flanders, as Governor of the English guild of Merchant Adventurers there, when we find him engaged as copyist in the service of the Duchess of Burgundy. But the tedious process of copying was soon thrown aside for the new art which Colard Mansion had introduced into Bruges. 'Forasmuch as in the writing of the same,' Caxton tells us in the preface to his first printed work, the '*Tales of Troy*,' 'my pen is worn, my hand is weary and not steadfast, mine eyes dimmed with overmuch looking on the white paper, and my courage not so prone and ready to labor as it hath been, and that age creepeth on me daily and feebleth all the body, and also because I have promised to divers gentlemen and to my friends to address to them as hastily as I might the said book, therefore I have practised and learned at my great charge and dispense, to ordain this said book in print after the manner and form as ye may see, and is not written with pen and ink as other books be, to the end that every man may have them at once, for all the books of this story here emprinted as ye see were begun in one day and also finished in one day.' The printing-press was the precious freight he brought back to England, after an absence of five-and-thirty years."—*Green's Short History of the English People*.

TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?

What led to it?

What resulted therefrom?

Danish Invasion.....	29, 30, 31, 33
Division of the Kingdom.....	30, 41, 43
Destruction of Worcester.....	44
Quarrel with the Normans.....	45
Invasion by the Norwegians.....	48
Norman Invasion.....	48
Saxon League against William.....	56
First Crusade.....	59
Battle of the Standard.....	64
Civil War.....	64
Acquisition of French Provinces.....	65
Assassination of Becket.....	73
Conquest of Ireland.....	74, 75
Captivity of Richard I.....	77, 78
Murder of Prince Arthur.....	80
Papal Interdict.....	80
Naval Battle at Damme.....	81
Signing of Magna Charta.....	81
Civil War under Montfort.....	84
Conquest of Wales.....	86
Persecution of the Jews.....	87
Invasion and Conquest of Scotland.....	87, 89, 90
War with France.....	88
Battle of Bannockburn.....	92
Murder of Edward II.....	94
Battle of Halidown Hill.....	95
Invasion of France by Edward III..	95
Battle of Neville's Cross.....	96
Invasion of France by the Black Prince.....	97, 98
First Era in English Literature.....	99
Insurrection under Wat Tyler.....	99, 100
Deposition of Richard II.....	101
Translation of the Bible.....	101
Battle of Shrewsbury.....	109
Battle of Agincourt.....	110
Treaty of Troyes.....	110
War of the Roses.....	114, 115, 116, 117

Murder of the Princes.....	119
Usurpation of Richard III.....	119
Coronation of Henry VII.....	120

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?

With what events connected?

Other incidents of their lives?

Egbert.....	28
Alfred the Great.....	31
Guthrum.....	32
Dunstan.....	36, 38
Olaf.....	38, 39
Sweyn.....	39
Canute.....	40, 41
Edmund Ironside.....	41, 42
Earl Godwin.....	43, 45
Hardicanute.....	44
Harold.....	46, 47, 48, 49
William of Normandy.....	46, 54
Tostig.....	47, 48
Edgar Atheling.....	48, 54, 62
Lanfranc.....	56n, 59
Robert.....	57, 59, 62
Anselm.....	60, 61
Walter Tyrrel.....	60
Henry Beauclerc.....	61
Matilda.....	61, 63
William Fitz Robert.....	62
Prince William.....	63
Stephen of Blois.....	63
William of Malmesbury.....	69
Geoffrey of Monmouth.....	69
Henry of Huntingdon.....	69
Henry Plantagenet.....	64, 65, 71
Thomas à Becket.....	71, 72, 73
Richard de Clare.....	75
Rosamond Clifford.....	75
Stephen Langton.....	80, 81
Earl of Pembroke.....	83
Hubert de Burgh.....	83
Simon de Montfort.....	84, 85
Llewellyn, Prince of Wales.....	86

TOPICAL REVIEW.

John Baliol.....	87, 89	Dunbar	89
Robert Bruce.....	87, 89	Falkirk	89
William Wallace	89	Carlisle	90
Roger Bacon.....	90n, 104	Bannockburn	92
Gaveston.....	91	Kenilworth	94
Spenser	98	Berkeley	94
Isabella	93	Halidown Hill.....	95
Roger Mortimer.....	93, 94	Crecy	95
Queen Philippa	96	Calais	96
Edward, the Black Prince.....	97, 98	Poitiers	97
John of Gaunt	99	Limoges	98
Wat Tyler.....	100	Otterbourn.....	108
Henry Percy (Hotspur).....	108	Harfleur.....	110
Lord Cobham	110	Agincourt.....	110
Duke of Bedford.....	111	Troyes	110
James I. of Scotland.....	111n	Orleans	112
Joan of Arc.....	112	Rheims	112
Margaret of Anjou	113, 115, 116, 117	Anjou.....	113
Richard of York.....	114, 115	St. Albans.....	114, 115
Warwick, the King-maker.....	114, 115, 117	Northampton	114
Duke of Clarence.....	117	Wakefield.....	115
Duke of Gloster (Richard III.)	117, 118, 119	Towton	116
William Caxton.....	118	Barnet	117
Earl of Richmond	119, 120	Tewkesbury.....	117
		Bosworth	120

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where are they situated ?

With what events connected ?

Sheppey I.....	30
Murcia.....	31
Danelagh	33
Dover	45
Stamford Bridge	48
Hastings	49
Rouen	58, 112
Normandy	45, 59, 62
Nantes.....	58
Cardiff	62
Lincoln	64
Tara	74
Clontarf.....	74
Berwick.....	76
Acre	77
Ascalon	77, 78
Lewes.....	85
Evesham.....	85
Shrewsbury	87
Caernarvon	87
Guienne.....	88

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL.

Meaning of term ?

Character and office of institution ?

Danegeld	39, 44
Witanagemot.....	49
Ceorls (churls)	49
Shire-mote	50
Compurgators.....	50
Ordeal	50
Spinster.....	51
Mints	51
Curfew	57
Feudal System.....	58, 65
Domesday Book.....	58
Chivalry.....	66
Constitutions of Clarendon	72
Troubadours	79
Magna Charta.....	81, 102
House of Commons	85, 109
Salic Law.....	95
Trial by Jury.....	102
Judicial Combat	102
Miracle Plays.....	123

PART III.

MODERN ENGLAND.

SECTION I.

THE TUDOR FAMILY.

Extending from the Accession of Henry VII. (1485) to that of James I. (1603).

1485 to 1509 **1. Henry VII.**—The decisive victory which Henry had gained at Bosworth gave him the throne, but he had no legal title to it. He was, however, prudent and vigorous; and as he foresaw that he would have many difficulties to contend with in consequence of the popularity of the house of York, he determined to show all opponents that nothing but successful war would avail to dethrone him. His first acts showed much partisan jealousy and hatred. The young Earl of Warwick, son of the Duke of Clarence, and grandson of the “King-maker,” he caused to be kept securely in the Tower; and though he had promised to marry the princess Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV., he delayed the nuptials for some months, greatly to the dissatisfaction of the nation, eager by this union to remove all occasion for civil dissensions.

2. A rumor having spread among the people that the Earl of Warwick had escaped from the Tower and was lying concealed in some part of England, a priest of Oxford, named Simon, brought forward a handsome youth, whose

-
1. What policy did Henry VII. adopt? How did he show partisan rancor?
 2. What impostor was brought forward? By whom was he supported?

Progressive Map, No. 6



real name was Lambert Simnel, but who had been trained by Simon to personate the young earl. He took him to Ireland, where the people received him with joy, and proclaimed him king, under the title of Edward VI.; and although the king, in order to prevent the insurrection from spreading in England, exhibited the real earl of Warwick in public, the impostor still retained his adherents in Ireland. He also received from the duchess of Burgundy, sister of Edward IV., the aid of two thousand veteran soldiers from Germany (1487).

3. The cause of Simnel was likewise supported by John, Earl of Lincoln, nephew of Edward IV., under whose leadership the insurgents landed in England; but having advanced as far as Stoke, were met by an army under Henry and entirely defeated, Lincoln being slain in the battle. Simnel was taken prisoner, and being too contemptible to excite the resentment of the king, was pardoned, and made a scullion in the royal kitchen. Simon, being a priest, was punished only by imprisonment (1487).

4. Five years afterward, a more formidable attempt was made by the enemies of the king to raise a pretender to the throne, by counterfeiting Richard, Duke of York, the younger of the two sons of Edward IV., who were generally believed to have been murdered in the Tower. The person selected for this purpose was a young man named Perkin Warbeck, the son of a Flemish merchant, of comely appearance, graceful and courtly address, and sprightly intelligence in conversation. He first assumed the name of Richard Plantagenet in Ireland, and many partisans of the York family at once flocked to his standard.

5. Charles, king of France, being engaged in war with

3. What was done by the insurgents? How were they defeated? What was done with Simnel and Simon?

4. What other pretender came forward? Who was Perkin Warbeck? When did he first assume the name of Plantagenet?

5. What course was taken by Charles, king of France? By the duchess of Burgundy? The effect of this?

England, invited him to Paris, and treated him with all the respect due to the prince whom he personated ; but having made peace with Henry, he dismissed him from the French court. The adventurer then proceeded to the Duchess of Burgundy, by whom he was most cordially welcomed and acknowledged, receiving from her the appellation of the *White Rose of England* (1493). These circumstances induced very many persons in England to believe that Warbeck was actually the Duke of York.

6. Henry, on this account, endeavored to obtain positive evidence of the murder of the duke and his brother ; but in this he was unsuccessful, since the remains of the princes had been removed by Richard, and therefore could not be found.* Several of Warbeck's adherents in England were executed for treason, among them Sir William Stanley, who had crowned Henry at Bosworth, after having saved his life in the battle ; the only crime of this nobleman being that he had said privately that, if he were sure the young man was really King Edward's son, he would never bear arms against him (1495).

7. After making a fruitless attempt to raise an insurrection in Ireland, Perkin proceeded to Scotland, where he was acknowledged by the king, James IV., who gave him the noble lady Catherine Gordon in marriage, and made an invasion of England on his account. The people, however, refused to receive the pretender ; and, after making another unsuccessful attempt in Cornwall, Perkin gave himself up, and was imprisoned in the Tower (1497). There he became acquainted with the Earl of Warwick, and arranged with him a plan of escape ; but the plot was discovered, and both were executed—Perkin being hanged

* In 1674, during some repairs, the bones of two youths were discovered under a staircase in the White Tower, and were interred in Westminster Abbey by order of Charles II., being believed to be the remains of Edward V. and his brother.

6. What was done by Henry ? Who were executed ? Crime of Stanley ?
7. Further account of Warbeck ? What led to his execution ? Who was also executed ? Last of the Plantagenets ?

at Tyburn, and the unfortunate prince beheaded on Tower Hill. By this act of cruelty Henry destroyed the last male descendant of the Plantagenets (1499).

8. Henry was a prudent monarch, and very much averse to war, principally because it prevented the gratification of his ruling passion, avarice. In order to increase his hoards, he resorted to the most unjust and tyrannical exactions; and two lawyers, named Empson and Dudley, gained an infamous notoriety by acting as instruments of his rapacity. His treasures amounted at his death to almost two millions sterling—an enormous sum at that period. He died after a reign of twenty-four years, and was succeeded by his second son, Henry (1509), his eldest son, Arthur, having died some years before.

9. This reign was fortunate for the people of England; for the civil commotions which threatened the peace of the country being repressed by Henry's wise and vigorous administration, general prosperity prevailed, commerce and manufactures were promoted, and the arts of peace flourished. He commissioned John and Sebastian Cabot, Venetians settled in Bristol, by whom the mainland of North America was first reached (1497), the year before that of South America was discovered by Columbus.* Henry also showed his interest in maritime affairs by causing a very large vessel, called the "Great Harry," to be built for naval purposes. This may be considered the foundation of the English navy, since the government previous to this time only used such merchant ships as could be hired or forcibly taken for its service.

* It is said that Henry was prevented by an accident from participating in the honor connected with the discovery of America. Columbus, discouraged by the many repulses with which he met at other Courts, sent Bartholomew to England to solicit aid; but before this could be obtained, Columbus received assistance from Queen Isabella of Spain, and accomplished the enterprise.

8. Ruling passion of Henry? How gratified? Instruments of his exactions? Amount of his hoards? His death?

9. Why was this reign fortunate? The Cabots? The "Great Harry?" What was this the commencement of?

1509 **10. Henry VIII.**—The accession of this king
to was hailed by the people with great rejoicing. His
1547 father had, long before his death, lost to a considerable
 extent their respect and affection; but the young prince,
 now in his eighteenth year, was remarkable for personal
 beauty, affability and ease of address, and both mental
 and bodily accomplishments. Soon after his accession, he
 married Catharine of Aragon, his brother Arthur's widow,
 to whom he had been betrothed since his eleventh year.
 One of his first acts was to redress the grievances of those
 who had suffered from the unjust exactions of the late
 king; and Empson and Dudley were tried, convicted, and
 executed. [*See Note 1, end of the Section.*]

11. Desirous of military glory, he entered into an alliance
 with the Pope, Spain, and Venice, against Louis XII. of
 France; but in the first campaign the English army, under
 the Marquis of Dorset, was unsuccessful (1511). Henry
 then determined to invade the French territories with an
 overwhelming force. He landed at Calais with an army of
 nearly 50,000 men, and was joined by the Emperor of Ger-
 many, Maximilian, who, enlisting in his army, assumed the
 cross of St. George, and received the usual pay of a captain.
 The English forces having advanced a short distance, were
 met by the French cavalry; but the latter, at the sight
 of the enemy, were seized with a singular panic, and dis-
 gracefully fled. In the pursuit many officers of distinction
 were made prisoners (1513). This affair was called, in
 derision, the "Battle of the Spurs."

12. Instead of improving this victory by marching on
 Paris, Henry allowed himself to be delayed by the siege
 of some inconsiderable towns, and soon afterward returned

10. The accession of Henry VIII.? His character? His marriage? His first
 act?

11. What expeditions were undertaken against France? What led to the
 "Battle of the Spurs?"

12. Did Henry take advantage of this victory? Battle of Flodden Field? Its
 consequences?

to England. In the mean time, the Scots, who had formed an alliance with Louis, invaded England with a large army, under their king, James; but at Flodden Field were met by an English force inferior in numbers, under the Earl of Surrey. The battle was long and desperate, and resulted in the defeat of the Scots, 5,000 of whom, including their king and the flower of the Scottish nobility, were left dead on the field (1513).

13. Henry's favorite minister at this time was Thomas Wolsey (*wool'ze*), who, from a very humble origin, had advanced successively to the highest honors. With varied and extensive learning, a genius for statesmanship, and all the wit and gayety necessary in an accomplished courtier, he soon gained an unbounded influence over the young English monarch; and in his magnificent equipage and gorgeous attire he outshone even the king himself. From being bishop of Lincoln, he was made archbishop of York, and subsequently appointed by the Pope a cardinal (1515). Foreign princes sued for the favor and courted the smiles of this haughty minister and prelate; but he was careful, by pretending a complete submission to the will of his own sovereign, to conceal the extraordinary influence which he had acquired over him.

14. On the death of the Emperor Maximilian, Henry was tempted to make some effort to obtain the vacant throne of Germany, but found that the votes of the electors were engaged either to Francis, king of France, or Charles of Spain. The latter was ultimately successful, and thus became the greatest potentate of Europe; since not only Spain and Germany, but the Netherlands, a part of Italy, and the recently-discovered regions of the New World, yielded obedience to his sway (1519). Francis retired from the con-

13. Who was Thomas Wolsey? His character? What offices were given him? His influence?

14. What followed the death of the Emperor Maximilian? Who was elected to succeed him? Dominions of Charles? Feelings and conduct of Francis?

test, filled with chagrin and disappointment; and in order to strengthen himself against the power of his great rival, planned an alliance with the English king (1520).

15. For the purpose of effecting this, the two kings met at a place near Calais; and a fortnight was passed in the interview, the whole time being spent in tournaments and other entertainments of the most magnificent character (1520). So gorgeous was the display on both sides, under the management of Wolsey, that the place of meeting was called the "Field of the Cloth of Gold."* The treaty which was made was, however, soon broken; for Charles had artfully gained over Cardinal Wolsey to his interests by promising his influence to secure for the ambitious minister the papal throne on the death of the reigning pontiff (Leo X.).

16. Martin Luther having caused great excitement in Europe by the promulgation of his doctrines, Henry, who had been carefully educated in the faith of the Catholic church, wrote a treatise in defence of it, and dedicated it to the Pope, who, as a recompense, conferred on the royal author the title of "Defender of the Faith" (1521).† This was one of the last acts of the pontificate of Leo X., his death occurring before the close of the year. He was succeeded by Adrian VI., greatly to the disappointment of Wolsey. The cardinal, however, was soothed by renewed promises on the part of the emperor, who paid a visit to England in order to confirm the friendship of Henry and his haughty minister (1522).

17. In pursuance of the agreement made with Charles, war was waged with France, but no success attended the English arms; and the king was embarrassed by the want of funds, Parliament refusing to comply with his demands, in spite of the most strenuous efforts on the part of Wolsey to induce

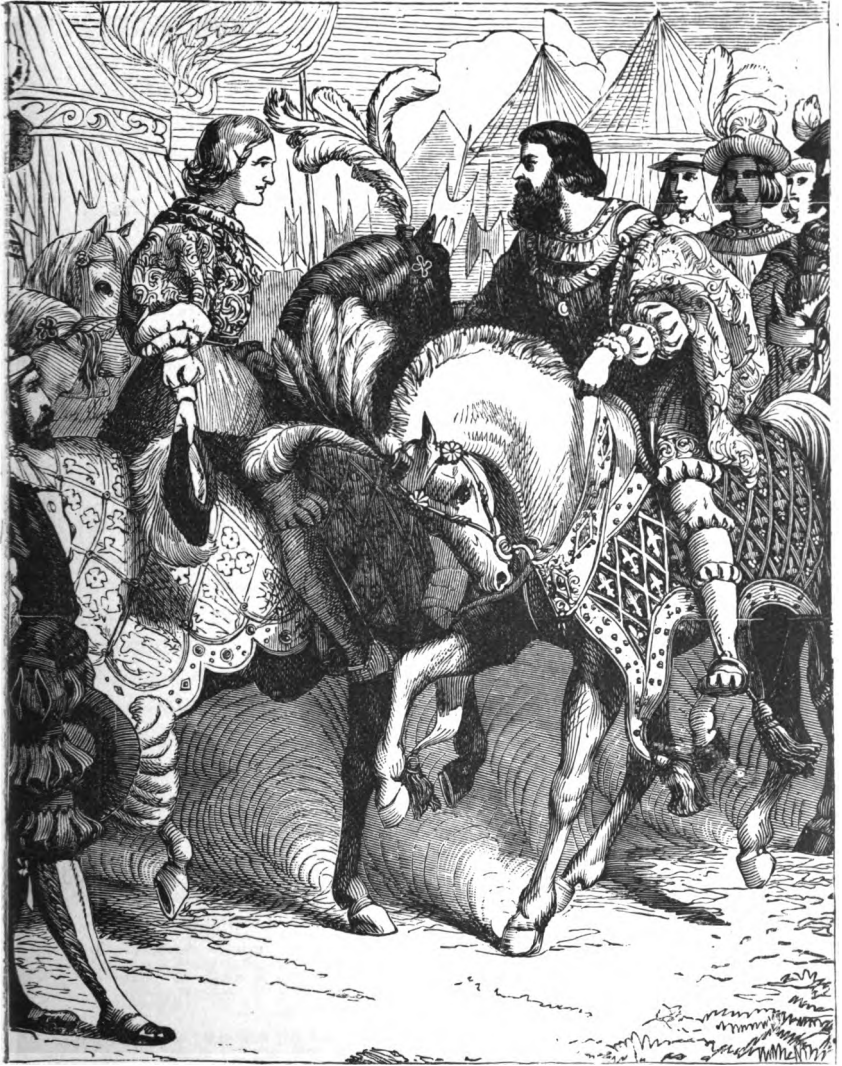
* See Note 2, end of the Section.

† See Note 3, end of the Section.

15. Account of the meeting of Henry and Francis? "Field of the Cloth of Gold?" Why was the treaty broken?

16. What title was conferred on Henry by the Pope? Why? How was Wolsey disappointed?

17. Result of the French war? Second disappointment of Wolsey? What change of policy did it cause?



**MEETING OF HENRY VIII. AND FRANCIS I. ON THE FIELD OF THE
CLOTH OF GOLD—p. 132. (See Note, end of Section.)**

them to vote the sums asked for. The cardinal soon after experienced a second disappointment in the election of Clement VII. to fill the papal chair on the decease of Adrian; and as this was effected by the emperor's influence, Wolsey, seeing his insincerity, determined to prepare the way for a union between his master and the French king (1523).

18. The war with France was, however, continued for some time; until, Francis having been defeated and taken prisoner by the imperial army in the battle of Pavia* (1525), Henry entered into a treaty of alliance with the regent, Francis's mother, and engaged, in consideration of receiving a very large sum of money, to assist in procuring the liberation of the French monarch. This was soon afterward effected (1526); and Rome having been sacked by the brutal soldiers of the emperor, and the Pope made a captive, Henry and Francis entered into a league to restore him to liberty.

19. About this time, the king, captivated by the charms of Anne Boleyn (*an bu'en*), a maid of honor to the queen, began to consider in what way he could obtain a separation from his wife Catharine. Professing to have conscientious scruples with regard to the lawfulness of his marriage with his brother's widow,† he applied to Pope Clement to grant a divorce from her; and the latter commissioned a legate to investigate, with Wolsey, the validity of the dispensation which his predecessor had granted for the marriage of the King and Catharine, and to divorce the parties, if they decided it to be invalid. After the trial had continued some months, during which the king and queen appeared before the court of the two commissioners,

* A city in the northern part of Italy, noted as the ancient capital of the Lombard kings.

† The royal couple had lived together for sixteen years; but to Henry's disappointment, their only living child was the princess Mary; and when a marriage between her and the Dauphin of France was proposed, the French ambassador expressed a doubt of the validity of her parents' marriage. The States of Castile had also opposed the emperor Charles's espousal with Mary on the same grounds. These events, however, occurred some years before the period referred to in the text.

18. How long was the war with France continued? What led to a league between Henry and Francis?

19. Why did Henry desire a divorce from his queen? What course did he pursue? Result of the trial?

it was broken off suddenly, the commission having been revoked, and the case remanded to Rome, before the Pope in person, he having received an appeal from the queen.

20. This greatly exasperated the king, who immediately directed his indignation against Wolsey as the cause of his disappointment. The cardinal was deprived of his office as chancellor, the great seal being bestowed upon Sir Thomas More, a man not only of eminent virtue and capacity, but greatly distinguished for his attainments in science and literature. Wolsey's splendid palace was seized by the king, and with the title of Whitehall, became afterward famous as the residence of the kings of England. The fallen minister was ordered to betake himself to his country residence near Hampton Court, and immediately found himself deserted by all those, who, during his prosperity, had paid him the most servile homage (1529).

21. He afterward retired to his see of York, where he made himself extremely popular by his hospitality, kindness to the poor, and general affability; but his relentless enemies, among whom was Anne Boleyn, were not yet satisfied, and under their influence Wolsey was arrested on a charge of high treason. While being escorted to London for trial, he was seized with severe illness, and expired shortly afterward at Leicester Abbey (1530). Among his last words was the well-known saying, "Had I but served God as diligently as I have served the king, he would not have given me over in my gray hairs." His great faults were his arrogance and inordinate ambition and love of display; but his administration was able and generally judicious; while subsequently Henry's rule was marked by tyranny, extravagance, and passion.

20. What caused the fall of Wolsey? How was he treated? Who became chancellor?

21. Further history of Wolsey? His death? His last words? Remarks on his character?

22. Tired of waiting for the Pope's decision, the king, by the advice of Thomas Cranmer—a distinguished ecclesiastic, referred the question respecting his marriage with Catharine to the great universities in Europe; and these having generally decided that it was unlawful, Cranmer, who had been made archbishop of Canterbury, opened a court to examine the question. Although the queen refused to appear before it, he annulled the marriage, and ratified that with Anne Boleyn (1533), with whom the king had been privately married some time before. [*N. 4.*]

23. The Pope having pronounced the judgment of Cranmer illegal, and threatened Henry with excommunication, the Parliament, under the king's influence, confirmed his marriage with Queen Anne, and formally declared him "the only supreme head on earth of the Church of England." By this declaration and other acts of Parliament, the English Church was separated entirely from the see of Rome (1534). The monasteries were afterward suppressed, and some modifications introduced into the doctrines and forms of religion. These events constituted what is called in history the "English Reformation." [*Note 5, end of Sec.*]

24. Sir Thomas More, the virtuous and learned successor of Wolsey, unable conscientiously to support the king in these measures, had resigned the great seal, and subsequently refusing to acknowledge the king's supremacy, was condemned for treason and executed. Fisher, bishop of Rochester, suffered the same fate (1535). The king, indeed, evinced, during the whole of his subsequent reign, a spirit of the most cruel bigotry and persecution. In abandoning his allegiance to the Pope, he by no means became a convert to the new doctrines of Luther and others against the

22. What measure was taken by Henry? By whose advice? How was the marriage annulled?

23. What was done by Parliament? What events constituted the "English Reformation?"

24. What led to the execution of More? Who else was executed? Views and conduct of Henry?

Church of Rome; and while he plundered the churches and monasteries of their possessions, he caused those who dissented from their doctrines to be burnt without the least mercy.

25. About three years after her marriage with the king, Anne Boleyn was brought to trial on a charge of being unfaithful to her royal husband; and, being found guilty, was sentenced to death, and subsequently beheaded (1536). Not satisfied with this cruel vengeance, the king caused his marriage with Anne to be annulled, and her daughter, the princess Elizabeth, to be declared illegitimate. The conduct of Henry went far to disprove the guilt of this unfortunate queen, for on the third day after her execution he married Jane Seymour, one of her maids of honor, of whom he had a short time before become greatly enamored. This queen died the next year, after giving birth to a son, who was baptized by the name of Edward (1537). [Note 6.]

26. The suppression of the monasteries, and the other innovations introduced by the king, occasioned a serious insurrection, called the "Pilgrimage of Grace," in which many priests participated, the object being to restore the Church and suppress heresy. Hull and York were taken by the rebels, who, however, were soon dispersed by the Duke of Norfolk, and their leaders taken and executed (1536). This rebellion led to severer measures against the remaining abbeys and monasteries. All were seized, their rich possessions taken by the crown, and many of the most sacred shrines were pillaged and destroyed, including even that of St. Thomas of Canterbury, whose name, by the king's order, was erased from the calendar, his bones dug up and burned, and their ashes scattered to the winds (1538).

27. Immediately after the death of Jane Seymour, Henry

25. Fate of Anne Boleyn? Vengeance of the king? Third marriage of Henry?

26. What was the "Pilgrimage of Grace?" How caused? What was done by the rebels? How did the insurrection end? To what did it lead? Remains of Thomas à Becket?

27. Fourth queen of Henry? How selected? How treated? Her subsequent history? Fate of Cromwell?

turned his attention to the selection of a new queen, and by the advice of his minister Cromwell, consented to marry Anne of Cleves, a Protestant princess, with whose portrait he had been highly pleased. He was, however, so greatly disappointed with the original, that he soon divorced her; but settled upon her a handsome annuity, upon which she lived in England until her death, in 1557. Cromwell, who had been instrumental in bringing about this unfortunate marriage, was charged with treason, condemned, and executed (1540).

28. The king soon afterward married Catharine Howard, niece of the Duke of Norfolk; but in less than two years she was charged with adultery, and being proved guilty, was beheaded (1542). During the same year, war again broke out with Scotland, brought on through the contrivance of the Catholic party in that country, aided by Mary of Guise (*gweez*), wife of the Scottish king, James V. This monarch sent a considerable force into England, but it was disastrously routed by the English at Solway Moss; and James was so deeply chagrined at the defeat, that he expired in less than a month afterward. A few days before his death, his queen gave birth to a daughter, afterward celebrated as Mary Queen of Scots (1542).

29. Henry then planned the union of the two kingdoms by effecting a marriage between his son Edward and the young Scottish queen; but this was prevented by the Catholic party, through whose influence Scotland again formed an alliance with France. Henry, therefore, entered into a league with the emperor of Germany, in order to attack France; but no results of importance followed, although the war was continued more than three years (1543-46). Meanwhile, the king, for the sixth time, entered into a matri-

28. Fifth marriage of Henry? Guilt and punishment of Catherine Howard? What caused a war with Scotland? How ended? Death of the Scotch king? Infant daughter?

29. What plan was conceived by Henry? How frustrated? What war followed? Sixth marriage of the king? Catharine Parr?

monial alliance, choosing Catharine Parr, widow of Lord Latimer, a lady of beauty, wit, and intelligence, and attached to the new doctrines.

30. The king, however, was exceedingly intolerant of any innovations in religion, except such as he ordered; and many suffered death for daring to express opinions at variance with his own. Among these martyrs, Anne Ascue, a young woman of singular merit and beauty, suffered death at the stake, heroically refusing to deny her faith. The queen fell into great danger by attempting a similar freedom, and only saved herself by pretending an entire submission to her royal husband's will.

31. The last victim of Henry's tyranny was the accomplished Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey, who was beheaded on Tower Hill, having been unjustly condemned on a charge of treason (1547).^{*} The king survived this event only a few days. His excesses had entirely destroyed his health, so that for some time before his death he had become loathsome to all around him, while his irascibility made him an object of constant terror. He was, without doubt, a most remorseless despot; but notwithstanding his arbitrary violation of every principle of political and religious liberty, he never lost entirely the good-will of his subjects. [Note 7.]

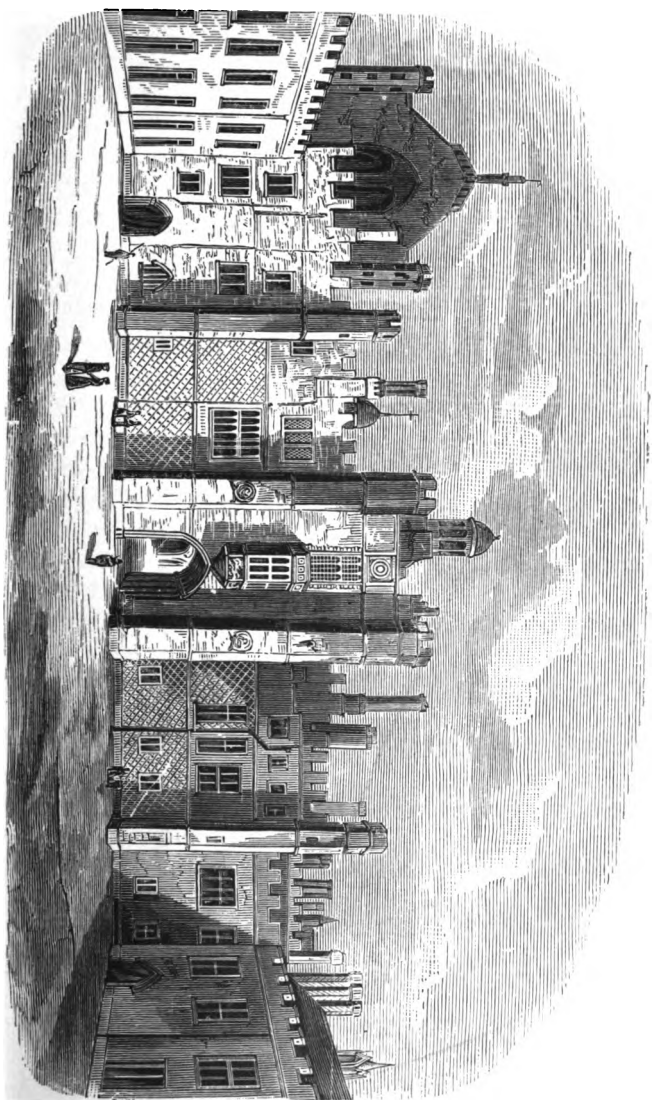
32. During this reign, the first complete copy of the English Bible was printed, and ordered by the king to be placed in every parish church. It was based upon the translation of William Tyndale, and executed by Miles Coverdale. Henry VIII. encouraged learning. He founded

^{*} He perished by the accusations of his unnatural sister, the Duchess of Richmond. The chief evidence of his guilt was her statement that he used the king's cipher, H. R.; although it was shown by him that this cipher had been worn by his ancestors as well as by himself. His genius was of a very high order, and his accomplishments quite extensive, including a knowledge of the Latin, French, Italian, and Spanish languages. He had a remarkably vigorous intellect, as well as a keen and ready wit. Chaste both in thought and expression, his writings breathe the most fervent regard both for virtue and religion, while they abound in those beautiful flights of fancy which are the characteristic of genuine poetry.

30. Intolerance of Henry? Anne Ascue? Danger of the queen?

31. Last victim of Henry's tyranny? Death of Henry? His character?

32. What translation was made during this reign? What did Henry found? What was founded by Wolsey? The most noted poets? What children did Henry leave? Who succeeded him?



HAMPTON COURT PALACE—RESIDENCE OF WOLSEY.

Trinity College in Cambridge and munificently endowed it. Wolsey founded Christ Church in Oxford, and was the first to establish in the same university a professorship for giving instruction in Greek. The most noted poets of this period were the unfortunate Surrey and Sir Thomas Wyatt.* Henry left three children—Mary, daughter of Catharine; Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn; and Edward, son of Jane Seymour. The last succeeded him.

1547 33. Edward VI. being only ten years of age, **10** the government was intrusted to his maternal uncle, **1553** the Duke of Somerset, as Protector; who, being in favor of promoting the cause of the Reformation, took care that those who directed the education of the youthful monarch should be of the same principles. Edward readily imbibed these views, and showed a knowledge, zeal, and devotion quite remarkable in one so young. His attention to his studies and the gentleness of his disposition also made him much loved by all around him. Cranmer and Latimer were the most eminent of his religious preceptors, as they were likewise among the most active of the Reformers; while Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester, showed the greatest zeal in opposing all further religious innovations.

34. In accordance with the views of the late king, Somerset was desirous of effecting a union between England and Scotland, by the marriage of Edward with the young Scottish queen. This being opposed by the Scots, he marched a large army across the border, and gained a great victory near Edinburgh (1547), but was unable to take advantage of it, being compelled to return to England, to oppose the machinations of his enemies, among whom was his own brother, Lord Seymour. Shortly

* Wyatt and Surrey were intimate friends, being congenial both in taste and sentiment. Wyatt was a great favorite with the king, and was employed on some important embassies on the continent.

33. Who was appointed Protector? Education of Edward VI. • His character? His religious preceptors? Most noted reformers? Opponents of change?

34. What led to an invasion of Scotland? The result? Whither was the young queen of Scotland sent?

afterward, the infant queen of Scotland was sent to France, where she was educated, and subsequently became the wife of Francis II., king of that country.

35. The Duke of Somerset, finding his authority endangered by the ambitious schemes of his brother, caused him to be arrested and committed to the Tower; and a bill of attainder* being passed against him by Parliament, he was executed (1549). Further changes were made in the established religion, through the influence of the Protector; and severe laws were enacted against those who refused to comply with the liturgy, as contained in the "Book of Common Prayer," compiled chiefly by Cranmer and Ridley. Some persons who persistently refused a compliance with the new doctrines and practices, were committed to the flames.

36. The breaking up of the religious houses, the enclosure of the commons on which the peasantry had formerly pastured their cattle, the depreciation of money from the debasement of the coin by the late king, and the great influx of gold and silver from the New World, had occasioned very general distress, all of which was attributed by the people to the religious innovations. An insurrection was the consequence, the people rising in several parts of England at the same time, and demanding a restoration of the former religious institutions. These commotions were, however, soon put down; chiefly by the energetic conduct of the Earl of Warwick, who defeated the rebels with great slaughter, and caused the leaders to be hanged (1549).

37. Somerset, who up to this time had ruled England with kingly power, now became very unpopular; and,

* A bill of attainder is a law declaring a person guilty of treason, and condemning him without a formal trial. It was a noted instrument of tyranny for many years.

35. What proceedings against Lord Seymour? Changes in religion? Book of Common Prayer? Persecutions?

36. What occasioned great distress? To what attributed? What insurrection broke out? How suppressed?

37. What proceedings against Somerset? Through whom was this done?

principally through the management of Warwick, was finally deposed and sent to the Tower, the latter thus obtaining the chief control of the government (1549). Somerset having made humble submission to his enemies, was released, but was a short time afterward accused of high treason, and executed on Tower Hill (1552). This was accomplished by the contrivance of Warwick, now bearing the title of Duke of Northumberland, whose unbounded ambition was able to extinguish in his mind every generous and honorable feeling.

38. The ill health of the young king prompted the duke to undertake a still bolder enterprise, which was no less than to place one of his own family on the throne. In pursuance of this scheme he married his son, Lord Guilford Dudley, to Lady Jane Grey, a descendant of Henry VII., and persuaded the king to set aside the claims of his sisters Mary and Elizabeth on the ground of illegitimacy, and to settle the succession upon his cousin, the Lady Jane. After this settlement was made, the king grew rapidly worse, Northumberland having dismissed his physicians and placed him in charge of persons entirely committed to his own interests. A short time after this, he expired, in the sixteenth year of his age, much lamented for his many virtues (1553). [*See Note 9, end of the Section.*]

1553 39. Mary.—The lords, being under the influence of Northumberland, immediately waited upon **1558** the Lady Jane to inform her of the death of her royal cousin, and of her own elevation to the throne by his designation; but she received the news with visible concern and anxiety. She was a lady of unusual accomplishments and singular amiability, having passed much of her time in a close application to study, and made great attainments in the Greek and Latin languages under the

38. What other scheme was planned by the Duke of Northumberland? What was done to effect it? Illness and death of the king?

39. Announcement to Lady Jane Grey? Her character and attainments? Why did she accept the throne?

instruction of the distinguished scholar, Roger Ascham.* For other occupations she expressed an entire indifference, and only yielded to the persuasions of her friends to accept the throne, from the representations made to her that her title to it was clear, and that her duty dictated the step.

40. The people, however, heard the proclamation of her accession with sullen silence or expressions of scorn and contempt; and Mary at once took measures to assert her right. She was proclaimed queen by the authorities of London, and hailed with shouts of applause by the populace when she entered that city. Northumberland and his colleagues were obliged to submit, and the former with two of his accomplices was convicted of treason and executed. Lady Jane Grey and Lord Guilford were also sentenced to death, but the queen was reluctant to carry the sentence into execution. Cranmer was also tried, and convicted of participating in the treason of Northumberland, but was reserved for future punishment. [Note 9.]

41. The cherished object of Mary was to restore the Catholic religion; and her chief counsellors in carrying out this object were Bishops Gardiner and Bonner, whom she had reinstated in their sees. The Parliament repealed all the laws of King Edward with regard to religion; and having annulled the divorce pronounced by Cranmer, declared the queen legitimate. The latter, still further to promote this measure, consented to marry Philip of Spain, son of the Emperor Charles V., who was very devoted to the Church of Rome.

42. In consequence of these changes, a rebellion broke out in Kent, under Sir Thomas Wyatt (son of the poet,

* Very celebrated as a classical scholar. One of his most celebrated works is "*Toxophilus*," a defence of archery—dedicated to Henry VIII. He was teacher of languages to the Lady Elizabeth, and subsequently Latin secretary to Edward VI.; and later, secretary and tutor to Queen Elizabeth. He died in 1563, leaving his principal work,—a treatise on classical education, entitled "*The Schoolmaster*," which was published by his widow.

40. Effect on the people? Measures of Mary? Who were punished?

41. Chief object of Mary? Measures to attain it? Her marriage?

42. What rebellion broke out? Result? Consequence to Lady Jane and her husband? Her last words to her husband? Who were imprisoned?

and hence surnamed "the Younger"); but it was speedily reduced, and Wyatt was executed. Some of the friends of Lady Jane Grey having taken part in it, the queen was finally induced to sign the death-warrant of that unfortunate princess and her husband, and they were consequently beheaded (1554). Her last message to her youthful husband (for neither of them was over seventeen years of age) was: "Our separation will be only for a moment; we shall soon meet each other in a place where our affections will be forever united, and where misfortunes will never more disturb our eternal felicity." The queen filled the Tower and other prisons with the numerous objects of her suspicion, many of them among the most distinguished of the nobility and gentry. The Princess Elizabeth was also imprisoned, but made so good a defence that she was soon released.

43. The queen had already communicated to the Roman pontiff her wish that England should be reconciled to the Catholic Church; and Cardinal Pole was directed to proceed to that country as a papal legate to direct measures necessary for its formal restoration. This was accomplished by the third Parliament of this reign (1555), the motion being carried almost by acclamation, and a memorial sent to the queen and her royal consort, regretting the nation's previous defection from the Roman see. A decree of general absolution was granted by the legate; and the laws against heresy were soon afterward revived.

44. A severe persecution of the Protestants ensued, under the direction chiefly of Bishops Gardiner and Bonner. The first to suffer death at the stake were John Rogers, one of the clergy of St. Paul's, and Hooper, Bishop of Gloucester; and these were soon followed by Saunders and Taylor, two other clergymen. Soon after

43. How was England restored to the Roman see?

44. What persecution ensued? Who were burnt? What account is given of Cranmer? How many persons suffered? What excuse can be offered for this persecution?

this, Ridley, Bishop of London, and Latimer, of Worcester, were burnt together, both of whom showed the greatest fortitude and constancy in their sufferings, refusing to the last to recant their religious opinions (1555). Cranmer, by the promise of pardon, was induced to sign a recantation; but was nevertheless committed to the flames. At the stake, he expressed the deepest contrition for his weakness; and thrusting into the flames the hand which had signed the paper, and exclaiming, "This hand has offended," he kept it there till it was entirely consumed (1556). It has been computed that two hundred and seventy-seven persons suffered death at the stake during this persecution. The only excuse that can be offered for it is, that the age was remarkable for religious intolerance, both parties showing a like spirit in similar circumstances.

45. The queen had been for some time urged to aid her husband Philip, now king of Spain, in a war against France; but her ministers and Parliament were greatly opposed to it; Mary, though treated by her husband with great coolness and indifference, was yet very anxious to promote his views, and by various artifices at length succeeded in obtaining the means necessary to carry on the proposed war. An army, which was sent into Flanders, had considerable share in the victory gained by Philibert, Duke of Savoy, at St. Quentin* (1557). As an offset, however, to this victory, the French, under the Duke of Guise, surprised the garrison at Calais, and took the town, after it had been in the possession of the English for more than two hundred years (1558).

46. The queen, whose health had been for some time failing, was greatly dejected at this loss, and fell into a lingering fever, of which she expired a short time after-

* A town near the eastern frontier of France.

45. How was aid obtained for Philip? War in Flanders? Taking of Calais?

46. Effect on the queen? Her death? Her character? Promotion of trade? What discovery was made? Exchange of goods?

ward (Nov. 17, 1558).^{*} Cardinal Pole died the same day. Mary possessed a vigorous and resolute mind; and could she have divested herself of the spirit of bigotry, so common in her age, she would have deserved a place among the most virtuous and energetic of sovereigns; but the cruelties perpetrated under her sanction have tended to obscure the many virtues and accomplishments which she undoubtedly possessed. The interests of trade were considerably promoted during her reign. A passage to Archangel^{*} having been discovered during the previous reign, a commercial treaty was made with Russia, and the woollen and linen fabrics of England were exchanged for the skins and furs of the northern regions.

1558 **47. Elizabeth**, daughter of Anne Boleyn, who
 to succeeded Mary, had been educated in the Protest-
1603 ant faith, and her accession to the throne was
 hailed by the people with great rejoicing. She commenced her reign with great moderation, treating all with kindness and courtesy, even those by whom she had been deeply injured during the previous reign. She retained some of the council of Queen Mary, but added others who were favorable to her own views, among whom were Sir Nicholas Bacon and Sir William Cecil (*ses'il*), the latter being made secretary of state, and her chief adviser.

48. The first important event of her reign was the re-enactment of the laws of King Edward concerning religion, and the re-establishment of the new liturgy, to which all were required to conform under severe penalties. By the "Act of Supremacy" all clergymen and government officers were compelled to take an oath acknowledging the English sovereign head of the Church; and by the "Act

^{*} See Note 10, end of Section.

† A noted seaport in the northern part of Russia, on a gulf tributary to the White Sea.

47. How was Elizabeth's accession received? How did she commence her reign? Her chief adviser?

48. Laws regarding religion? Persecution?

of Uniformity" no persons were allowed to attend any other place of worship than those of the Established Church. Hundreds suffered death, imprisonment, or other persecution for refusing compliance with these arbitrary statutes.

49. Philip of Spain made proposals of marriage to Elizabeth; but these were declined; and she told her Parliament, who urged her to accept a consort, that she desired no higher distinction than to have engraved on her tombstone, "Here lies Elizabeth, who lived and died a maiden queen." The first eleven years of her reign was distinguished for internal quiet and prosperity. Peace was established with France and Scotland; the government, under Cecil, afterward made Lord Burleigh, was administered with energy and prudence; the debts of the crown were promptly paid off; and the nation put in a posture of defence, by the construction of a navy which gained for Elizabeth the title of "Queen of the Northern Seas."

50. There were about this time three religious parties in the kingdom: the *Churchmen*, or those who were attached to the Established Church; the *Catholics*, who, supported by the great continental powers, expected to re-establish their religion; and the *Puritans*, who now contended for more radical changes in religious forms and doctrines (1569). These last had imbibed their principles from those who, during the persecutions of the previous reign, had taken refuge in Geneva and Frankfort;* and they opposed Elizabeth's government, not only on the ground of religious differences, but on account of her assuming a prerogative and authority opposed to the civil

* It is computed that during the persecutions under Queen Mary as many as eight hundred Protestants sought an asylum in Switzerland and Germany. But these were of various views, and disputes arose as to the extent of the changes to be made in religious matters. After Elizabeth's accession these disputes were transferred to their own country.

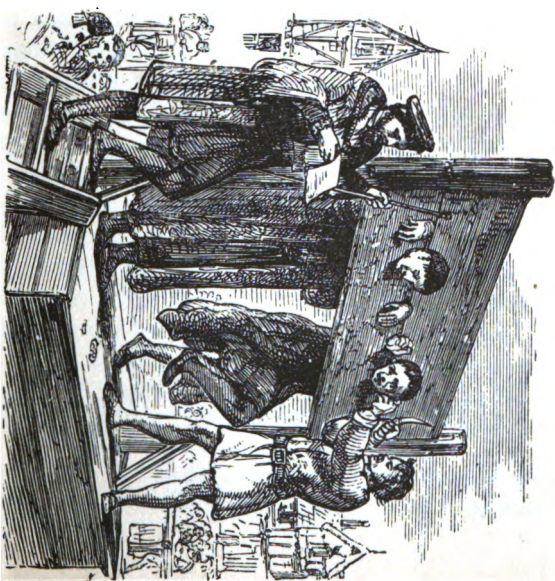
49. Views of Elizabeth as to matrimony? Chief events of the first eleven years of her reign?

50. What religious parties existed at this time? Describe each. Why did the Puritans oppose Elizabeth's government? Was this opposition effective?



IN THE STOCKS.

The Stocks and the Pillory were instruments for the punishment of criminals guilty of "forestalling, using deceitful weights, perjury, forgery," and other crimes. The Pillory was in use in England before the Norman Conquest, and till 1837. It was also used in France and Germany; "Being pilloried" was a real punishment or not, according to the number of the criminal's personal friends or enemies. The former sometimes rallied in force, fed him, sheltered him from the weather, and turned the affair into a triumph; the latter often pelted him with rotten eggs and stones.



IN THE PILLORY.

and political rights of the people. It was not, however, until a subsequent reign that these fearless agitators were enabled to bring their principles into complete operation: for Elizabeth lost no opportunity of repressing their efforts, although some of her ministers favored their principles and practices.

51. England now began to distinguish herself in that splendid career of maritime enterprise which has shed such lustre upon her name. Under the auspices of Sir Walter Raleigh (*raw'le*), a favorite courtier of Elizabeth, voyages were made to North America, and the queen gave to the region discovered the name of *Virginia* (1584). Martin Frobisher also made explorations for a northwest passage to India; and Sir Francis Drake* completed a voyage around the world by way of Cape Horn and the Cape of Good Hope (1579). [*See Note 11, end of Sec.*]

52. The people of the Netherlands having revolted against Philip II. of Spain, in consequence of his dreadful oppressions and persecutions (1572), Elizabeth warmly espoused their cause; and Philip, therefore, made extensive preparations to invade England, with the view to conquer it and restore it to the authority of the Roman pontiff. For this purpose he equipped an immense fleet, which was styled the "Invincible Armada," consisting of 150 ships, bearing 3,000 guns and 27,000 men. But this vast armament, as it sailed up the Channel, was attacked and partly destroyed by a much smaller fleet, under the command of Lord Howard as admiral, assisted by those renowned captains, Drake, Frobisher, and Hawkins. The Spanish admiral, therefore, finding it impossible to effect a landing on the

* He was the first Englishman to accomplish this enterprise. As he had captured some of the Spanish treasure-ships, some persons, fearing the hostility of Spain, endeavored to persuade the queen to disavow the enterprise and punish Drake; but she, in admiration of his valor, conferred on him the honor of knighthood, and participated in a banquet given on board of his ship at Deptford.

51. How did England begin to be distinguished? What voyages and discoveries were made? Sir Francis Drake?

52. What led to a war with Philip? The "Invincible Armada?" By whom was it attacked? How destroyed?

coast, or to gain any advantages over the English fleet, attempted to return to Spain by sailing round Scotland; but a storm arising, nearly all his vessels were wrecked off the Orkney Islands (1588).

53. The year preceding this glorious event is memorable for the execution of the unfortunate Mary, Queen of Scots, at Fotheringay Castle,* after an imprisonment of more than eighteen years. Mary, as has already been related, was sent to France, and became the wife of Francis II. She had been educated in the Catholic faith, and had imbibed a strong partiality for the doctrines and practices of that form of religion. The early death of her husband compelled her to return to Scotland (1561), where she assumed the throne, although she was much disliked by the Scots on account of her religion and gay manners.

54. The Scottish reformers were at this time in the ascendant, under the guidance of the celebrated John Knox, and had made even greater havoc of the religious establishments in that country than had occurred in England. From this zealot and his associates, the young queen received every possible indignity, the Protestant preachers taking pride in insulting and vilifying her to her face, although they were treated by her with the most gracious condescension and respect, and although she had issued a proclamation enjoining all to submit to the established religion.†

55. A few years after her return to Scotland (1565), she married her cousin, Henry Stuart, Lord Darnley; but she lived very unhappily with him, on account of his misconduct, extravagance, and vicious excesses. Becoming jealous

* *Fotheringay*, a parish in Northampton county, in the central part of England. The castle was razed to the ground after the accession of James I.

† She was also an object of suspicion and dislike to Elizabeth and her ministers; for her religion made her a favorite with the Catholic party, and in youth and beauty she had greatly the advantage of the English queen.

53. What execution occurred the year before? Early history of Mary, Queen of Scots?

54. After her return to Scotland, how was she treated? John Knox and the Scotch reformers? Why was she suspected and disliked by Elizabeth?

55. What is said of her second marriage? Its consequences? Murder of Rizzio? Death of Darnley?

of her secretary—one Rizzio (*reet'se-o*), an Italian—Darnley, accompanied by several of his friends, rushed one evening into her apartment, where she was engaged with her secretary and others; and the unfortunate favorite was seized and hurried into the antechamber, where he was despatched with fifty-six wounds (1566). Mary, though at first horror-stricken at this crime, and indignant at the insult offered to herself, afterward professed to pardon it, and extorted from her weak and wicked husband the confession that a plot had been formed by himself and others against her. Some time after this, Darnley was attacked by illness, during which his house, a lonely, half-ruined mansion in Edinburgh, where he had been placed by the queen, was blown up by gunpowder, and he was thus killed.

56. The suspicion that Mary was accessory to this crime seemed afterward to be confirmed by her marriage with the Earl of Bothwell, a reckless and dissolute nobleman, who was generally believed to have been concerned in its perpetration. This led to a confederation of the nobles, who, having taken the queen prisoner, compelled her to abdicate the throne in favor of her infant son James, and confined her in Lochlev'en Castle.* She, however, escaped thence, and raised a small army, which was defeated by the regent, Murray; whereupon Mary fled into England, and threw herself upon the protection of Elizabeth; but instead of the generous hospitality which she had anticipated, she found herself a captive for life (1568).

57. Mary had given great offence to Elizabeth, when in France, by assuming the title of Queen of England, on the ground that the marriage of Henry VIII. with Anne

* *Lochleven*, a small lake in the eastern part of Scotland, about twenty miles north of Edinburgh. It contains several islands, on one of which the remains of the castle still exist. The lake must be carefully distinguished from *Loch Loven*, in the western part of Scotland, near which is the famous valley of *Glencoe*.

56. Why was Mary suspected of the crime? What did it lead to? Escape and flight of Mary?

57. Why was Elizabeth offended at her? What party supported her? What led to her execution? How was it effected?

Boleyn was unlawful, and hence that her daughter, being illegitimate, had no right to the throne. During Mary's life, the Catholic party in England favored these pretensions; and many conspiracies were formed by them to place her upon the throne. In the last of these, the object of which was to take the life of Elizabeth, Mary, notwithstanding her repeated avowals of innocence, was pronounced guilty of being an accomplice, and sentenced to death (1586). The Parliament urged her execution; but the queen appeared very reluctant to give her assent, and the French and Scotch ambassadors interceded earnestly in behalf of the unfortunate Mary. Elizabeth at last signed the death-warrant, and Mary was beheaded at Fotheringay (1587).*

58. Queen Mary was one of the most beautiful and accomplished princesses of her age. Her manners were graceful and winning, and her conversation full of wit and sprightly intelligence. She was a charming singer, and could accompany herself on several instruments; and the poems which she has left attest a genius for that kind of composition. Her imprudence and want of self-control, and, it is to be feared, the absence of strong moral principles, brought upon her those great calamities which have shed a mournful interest upon her name. The signing of her death-warrant is, however, considered by some the greatest blot upon the fame of the virgin queen.

59. Elizabeth not only contended with Philip of Spain upon the ocean, but sent a force of auxiliary troops to Holland, under the Earl of Leicester, a nobleman for whom she appears to have entertained a singular esteem and affection. He was, however, quite unsuccessful, possessing neither the courage nor capacity requisite for the duty assigned him. In an attack upon Zutphen,* he entirely

* See Note 12, end of the Section.

* Now a noted manufacturing city of Holland, in the province of Guiderland, and about 17 miles from Arnhem, the capital of the province, where Sydney died of the wounds received at Zutphen.

58. Character of Queen Mary? Signing of her death-warrant?

59. Whither was Leicester sent? The queen's regard for him? His conduct? Battle of Zutphen? Death of Sidney? Of Leicester? By whom was he succeeded? Character of Essex?

failed, and the gallant and accomplished Sir Philip Sydney was mortally wounded in the battle (1568). Leicester, whose death occurred soon afterward (1588), was succeeded in the queen's affections by his stepson, Robert, Earl of Essex, a young man of handsome exterior and considerable merit, but of a daring and reckless disposition.

60. During the religious wars in France, Elizabeth gave all the aid in her power to the cause of the Protestants; and when Henry IV. ascended the throne (1589), she sent him money, and a force under Essex, to assist him in subduing his enemies. She was, however, much displeased at his abjuring the Protestant religion, and wrote him a letter reproaching him in angry terms for his apostasy; but from interested motives she still continued to assist him with supplies of men and money.

61. An insurrection having broken out in Ireland, Essex was sent with a large army to subdue it; but having failed disgracefully in this expedition, and returned to England without the consent of the queen, he was arrested by her orders, and deprived by the council of all his public offices. He, however, expected a free pardon from the queen, but not receiving it, attempted to raise an insurrection against her government. In this mad scheme he met with no success, but, with his accomplices, was seized and thrown into the Tower. Being arraigned for treason, he was found guilty; and the queen, though with great reluctance, having signed his death-warrant, he was beheaded (1601).

62. Elizabeth survived this event but a short time. The fate of this young nobleman, for whom she appears to have had a very deep affection, oppressed her mind with

60. What aid did Elizabeth give to the Protestants? Why was she displeased with Henry IV.?

61. Why was Essex sent to Ireland? His conduct there? How punished by the queen? His subsequent conduct? His execution?

62. How was Elizabeth affected by it? Her behavior? Her last words? Her death?

a settled melancholy.* For ten days previous to her death, she lay upon the floor, supported by cushions, and gave way to her feelings of distress by sighs and groans. She seldom spoke, and persistently refused nourishment. Being solicited to nominate a successor, she replied that she would have a king to succeed her, referring to James of Scotland. In reply to the Archbishop of Canterbury, who advised her to fix her thoughts upon God, she said that her mind did not in the least wander from Him. She soon after fell into a lethargy, and without a struggle expired (March 24th, 1603), in the forty-fifth year of her reign and the seventieth of her age.

63. Elizabeth was endowed with remarkable talents for government, and commanded the respect not only of her own subjects but of foreign states. She was, however, more mindful of the present prosperity and happiness of her people than of permanently establishing their liberty. She was haughty and despotic, especially in the latter part of her reign; and though in her religious principles and practices she appears to have inclined toward Catholicism, she persecuted Catholics and Puritans with equal severity. Her private character was somewhat marked by insincerity and cruelty, and was too much wanting in the softer virtues of her sex to be highly commendable; while her personal vanity and petty jealousy of female competitors has subjected her to considerable ridicule and contempt.

64. During this illustrious reign, flourished the poet Spenser, who wrote the "Faerie Queene;" the immortal poet and dramatist, Shakspeare, whose works are the especial glory of English literature; and Lord Bacon,

* It is said that the Countess of Nottingham, who died about this time, had confessed that Essex had committed to her care a ring to be delivered to the queen, and that from enmity to him she had withheld it. This ring had been given to Essex by the queen with the promise that whenever he should send it to her, it should not fail to remind her of their friendship, and awaken her tender regard for him. The queen, it is said, shook the dying Countess, exclaiming, "God may forgive you, but I never can."

63. Character of Elizabeth?

64. What distinguished writers flourished during this reign? How did Bacon disgrace himself? What was Sydney's most celebrated work?

who commenced his splendid career as a philosopher, though he disgraced himself by his virulence in the prosecution of the unfortunate Essex, from whom he had received many favors and benefits. Sir Philip Sydney was also a prominent character in the literary world, being the author of a sort of pastoral romance styled "Arcadia," very much admired at that time. Ben Jonson, the dramatist and poet, was also one of the noted characters of Elizabeth's reign.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE TUDORS.

65. The proceedings of Parliament during this period show that the principles of civil and political freedom made but little progress. The Tudors were in general very vigorous princes, and ruled with a high hand. In all things, except in the voting of supplies of money to the sovereign, the parliaments showed a remarkable spirit of submission to his will; and many practices were acquiesced in which violated the most sacred of the subjects' liberties. Of this character were the proceedings in the *Court of Star Chamber*, established or revived in the reign of Henry VII., and the *Court of High Commission*, instituted by Queen Elizabeth. Both were instruments of the most flagrant oppression, one for punishing political offences, the other to compel religious conformity.

66. The great change which, during this period, occurred in religious matters, had for a time the effect to increase the influence of the monarch. Unlimited supremacy was conferred by Parliament; and during the reign of Elizabeth, the utterance of seditious words against the queen was made a capital offence. A Puritan who had written a book against the government of bishops was,

65. Progress of civil and political freedom? Parliament under the Tudors? Court of Star Chamber? Of High Commission?

66. Effect of the Reformation? Absolute power of the sovereign? Arbitrary and severe punishments inflicted? Difficulty in obtaining justice?

during the same reign, condemned to death; and another was executed on the charge of denying the "absolute power of the queen." No justice could be obtained by any one in opposition to the will of the court or its officers. If a poor man sued a nobleman or member of the privy council for his just debt, he was liable to be thrust into prison, from which he could obtain release only by the relinquishment of a large part of his property.

67. The revenue of Queen Elizabeth has been estimated at half a million sterling. She caused the customs to be more carefully collected; and in 1590 they amounted to fifty thousand pounds a year, having been raised to that sum from fourteen thousand. The supplies obtained from Parliament during her whole reign are said to have only amounted to three millions, so that she must have exercised very great economy to carry on such vast undertakings with so slender a revenue. Loans had been formerly very often obtained from the Dutch, particularly from the city of Antwerp, the per cent. paid being as high as ten or twelve; but Elizabeth established so good a credit in her capital that the merchants of that city granted her loans, and rendered it unnecessary to have recourse to foreigners.

68. *Commerce and Navigation* made immense progress during the sixteenth century. The voyage of Columbus had given a vast impulse to maritime adventure, which was still further stimulated by the rich traffic to which it gave rise. Magellan's discovery of a southwest passage to the East, led to many attempts during this period to discover one in the northwest. Martin Frobisher made three fruitless voyages with this object; and Davis, not discouraged by his failure, made another attempt, in which he discovered the strait that bears his name. The discovery of a passage to Archangel, which was made during the

67. Revenue of Queen Elizabeth? The customs? Supplies from Parliament? Loans?

68. Commerce and navigation? How stimulated? Frobisher and Davis Russian trade?

reign of Edward VI., brought England into close communication with Russia; but active commerce with that country did not begin until 1569. Elizabeth obtained from the Czar a patent by which the English were to have the whole trade of the empire.

69. Encouraged by privileges so extensive, the English ventured further into that extensive region than any Europeans had previously done. They transported their goods a long distance up the Dwina in boats made of the trunks of trees, and then conveying their commodities overland to the Volga, carried them down that river to Astrachan, whence they shipped them across the Caspian Sea, and distributed them through Persia and other eastern countries. Trade was also for the first time carried on with Turkey (1583). These successes were the occasion of great jealousy on the part of the Hanse Towns, who obtained an edict from the German emperor prohibiting the English from carrying on trade in any part of the empire. Elizabeth, in retaliation, seized and confiscated sixty of their ships which had been seized in the river Tagus with contraband goods of the Spaniards.

70. The *naval power* of England commenced in the reign of Henry VII.; but ship-building was evidently not active, since his successor was obliged to hire vessels from Hamburg, Lubec, Genoa, Venice, and other great commercial towns. Under the vigorous sway of the Virgin Queen, a better state of things was introduced; and in 1582, the number of seamen in England was registered at over fourteen thousand; and the number of vessels amounted to above twelve hundred. The navy, at her death, was considered large; but the whole number of guns was less than eight hundred. The military force of the nation at the time of the threatened attack by the

69. Eastern trade,—how carried on? Turkish trade? The Hanse Towns?

70. Naval power of England? Ship-building? Number of English seamen and vessels? English navy? Military force?

Spanish Armada was set down at about 200,000 men able to bear arms.

71. *Manufacturing industry*, at the commencement of Elizabeth's reign, had made but little progress, foreign wares of all kinds enjoying the preference over those made at home. The persecutions in France and the Netherlands, however, drove a large number of skilled artisans into England, who laid the foundation of the manufacturing prosperity afterward attained. It is said that Queen Elizabeth was presented, in the third year of her reign, with a pair of silk stockings, with which she was so much pleased that she never wore cloth hose afterward. The cloth manufacture was so extensive, that as many as 200,000 pieces were said to be exported annually from England. The making of pins commenced during Elizabeth's reign. Before that time the ladies used to fasten their dresses with clasps, small skewers of gold, silver, or brass, or hooks and eyes.

72. *Agriculture* was carried on with more success, although vast tracts of land were still devoted to the pasturage of sheep. The introduction of clover, hops, and various vegetables, together with apricots, currants, gooseberries, cherries, and other fruits, changed somewhat the character of *horticulture*. Pleasure gardens were laid out with more taste, and were ornamented with terraces, grottoes, statuary, fountains, etc. The condition of the peasantry was considerably improved. Their wattled huts gave place by degrees to comfortable houses, built of stone or brick; and glass windows came into general use. Wheaten bread was eaten more generally, although rye and barley constituted the principal food of the poorer classes. Potatoes were introduced from South America by Raleigh, who also brought tobacco from the West Indies, and set the example of using it in England.

71. Manufactures? Cloth manufacture? Pins?

72. Agriculture? Horticulture? Pleasure gardens? Condition of the peasantry? Wheaten bread? Potatoes? Tobacco?

73. The nobility still supported, to some extent, their ancient magnificence in hospitality, and in the number of their servants and retainers. The Earl of Leicester gave the queen an entertainment at his famous castle at Kenilworth, in which the most astonishing profusion was displayed. Among other particulars, it is said that as many as three hundred and sixty-five hogsheads of beer were consumed at it. Lord Burleigh is said to have kept a hundred servants; and his silver plate, it is remarked by a writer of the period, "amounted to only fourteen or fifteen thousand pounds in weight." Great luxury in apparel was also indulged in, the queen taking the lead; who, though she issued a proclamation to restrain this species of extravagance, at her death left a wardrobe of 3,000 dresses.

74. The revival of learning, particularly the study of the classics, constituted a remarkable feature of this period. Erasmus, a native of Holland, was professor of Greek in the university of Oxford, and did much toward the attainment of this result. Henry VIII., Mary, Elizabeth, and Lady Jane Grey were all distinguished for their classical learning.* Roger Ascham has already been referred to as a distinguished teacher of Latin and Greek. Middle English now gave place to the New or Modern English, which, with slight modifications, continues to be the language used. This was the language of Shakspeare and

* As likewise was Mary, Queen of Scots, who had acquired a facility in the use of several languages. The Latin prayer which she composed a short time before her melancholy and tragic end, has been much admired. Although in the mediæval style, the language is expressive and elegant:—

O Domine Deus, speravi in te!
O Care mi Jesu, nunc libera me!
In dura catenâ, in misera ponâ desidero te!
Languendo, gemendo, et genuflectendo,
Adoro, imploro, ut liberes me!

It has been thus rendered into English, following as closely the Latin as the English idiom permits

My hopes, O Lord, have been in thee!
O Jesus!—Saviour! set me free!
In anguish and pain—in this iron chain—I call on thee!
With many a groan, and bitter moan—and kneeling on this prison stone,
I adore thee—implore thee,—to set me free!

73. Magnificence and hospitality of the nobles? Leicester's entertainment of the queen? Lord Burleigh? Apparel?

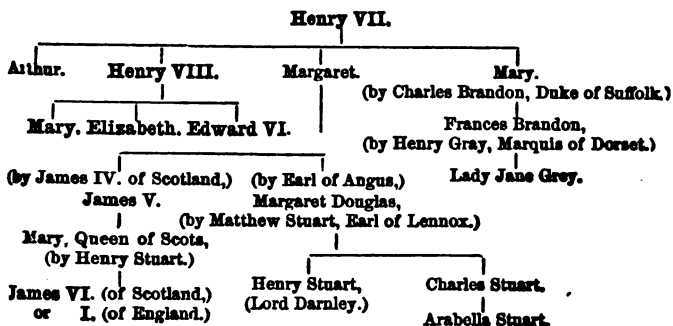
74. Revival of learning? Erasmus? Distinguished classical scholars? Ascham? Language of the period? The drama?

Bacon. In the first part of this period, the drama consisted of short plays called "Interludes," of which the most successful writer was John Heywood, who lived at the court of Henry VIII.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

- 1485. **Henry VII.** Reigned 24 years.
- 1493. Perkin Warbeck personates the Duke of York.
- 1499. Perkin Warbeck and the Earl of Warwick executed.
- 1509. **Henry VIII.** Reigned 38 years.
- 1513. Battle of Flodden Field, and Battle of the Spurs.
- 1520. Interview between Henry VIII. and Francis I.
- 1530. Death of Cardinal Wolsey.
- 1533. Marriage of Henry VIII. with Anne Boleyn.
- 1534. Papal power abolished in England.
- 1535. Execution of Bishop Fisher and Sir Thomas More.
- 1537. Birth of Edward VI. and death of Jane Seymour.
- 1542. Execution of Catharine Howard. Birth of Mary, Queen of Scots.
- 1547. Execution of the Earl of Surrey. Death of Henry VIII.
- 1547. **Edward VI.** Reigned 6 years.
- 1549. Lord Seymour beheaded. Somerset, the Protector, deposed
- 1552. Somerset beheaded.
- 1553. **Mary.** Reigned 5 years.
- " Execution of the Duke of Northumberland.
- 1554. Wyatt's rebellion. Execution of Lady Jane Grey.
- 1555. Burning of Hooper, Ridley, and Latimer.
- 1556. Burning of Archbishop Cranmer.
- 1558. Calais taken by the French. Death of Queen Mary.
- 1558. **Elizabeth.** Reigned 44 years.
- 1561. Return of Queen Mary to Scotland
- 1568. Mary's flight into England.
- 1586. Battle of Zutphen. Death of Sir Philip Sydney.
- 1587. Mary Queen of Scots executed.
- 1588. Defeat of the Spanish Armada.
- 1601. Conspiracy and execution of Earl of Essex.
- 1603. Death of Elizabeth.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE TUDOR FAMILY



REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Who was Henry VII., and how did he gain the crown?.....	119-120-123
2. What were the first acts of his reign?.....	126
3. Give an account of the Simnel imposition.....	126-127
4. Give an account of Warbeck.....	118-127-128
5. Name in order the principal events in the reign of Henry VII.....	126—129-133
6. What was the character of Henry VIII.....	126-129
7. State all you can of Catharine of Aragon, Henry's first wife.....	130—135
8. Of Anne Boleyn, Henry's second wife.....	133—136
9. Of Jane Seymour, Henry's third wife.....	136
10. Of Anne of Cleves, Henry's fourth wife.....	137
11. Of Catharine Howard, Henry's fifth wife.....	137
12. Of Catharine Parr, Henry's sixth wife.....	138
13. Give an account of Henry's contest with Louis XII. of France.....	130
14. Of his contest with King James of Scotland.....	131
15. Give an account of Cardinal Wolsey.....	131—134
16. Give an account of the interview between Henry and Francis.....	131-132
17. Of Henry's separation from the Church of Rome.....	133-134-135
18. Name, in order, the principal events of his reign.....	130—139-158
19. State all you can of Edward VI.....	139-140-141
20. Of Lady Jane Grey and her husband.....	141-142-143
21. Who was Mary, and what difficulty did she have to get the throne?.....	139-141-142
22. Give in order the principal events of her reign.....	142-143-144-153
23. What can you state of her character and accomplishments?.....	145
24. Who was Elizabeth, and when did she become queen?.....	145
25. How did she begin her reign, and what was its first important event?.....	145
26. State what you can of the three religious parties then in England.....	146-147
27. What important voyages were made during Elizabeth's reign?.....	149
28. What troubles did Elizabeth have with Philip II. of Spain?.....	147-148
29. Give the story of Mary, Queen of Scots.....	148-149-150
30. Give an account of Robert, Earl of Essex.....	151, note, p. 152
31. Give an account of the death of Elizabeth.....	152
32. Of her talents, disposition, and character.....	152-157
33. What men of literary note flourished during her reign?.....	152-153
34. Name, in order, the principal events in her reign.....	145—151-15;

NOTES.

1. Henry VII. and Henry VIII. Compared (p. 130, ¶ 10).—"There was little difference in the dispositions of the two tyrants, as far as an unfeeling nature and overbearing temper ministered to their absolute sway. But the son's more careless expenditure of money, more frank, indiscreet habits, and more affable manner, partaking, in outward show, of generosity, honesty, and even kindness, gave him a popularity in his own times, especially during the first half of his reign, which the father never possessed, laboring as he did under the two greatest drawbacks to popular favor that a prince can have, avarice and reserve; while the cruelty of the son's whole conduct has made him justly more abhorred by after ages, when the services rendered by his lusts, his rapacity, and his caprice, to the cause of the Reformation can no longer blind us, as they did his contemporaries, to the enormities of his execrable character."—*Brougham*.

2. Field of the Cloth of Gold (p. 132, ¶ 15).—"The joyous meeting of the two great monarchs of England and France, Henry VIII. and Francis I., in the renowned valley of Ardres, was an event which made all Europe ring with the history of its wonders. Henry, with his queen and whole court, passed the sea from Dover to Calais, and thence proceeded to Guisnes, a small town near the frontiers. Francis, attended in like manner, came to Ardres, a few miles distant, and the two monarchs met for the first time, on horseback, in the fields, at a place situated between these two towns, but still within the English pale; for Francis agreed to pay this compliment to Henry, in consideration of that prince's passing the sea, that he might be present at the interview. Wolsey, to whom both kings had entrusted the regulation of the ceremonial, contrived this circumstance in order to do honor to his master. The nobility both of France and England here displayed their magnificence with such emulation as procured to the place of interview the name of the *Field of the Cloth of Gold*."—*Hume*.

"After the tournament the French and English wrestlers made their appearance, and wrestled in presence of the kings and the ladies. * * * After this, the kings of France and England retired to a tent, where they drank together, and the King of England, seizing the King of France by the collar, said, '*My brother, I must wrestle with you*;' and endeavored once or twice to trip up his heels; but the King of France, who is a dexterous wrestler, twisted him round, and threw him on the earth with prodigious violence. The King of England wanted to renew the combat, but was prevented."—*Mémoires de Fleuranges*.

3. Why the Pope did not at first proceed against Luther (p. 132, ¶ 16).—"A direct or violent attack upon the authority of the church would at once have drawn upon Luther the whole might of its vengeance; but as this was far from his thought, as he continued long to profess great respect for the Pope, and made repeated offers of submission to his decisions, there seemed to be no reason for apprehending that he would prove the author of any desperate revolt; and he was suffered to proceed, step by step, in undermining the constitution of the church, until the remedy applied at last came too late to produce any effect."—*Robertson's Charles V.*

4. Marriage of Anne Boleyn (p. 135, ¶ 22).—"Henry was married to Anne Boleyn on the 25th of January, 1533, at the western end of the palace at Whitehall. She is described by a contemporary chronicler as 'a fair young creature, so exqui-

sitely moulded in form and feature, and gifted with wit so sparkling and pleasant, that she enlaved alike the eyes and understanding of all whom she encountered.' And such is the interest with which her memory is still invested, that numbers daily visit her chamber at Hever Castle (near Edenbridge in Kent), and eagerly listen to the romantic traditions which point out the hill where Henry used to sound his bugle when he came to visit her in their happy days of courtship, from his palace at Eltham; and the exact spot in the garden where, at the turn of a walk, she suddenly came upon the king, who was so struck with her wondrous beauty, which the confusion wrought by so unexpected a meeting greatly augmented, that from that moment he was inspired with the fatal passion which raised its unfortunate object to the throne, but to translate her to the block. The axe with which the 'little neck' of the cruelly sacrificed queen was severed is still preserved in the Tower, and shares with her grave in the chapel the melancholy interest which for more than three hundred years has been associated with her name.

"It is said that during the night which followed her execution, her body was secretly removed from its grave before the altar in Tower chapel, and buried in the church of Salle, in Norfolk, where a black marble slab is shown as the covering of her remains."—*Selby—Events to be Remembered.*

5. **The English Reformation** (p. 135, ¶ 28).—"As a matter of fact, the Reformation was, during the reign of Henry, much less of a religious than a political revolution. The only points Henry was particular about were the matters of *supremacy* and *church property*. For a long period, the idea of adopting the new form of faith in all its doctrinal sequence seemed quite foreign to his mind. The doctrine, first, that he, Henry, was supreme king, spiritual as well as temporal, within his own realms; the doctrine, secondly, that he could, in virtue of such spiritual supremacy, give full rein to his beastly lusts, and call concubinage marriage; and, lastly, that whatever property the church possessed, bequeathed for pious uses, he might rob and keep for himself, or divide as bribes between his abetting nobles, legislators, and statesmen—these were the 'reforms,' so-called, upon which the king set most value."—*Sullivan's Story of Ireland.*

6. **Coronation and Execution of Anne Boleyn** (p. 136, ¶ 25).—"On the 19th of May, 1534, the queen, Anne Boleyn, was brought in marvelous splendor of state and rejoicing, by the mayor and aldermen, in a gilded barge, adorned with banners and devices, surrounded with wondrous pageants of the Bachelor's and City Companies, in their boats and barges of ceremony, from Greenwich, along the Thames, through a fleet of ships and wherries, which, together with banks on either side, were crowded with spectators, all in their holiday clothes, anxious to behold and do honor to the young and beautiful new object of the monarch's adoration, to the Tower of London, where she was welcomed by the king, who kissed her, and led her with great show of joy and affection, amid noises of sweet music and peals of great guns, into the royal apartments, there to remain until the happy morning of the next day, which was appointed for her solemn coronation. * * * On the 1st of May, 1536, the traitor's gate opened to receive a royal prisoner; and eighteen days afterwards, on the 19th of May, the headless body of the queen, who but two years before had been the occasion of so much rejoicing and happiness, was hastily thrown into a chest made to contain arrows, and buried without form or ceremony in the Tower chapel."—*Kings of England.*

7. **Character of Henry VIII.** (p. 138, ¶ 31).—"Henry was in his eighteenth year when he came to the throne, and was conspicuous for his handsome person and manly accomplishments. Few could equal and none excelled him in the use

of arms, sports of the field, wrestling, and every other athletic exercise, while his accomplishments in music and languages, added to his joyous affability, invested him with such powers of fascination that all classes hailed his accession with tumultuous delight, and presaged a long and happy reign. Thirty-six years and nine months after the auspicious day which saw the young idol of the people's heart walking 'mid deafening clamors of 'Long live Henry!' 'Bless our noble king!' 'Gallant Harry!' to his coronation at Westminster, the royal vault at Windsor received the bloated body of the most tyrannical, heartless, and cruel monarch that ever made his country weep, and at whose death every one rejoiced."—*Kings of England*.

8. **Character of Edward VI.** (p. 141, ¶ 38).—"Edward VI., only son of Henry VIII. by his third wife, Jane Seymour, was nine years old when he ascended the throne by the death of the king his father. His majority was fixed at the eighteenth year of his age by the late king's will, but he died before he came to it, after a short reign of six years, five months, and eight days. There was reason to hope extraordinary things from this young prince, had it pleased God to bless him with a longer life. He had an excellent memory, a wonderful solidity of mind, and withal he was laborious, sparing no pains to qualify himself for the well-governing of his kingdom. At eight years of age, he wrote Latin letters to his father. French was as familiar to him as English; he learnt, also, Greek, Spanish, and Italian. After that he applied himself to liberal sciences, wherein he made an astonishing progress, so much so that in his fifteenth year he was considered the wonder of his time."—*Rapin's History of England*.

"The encomiums bestowed on Edward VI. are an example of the folly of excessive praise. What he was in reality was a diligent, docile, gentle, sprightly boy, whose proficiency in every branch of study was remarkable, and who showed a more than ordinary promise of capacity. But sycophants and lovers of the marvellous have almost drowned in a flood of adulation these agreeable and amiable qualities. * * * His position in English history between a tyrant and a bigot adds somewhat to the grace of his innocent and attractive character."—*Mackintosh's History of England*.

9. **Lady Jane Grey** (p. 142, ¶ 40).—"Such was the end of that pattern of female excellence, Lady Jane Grey, who fell a victim to the rashness and ambition of her misguided parents. Under the tuition of Aylmer, who was afterwards Bishop of London, she made great progress in learning, and though but seventeen years of age when she suffered, she had evinced, by the variety and extent of her acquirements, a most extraordinary capacity and mind, with personal claims which made her an object of admiration; she was endued with exemplary piety, and possessed a sweetness of disposition, and a nobleness of heart, that gained her universal love; in short, by her virtuous qualities she was no less distinguished than by her illustrious birth; and though she was induced to accept the crown, she took it rather as a burthen than a favor, and resigned it with as great indifference as she would have laid down a garland when its beauties had faded and its scent had gone."—*Bayley's History of the Tower*.

10. **Death of Queen Mary** (p. 145, ¶ 46).—"Mary had long been in a declining state, and having made use of an improper regimen, her malady daily augmented. Every reflection now tormented her. The consciousness of being hated by her subjects, the prospect of Elizabeth's succession, apprehensions of the danger to which the Catholic religion stood exposed, dejection for the loss of Calais, concern for the ill state of her affairs, and above all anxiety for the absence of her

husband, who she knew intended soon to depart for Spain, and to settle there during the remainder of his life; all these melancholy reflections preyed upon her mind, and threw her into a lingering fever, of which she died, in her forty-second year. She was buried in Westminster Abbey, in Henry VII.'s chapel. Her sister, Queen Elizabeth, was afterwards buried in the same vault."—*Hume's History of England*.

11. Queen Elizabeth and Raleigh's Cloak (p. 147, ¶ 51).—"The night had been rainy, and just where the young gentleman (Raleigh) stood, a small quantity of mud interrupted the queen's passage. As she hesitated to pass on, the gallant, throwing his cloak from his shoulders, laid it on the miry spot, so as to insure her stepping over it dry shod. Elizabeth looked at the young man, who accompanied this act of devoted courtesy with a profound reverence and a blush that overspread his whole countenance. The queen was confused, and blushed in return, nodded her head, hastily passed on, and embarked in her barge without saying a word."—*Sir Walter Scott*.

12. Execution of Mary Queen of Scots (p. 150, ¶ 57).—"After her sentence had been read to her, she made a short speech, in which she repeated the words so frequently in her mouth, 'I am queen born, not subject to the laws,' and declared that she had never sought the life of her cousin Elizabeth. She then began to recite in Latin the psalm of penitence and mercy, a pious exercise rudely interrupted by the Dean of Peterborough and the Earl of Kent. Her prayer ended, she rose. The terrible moment had arrived, and the executioner approached to assist her in removing a portion of her dress; she motioned him away, saying, with a smile, that she had never such *valets de chambre*. She then called Jean Kennedy and Elizabeth Curll, who had remained all the time on their knees at the foot of the scaffold, and she began to undress herself with their assistance, remarking that she was not accustomed to do so before so many people. The afflicted girls performed this last sad office in tears. To prevent the utterance of their last grief, she placed her fingers on their lips, and reminded them that she had promised in their name that they would show more firmness. 'Instead of weeping, rejoice,' she said; 'I am very happy to leave this world, and in so good a cause.' She then laid down her cloak, and took off her veil, retaining only a petticoat of red taffety, flowered with velvet. Then, seating herself on the chair, she gave her blessing to her weeping servants. The executioner having asked her pardon on his knees, she told him that she pardoned everybody. She embraced Elizabeth Curll and Jean Kennedy, and gave them her blessing, making the sign of the cross over them; and after Jean Kennedy had bandaged her eyes, she desired them to withdraw, which they did, weeping. At the same time she knelt down with great courage, and, still holding the crucifix in her hands, stretched out her neck to the executioner. She then said aloud, and with the most ardent feeling of confidence, 'My God, I have hoped in you; I commit myself to your hands.' She imagined that she would have been struck in the mode usual in France, in an upright posture, and with the sword. The two masters, seeing her mistake, informed her of it, and assisted her to lay her head on the block, which she did without ceasing to pray. There was a universal feeling of compassion at the sight of this lamentable misfortune, this heroic courage, this admirable sweetness. The executioner himself was moved, and aimed with an unsteady hand: the axe, instead of falling on the neck, struck the back of the head, and wounded her; yet she made no movement, nor uttered a complaint. It was only on repeating the blow that the executioner struck off her head, which he held up, saying, 'God save Queen Elizabeth.' 'Thus,' added Dr. Fletcher, 'may all her enemies perish.'"—*Mignet's History of Mary Queen of Scots*.

SECTION II.

THE STUART FAMILY.

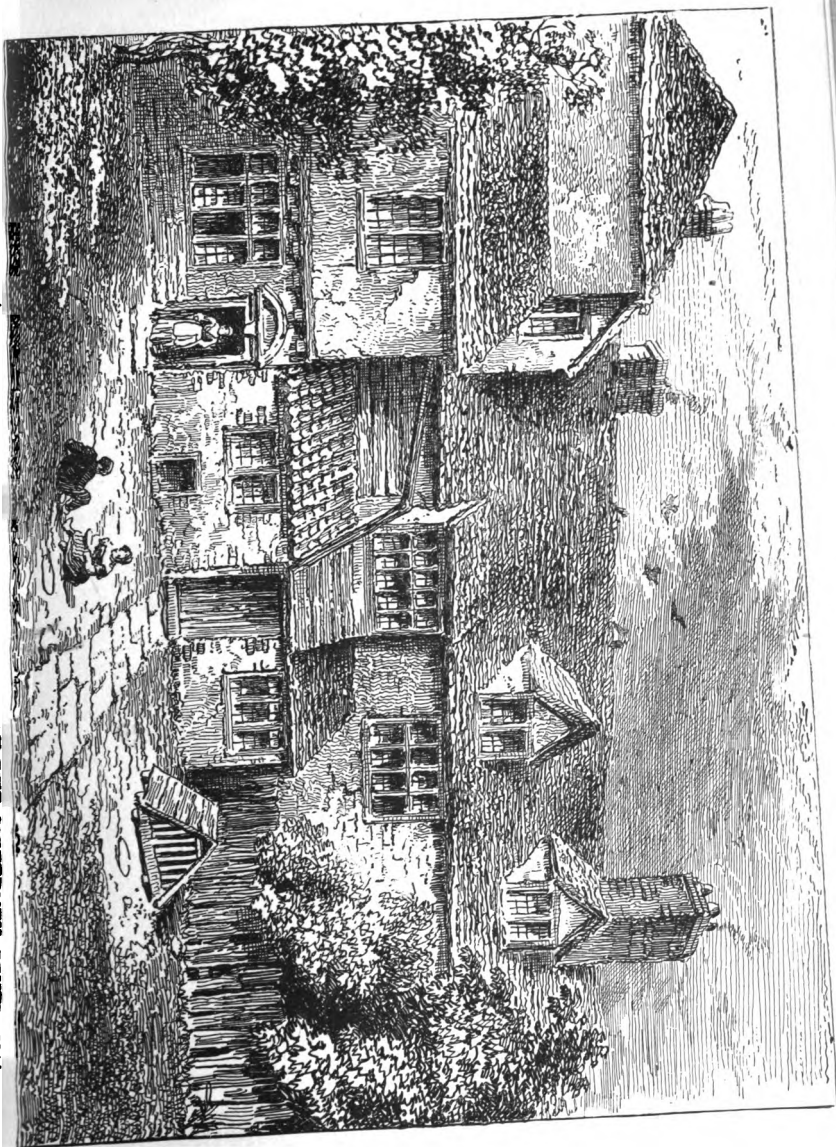
Extending from the Accession of James I. (1603) to that of George I. (1714).

1603 1. **James I.**—The Scottish king succeeded without any opposition to the throne left vacant by the **1625** death of Elizabeth. He was thirty-six years of age, had received a good education under the celebrated George Buchanan, but was very vain of his learning, and took every opportunity to make a display of it. With little judgment and good sense, and totally deficient in refinement of manners, he was constantly an object of ridicule or contempt. He had also unfortunately imbibed the notion that a king was divinely vested with absolute power; and hence his conduct was often tyrannical in the extreme, being utterly at variance with those principles of liberty which the English people had long viewed as their most valuable birthright.

2. Scarcely had James commenced to reign, when a plot was formed to depose him, and place his cousin, Arabella Stuart, on the throne. The leaders of the conspiracy—among whom were Lord Cobham, Lord Grey (a Puritan), and others—were tried and convicted, and some were executed. Sir Walter Raleigh was also charged with being concerned in the plot; and the jury, influenced by the bitter invectives of Sir Edward Coke, the attorney-general, found him guilty, though it was generally admitted that

1. What was the age of James I. when he ascended the throne? His character! What made him tyrannical?

2. What plot was formed? Who were its leaders? Who was also implicated? How was he convicted? Was he punished? Who were pardoned?



the proof was insufficient to convict him. He was afterward reprieved by the king, though still kept a prisoner. and Cobham and Grey were pardoned after they had laid their heads upon the block (1603).

3. Soon after this, a plot was arranged by the Catholic party, disappointed in not receiving the religious privileges which they had expected on the accession of James. The object of it was to overturn the government by the destruction of the king and both houses of parliament. For this purpose a vault beneath the House of Lords was hired, and thirty-six barrels of gunpowder were stored therein, which, on the opening of Parliament, were to be fired by one Guy Fawkes, an officer in the Spanish service, brought to England to perpetrate this act. This conspiracy, styled the "Gunpowder Plot," was discovered just on the eve of its execution; and Guy Fawkes, with some of his fellow-conspirators, was executed (1605).

4. During the previous reign, unsuccessful attempts had been made by Raleigh to plant a colony in the region to which the queen had given the name of Virginia. King James, in the first part of his reign, granted charters to two companies—the London, or South Virginia Company, and the Plymouth, or North Virginia Company. Under the former of these, the first permanent settlement was made at Jamestown (1607); and under its first governor, Lord Delaware, it attained a condition of considerable prosperity. By an arbitrary act of the king, the company was afterward dissolved, and Virginia made a royal province (1624). The East India Company, established by Queen Elizabeth (1600), was rechartered by James for an unlimited period (1609); and a short time afterward the first English factory was established at Surat (1612).

3. What other plot was formed? What means were adopted to carry it out? How was it discovered?

4. What attempts at colonization were made? What companies were organized? What settlement was effected? Its condition under Delaware? How did Virginia become a royal province? What other important events occurred?

5. During this period Sir Walter Raleigh, who had originated these enterprises, was enduring the miseries of a hopeless imprisonment, the long and tedious hours of which he had relieved by the composition of his great work, the "History of the World." Being released in order that he might point out a gold-mine which he asserted to exist in Guiana (*ghe-ah'nah*), and having failed in the expedition, he was, on his return, beheaded, in pursuance of the sentence previously pronounced against him (1618). This act reflects a lasting disgrace upon James, who sacrificed this illustrious man to appease the anger of Spain, incensed by the attack which Raleigh had made upon some of the Spanish settlements in South America. [See Note 1.]

6. One of the worst characteristics of this monarch was his proneness to attach himself to unworthy favorites, the first of whom was Robert Carr, a young Scotchman, on whom James for several years lavished the most profuse favors, finally bestowing upon him the title of the Earl of Somerset (1612). His fall occurred a short time afterward; for being concerned, with his wife, previously Countess of Essex, in the murder of Sir Thomas Overbury in the Tower, the guilty pair were tried and convicted, but were pardoned by the king, and afterward lived in total obscurity. James had previously transferred his favors to a young man named George Villiers (*vil'yerz*), of good family, engaging manners, and fine personal appearance (1615). The infatuation of the monarch in regard to this new minion was unbounded; and in the course of a few years he was created Viscount Villiers, subsequently earl and marquis, and finally Duke of Buckingham. He soon gained an infamous notoriety by his arrogance and profligacy.

5. What led to the execution of Sir Walter Raleigh? Why does it reflect disgrace upon James?

6. What is said of Robert Carr? What led to his fall? What is said of George Villiers?

7. James, although of a pusillanimous disposition, was very persistent in upholding the royal prerogative. His arbitrary acts and principles, however, met with decided opposition from the Parliament of 1621, who declared their privileges to be the ancient and undoubted birthright of the English people; which bold declaration so incensed the king, that he sent for the journals of the Commons, and tore the record out with his own hands. The same parliament impeached the celebrated Lord Bacon, Viscount St. Albans and Chancellor. His prodigality and fondness for ostentation and luxury had plunged him into great expenses, to defray which he had taken bribes from suitors in his court. He confessed his guilt, and was sentenced to pay a fine of £40,000, to dismissal from all his offices, and imprisonment in the Tower. In consideration of his many merits, the king released him from prison, and remitted the fine. He survived his disgrace five years, during which he prosecuted those studies in philosophy and science from which he obtained so splendid and enduring a fame.

8. James, who by his reckless extravagance was always in want of money, was anxious to bring about a marriage between his son Charles and the Infanta of Spain, expecting that a large dowry would be paid with her. To this the nation was much opposed, on account of the religion of the princess; but it was favored by the Duke of Buckingham. The latter conceived the romantic project of a journey to Spain by Prince Charles and himself in disguise, so that the former might pay his addresses in person to the princess. To this the king reluctantly consented, fearing for the safety of the Prince of Wales, whom he used to call "Baby Charles." On their way they visited

7. How was James opposed by Parliament? What was done by the king? Who was impeached? What is said of Lord Bacon?

8. What was the king anxious to do? Why? What project was undertaken? What visit was made, and who was seen by Charles?

the French court, where Charles first saw the French princess Henrietta Maria, whom he subsequently married.

9. The King of Spain treated his visitors with great respect; but the levity, insolence, and extravagant behavior of Buckingham disgusted everybody at the Spanish court, so that, finding himself an object of great dislike, he determined to prevent the match, and, on returning to England, it was publicly renounced, greatly to the joy of the people. Buckingham, to clear himself from censure, made a false statement to Parliament, accusing the Spanish court of insincerity; and to this the young prince, equally untruthful, gave his assent.

10. A treaty was soon afterward made with France, one of the terms of which was the marriage of Charles to Henrietta Maria. Before it was completed, however, the king was suddenly seized with illness, and expired, in the fifty-ninth year of his age, after a reign of twenty-two years (1625). One of the most important events of this period was a new translation of the Bible. It was executed under the patronage of the king, and by a number of learned men designated by him. It was published in 1611; and having superseded other versions, continues to be the *English Bible* in general use among Protestants. [See Note 2.]

11. The Puritans—so called from their strict principles and austerity of life—greatly increased in numbers and influence during this reign. Their public preachings were directed against the dissoluteness, levity, and luxury of the times, and particularly inculcated a more serious observance of the Sabbath, which had previously been a day of pleasure and pastime. Some of them, disgusted with the king's high-handed measures, especially against those who refused to conform to the established church, emigrated to

9. What was Buckingham's conduct in Spain? How did he screen himself from censure?

10. What treaty was afterward made? When did the king die? What important event is referred to?

11. What is said of the Puritans? Whither did some of them emigrate?

Holland, and afterward to New England, where they made a settlement at *Plymouth* (1620).

1625 12. **Charles I.**—The second son of James succeeded him, his eldest son Henry* having died some
1649 years previously. Shortly after his accession, Charles completed his marriage with Henrietta Maria, whom he had previously espoused by proxy in France, and who was escorted to England by the Duke of Buckingham. The conduct of Charles toward the Infanta had greatly incensed the Spanish monarch, and war had been declared. To prosecute this war, the king summoned a Parliament, and asked for a vote of supplies. This the Commons, who were determined to assert their privileges, under the leadership of many distinguished men, among whom were Sir Edward Coke, Sir Thomas Wentworth, and Sir John Eliot, refused to grant, unless Charles would relinquish some of the prerogatives which had been exercised by his father, and which he still claimed as his hereditary right. Charles, therefore, dissolved the Parliament, and proceeded to levy money by his own authority.

13. These forced loans, called *tonnage and poundage*† and *ship-money*,‡ gave great offence to the people, whose discontent was still further increased by the conduct of Buckingham, through whose influence a war was undertaken against France, and an expedition sent to Rochelle (*ro-shel'*) to aid the Huguenots, then assailed by Richelieu (*reesh'e-lu*). Buckingham himself assumed the command, but managed the affair so badly that nothing was accomplished; and in a few months he returned to England,

* It was for this young prince that Raleigh composed his "History of the World." He was amiable, intelligent, and well-disposed; and his death was greatly lamented.

† *Tonnage and poundage* were duties on imported merchandise which it had been customary to allow the king to levy since the reign of Edward III. The Parliament of 1625 refused, however, to grant this privilege to the king for a longer period than one year.

‡ *Ship-money* was an arbitrary tax levied on the seaports for the equipment of a fleet. Charles extended it over the whole kingdom.

12. Who succeeded James I.? Whom did Charles marry? What led to a war with Spain? What difficulty with Parliament broke out? Who were prominent leaders among the Commons?

13. What gave offence to the people? What unfortunate expedition took place?

having lost the greater part of his forces, and was universally reprobated for his rashness and folly (1627).

14. In a Parliament called a few months afterward Charles met with more determined opposition, although many of the former members had been made to suffer for their boldness by imprisonment and other oppressive measures of the court. Charles attempted intimidation, but the spirit of liberty was not to be thus crushed. In a bill called the *Petition of Right** the Commons emphatically asserted the privileges which had been conferred upon them by Magna Charta and other ancient statutes; and to this bill the king was forced to give his assent (1628).

15. Soon after this, one cause of popular discontent was removed by the assassination of the Duke of Buckingham at Portsmouth, whither he had gone to superintend the preparations for a second expedition against France. The murderer, one Felton, who had served under the duke as lieutenant, but had failed in his application for promotion, was immediately apprehended, and soon afterward executed. The command of the French expedition was conferred on the Earl of Lindesey; but it reached Rochelle too late to afford any assistance to the Huguenots, who were obliged to surrender the town in sight of the English admiral (1628).

16. Another session of Parliament having taken place (1629), and the members† still proving refractory, the king dissolved it, and determined to rule without a Parliament, continuing the illegal exactions which had already made

* The *Petition of Right* was an emphatic statement of the privileges of the people as conferred by previous enactments. It is regarded as the *second great charter* of English liberty.

† Among these was *Oliver Cromwell*, who, on this his first appearance in Parliament, attracted considerable notice by the plainness of his dress, his clownish manners, and his intense zeal in favor of the Puritans. He was the son of Robert Cromwell, and was born at Huntingdon, April 25th, 1599. At the age of seventeen he was sent to the University of Cambridge, but remained there only a short time. He afterward settled at Huntingdon, and carried on the business of a brewer; but on receiving a handsome legacy he abandoned it.

14. What was done in the next Parliament? What was the *Petition of Right*?

15. How and by whom was Buckingham assassinated? Who received command of the French expedition? What was its result?

16. What resolve did Charles adopt, and why? How did he punish the refractory members? Who died in prison? Effect of this?

him so unpopular. He also, principally by means of the *Star Chamber*,* attempted to punish such of the members of Parliament as had made themselves particularly obnoxious to him. Some of them were fined for what was called their seditious language and behavior, and refusing to pay the fines, were imprisoned. The death of Sir John Eliot in prison greatly increased the popular indignation, all regarding him as a martyr to the cause of English liberty.

17. Charles, however, adopted the policy of choosing some of his ministers from among the popular leaders, one of whom, Sir Thomas Wentworth, was created Earl of Strafford, and soon became the principal minister of the king. All who accepted any of these royal favors were viewed as traitors by the popular party, and pursued with the bitterest hatred, more especially by the Puritan leaders, toward whom Charles, under the influence of his queen, pursued a course of studied hostility. He renewed the edict of his father allowing sports and recreations on Sunday, and ordered the proclamation to be read by the clergy after divine service, punishing all such as refused obedience. This was a cause of great scandal to the austere Puritans, who were very rigid in the observance of the Sabbath, and preached against the popular pastimes—plays, dancing, May-festivals, etc.—common at this time.

18. Under the influence of Archbishop Laud, the liturgy was altered, and the ritual increased by the addition of many of the ceremonial observances of the Church of Rome; and this was also a cause of great displeasure to the

* The Court of *Star Chamber* was of very ancient origin, and derived its name from the chamber of the king's palace at Westminster in which it used to hold its sessions, the ceiling of this apartment being decorated with stars. It had very extensive powers, both civil and criminal, and could adjudge cases without the intervention of a jury. Hence it became a formidable instrument of tyranny. It was abolished by act of Parliament in 1641.

17. What policy was adopted by Charles? Who became Earl of Strafford? Effect of receiving the royal favors? The Puritans? Sunday laws? To whom offensive? Why?

18. What other measures were adopted? What was the effect? What was the conduct of the Scots?

Puritans as well as to the Protestants in general. Many of the former, chiefly of the sect styled *Independents*, to avoid a conformity with the established church, which the laws required, emigrated to New England, and founded Massachusetts; and other colonies in that country. Charles also attempted to impose this liturgy upon the Scottish people; but on the first attempt to read it in Edinburgh, a tumult arose among the people, during which the Bishop had a stool thrown at him, and on leaving the church narrowly escaped from the enraged populace (1637).

19. The king insisting upon obedience, and issuing a proclamation to enforce it, an insurrection ensued; and the famous *Covenant* was formed and signed, according to which the Scottish people bound themselves to unite for their mutual defence, and to resist all religious innovations (1638). With his accustomed weakness and insincerity, Charles first attempted partial concessions; but these proving ineffectual, war ensued, Richelieu, who was then at the head of the French government, fomenting the animosities of the Scots, in revenge for the previous interference of Charles in the affairs of France.

20. The advantages were on the side of the Covenanters, and Charles, to obtain supplies, was obliged to have recourse to that Parliament which he had failed to summon during more than eleven years. The same spirit of opposition being manifested, he dissolved it after a session of three weeks (May, 1640); and having resorted to the same illegal expedients as before to raise money, he marched with a considerable army against the Covenanters. The latter invaded England, and after defeating a detachment of the royal forces at the Tyne River, took possession of Newcastle.

21. This compelled the king to call a new Parliament;

19. What led to the signing of the "Covenant?" What was it? How was war brought on?

20. What led to the calling of the Parliament? The result? Subsequent events?

21. What was next done by the king? What was this Parliament called? Its measures?

-but the elections resulted in favor of the popular party; and on the assembling of this body (Nov. 3d, 1640), memorable as the "Long Parliament," Charles found his authority confronted with the same spirit of sturdy independence and opposition, which he had so often experienced. The first act of the Commons was to impeach the Earl of Strafford, so odious to them on account of his desertion of their cause, and as the ready instrument of the king's most obnoxious measures. Archbishop Laud was also impeached, and both were taken into custody to await their trial.

22. That of Strafford lasted thirteen days; and such were the eloquence and ability which he displayed in his defence, that his enemies, despairing of his conviction by the House of Lords, abandoned the impeachment, and resorted to the expedient of a *Bill of Attainder*.* This they carried through the House of Commons with but few dissenting voices, and the popular excitement was so great that the Peers also were induced to pass it, but by a small vote (May 7th, 1641). The king at first refused to give his assent; but the loud clamors and measures of the populace made him irresolute, and after the Earl had written to him generously requesting that he would not allow his personal regard for him to weigh against the wishes of his subjects, and stating that he was willing to be a sacrifice for the removal of the present troubles, Charles weakly and ungratefully assented to the bill.

23. When informed of the royal assent, Strafford started up, and exclaimed, in the words of Scripture, "Put not

* By a Bill of Attainder, a person is pronounced guilty by act of Parliament, which is passed as other laws with the consent of King, Lords, and Commons. In an impeachment the Commons are only the accusers, and the Peers are the Judges. Such bills were frequently resorted to in the reign of Henry VIII., to convict persons who could not have been proved guilty by the ordinary process of the courts. The following is the entry on the Journals in regard to Strafford's case: "April 19th, 1641. Resolved upon question, that the endeavor of Thomas, Earl of Strafford, to subvert the ancient fundamental laws of the realms of England and Ireland, and to introduce an arbitrary tyrannical government against law, is *high treason*."

22. What is said of the trial of Strafford? What expedient was adopted? What induced Charles to give his assent?

23. What was Strafford's behavior? What is said of his execution? His character? Charles's conduct?

your trust in princes, nor in the sons of men!" In three days he was brought to the block, passing to which he stopped under the window of Laud's prison to receive his blessing. The prelate raised his hand to pronounce it; but grief choked his utterance, and he fell senseless on the floor. Strafford acted on the scaffold with great dignity and composure. His execution took place in the presence of a vast multitude, who subsequently expressed their joy by illuminations and bonfires (May 12th, 1641). Although convicted by a most arbitrary and unjust measure, he was without doubt an enemy to his country's liberty; but Charles, who most cowardly deserted his friend, was afterward convinced of the weakness of his conduct, and deeply repented of it.

24. Meanwhile, Parliament continued its vigorous measures for protection and reform. A bill was passed that it should not be adjourned, prorogued, or dissolved without its own consent; the Star Chamber was abolished, and the jurisdiction of the king's council abridged. These proceedings, together with the success of the Covenanters in Scotland, excited a spirit of opposition in Ireland against the English Parliament; which, through its intense hostility to the Roman Catholic worship, was in that country an object of fear and suspicion. Commissioners were sent to the king to demand religious toleration; and Charles, feeling it to be for his interest to conciliate them, gave them a favorable reception. The Irish, however, rose in insurrection; and the English settlers were massacred by thousands with every circumstance of barbarity. The ancient English planters, called the "English of the Pale," also joined with the natives in this dreadful revolt and massacre.

25. The Commons accused Charles of encouraging this

24. What further measures were adopted by Parliament? Effect of them in Ireland? Conduct of Charles toward the Irish Commissioners? What massacre occurred in Ireland?

25. What course did the Commons pursue? The populace? Who were called "Cavaliers?" "Roundheads?"

rebellion, and, therefore, instead of voting supplies to the king, they levied money, and took arms from the magazines, ostensibly for its suppression, but secretly kept them as a reserve for future opposition to the royal authority. To vindicate their open mistrust of the king, they adopted and published a "Remonstrance" to the people against the various measures of his reign, artfully fanning, in every way, the popular feeling against him, as well as against the established church, the bishops, and others connected with what was styled *prelacy*. Multitudes flocked to Westminster, insulted the lords and bishops, and insolently threatened the king himself. Those who favored the royal cause were styled "Cavaliers;" while these bestowed on those who opposed the king, the appellation of "Round-heads," in derision of their cropped hair. [See Note 3.]

26. The bishops, being prevented from attending Parliament, protested against the illegality of its acts; and on this account they were impeached by the Commons and committed to custody. A few days afterward, the king was betrayed into taking a step which injured him greatly in the opinion of the well-disposed part of his subjects, and promoted the objects of his enemies. This was the impeachment of Lord Kimbolton and five distinguished members of the House of Commons, including Hampden* and Pym,† charging them with conspiring to alienate from him the affections of his subjects, to subvert the rights of the Parliament, to excite the disobedience of the army, and to extort the consent of the majority in Parlia-

* John Hampden had been very prominent in opposing the illegal exactions of the government. In 1627, he was imprisoned for refusing to pay his proportion of the loan levied by the king's sole authority; and in 1636, he resolutely refused to pay any of the ship-money, and was prosecuted and convicted by the government. His opposition to Charles in Parliament, had been very open and decided.

† John Pym was one of the most conspicuous and talented of the Parliamentary leaders. During the latter part of the reign of James I. he became noted for his vigorous opposition to the arbitrary measures of the Court; and in the succeeding reign, until his death in 1643, evinced the same earnest regard for his country's liberty. His fearless spirit, fervid eloquence, and thorough knowledge of Parliamentary business gave him so great an influence, that he received from his party the title of "King Pym."

26. What was done by the bishops, and with what result? What false step did Charles take?

ment by the aid of mobs. A sergeant-at-arms afterward demanded from the House the surrender of the five members, but could obtain no answer to the demand; and royal messengers were despatched to seize them.

27. To add to the difficulty, the king came himself to the House attended by an armed retinue, and demanded that the obnoxious members should be pointed out. But the Speaker, Lent'hall, refused to comply, boldly declaring that he was the servant of the House, and could act only in accordance with its directions. The king, therefore, retired without effecting his purpose. amid the low murmurs of "Privilege! privilege!" from the indignant members. This arbitrary act excited universal opposition; and the citizens of London were the whole night in arms, determined to protect at all hazards the five members from arrest. Hampden, who had made a bold stand five years before against the payment of ship-money, was particularly dear to the people; and four thousand horsemen went to London to testify their devotion to him (1642).

28. The king, obliged to abandon his prosecution of the members, formally pardoned them, and offered an apology to the House for the breach of privilege which he had committed. The latter, aware that it could only preserve its newly-acquired power by the sword, made preparations for the impending struggle. The magazine at Hull was seized by one of its adherents, the command of the Tower was bestowed on another, and a bill was passed giving the control of the militia entirely to the Commons. But Charles, finding himself supported by a considerable party, refused his assent to the bill, and issued a proclamation against the attempted usurpation.

29. This brought matters to an issue. The king and his counsellors determined to resist the demands of Parliament,

27. What account is given of the king's visit to the Parliament? The result? What honor was shown to Hampden?

28. The further course of the king? Of the Commons? What followed?

29. How was the civil war inaugurated? Whom did the Royalists include? The Roundheads? Who were the Independents?

which amounted to no less than the annihilation of the royal authority; and collecting what forces he could, Charles erected his standard at Nottingham—the signal of civil war throughout the kingdom (August 22, 1642). The royalists, or *cavaliers*, included the greater part of the nobility, clergy, and landed gentry, with all who were attached to the established church, and also the Catholics. The *Roundheads*, or supporters of Parliament, were chiefly composed of the yeomanry of the country, the townspeople, and the dissenters or Puritans. Of the latter, the sect called *Independents* were particularly hostile to the monarchy as well as to the established church.

30. The Parliamentary forces were at first led by the Earl of Essex, son of Elizabeth's favorite, and a general of considerable skill and experience. The command of the royal army was intrusted to the Earl of Lindsey; the cavalry was commanded by the king's nephew, the famous Prince Rupert;* and it was the latter who commenced the war, by routing a body of the parliamentary cavalry at Worcester. The first general engagement took place at Edgehill, and Lindsey was mortally wounded and taken prisoner, but there was no decided victory on either side (1642). In a skirmish the next year, the illustrious Hampden was mortally wounded, and his loss was felt as a severe blow to the popular party.

31. During this year (1643), the Royalists, under Prince Rupert, gained some advantages in the west; and a general engagement took place at Newbury, but with no decided result. The Royalists lost one of their chief supporters in the brave and eloquent Lord Falkland (*fawk'land*), who,

* Prince Rupert was the son of Frederick, Elector-Palatine, and Elisabeth, daughter of James I.; so that Charles I. was his uncle. He was not only prominent in this war, but afterward acquired great distinction as a naval commander. Subsequently, he became noted for his researches in science and the useful arts.

30. Who was the leader of the Parliamentary forces? Of the royal army? Of its cavalry? When did the first general engagement occur? Its result? Death of Hampden?

31. Operations of Prince Rupert? Battle of Newbury? What loss did the Royalists sustain? What is said of Falkland?

while he had at first firmly and patriotically opposed the unjust pretensions of the king, stood by him when the attempt was made to deprive him of his legal authority. He held, at his death, the office of Secretary of State, and in that position had won a high reputation for the able papers in which he advocated the royal cause.

32. The Parliament entered into negotiations with Scotland to bring about a combination of their forces against the king; and, principally through the skill and address of Sir Henry Vane, who had been sent as a commissioner to Edinburgh, a "solemn league and covenant" was entered into, by which the Scottish people renewed the pledges of the previous covenant, and bound themselves to assist the cause of the English Parliament. A large army of Scots was accordingly sent into England; but this was counterbalanced by a considerable force which the king succeeded in obtaining from Ireland (1643).

33. Lord Fairfax, who commanded the Parliamentary forces in the north, formed a junction with the Scotch, under Leslie, Earl of Leven, and laid siege to York; but the arrival of Prince Rupert with a considerable army raised the siege, and led to the battle of *Marston Moor*, in which the Royalists, under the Marquis of Newcastle, sustained a severe defeat, principally through the skill and activity of *Oliver Cromwell*, by whom Prince Rupert's cavalry was routed and his artillery captured (July 2, 1644). The prince had insisted on giving battle to the Parliamentary army contrary to the advice and wishes of Newcastle; and, after the disastrous result, that nobleman abandoned the royal cause and left the kingdom. His courage, talents, and nobleness of character made him the ornament of the court and of his order; and consequently

32. What league was formed with Scotland? Through whose influence? What forces were brought into England?

33. What led to the battle of *Marston Moor*? Its result? Who abandoned the royal cause? Why? Character of Newcastle? What other operations are related?

his loss was a severe blow to the king. In the south, the Royalists met with some successes over the Parliamentary forces under Essex and Sir William Waller; but another army, under the Earl of Manchester, defeated Charles in the second battle of Newbury, and compelled him to retreat to Oxford (Oct. 27, 1644).

34. For some time previous to this, the sect denominated Independents had been growing in influence. They held that every congregation formed a church by itself, and was independent of all general assemblies or synods, having the right to elect its own pastor and make all needful rules for its own government. They were often called the "Root-and-branch men," since they advocated the entire abolition of the monarchy and the establishment of a republic. To these belonged Oliver Cromwell and Sir Henry Vane, and through their influence a bill, styled the "Self-denying Ordinance,"* was passed by Parliament, which forbade any of its members from holding command in the army.

35. Essex, Manchester, Waller, and others, therefore resigned their commissions; and Sir Thomas Fairfax† was appointed commander-in-chief. Cromwell, although a member of Parliament, artfully contrived to obtain permission to continue in the army, and was made lieutenant, but soon became, in fact, the general of the entire army, Fairfax being merely an instrument in his hands. Under his management, every regiment assumed the appearance of the most intense piety; officers and men met regularly for religious exercises; and they sang hymns as they advanced to battle. Soon after this, a very decisive victory was gained over the king's

* After the king departed from London, the Parliament passed bills without the king's consent; and, instead of "Acts of Parliament," styled them "Ordinances." Many of them were much more arbitrary and oppressive than any of the measures of Charles.

† Sir Thomas Fairfax was the son of Lord Fairfax, under whom he served in the operations which took place in the north, and in which he gained great distinction, especially in the battle of Marston Moor. He succeeded to the title of his father in 1642.

34. What is said of the Independents? What were they often called? What was the "Self-denying Ordinance?"

35. Who resigned their commissions? What did Cromwell do? Effect of his policy? Battle of Naseby?

forces at Naseby (*naze'be*), chiefly through the skill and valor of Cromwell (June 14, 1645).

36. After this battle, many of the towns which were held by the Royalists surrendered to Fairfax, who at last laid siege to Bristol, then occupied by Prince Rupert. This too was finally taken, and Charles, after other disasters, fled to Newark, and thence escaped to Oxford. The armies under Fairfax and Cromwell soon afterward reduced all the western and middle counties to submission; and the Earl of Montrose in Scotland, who had gained several important victories over the Covenanters, was finally vanquished. Meanwhile, Archbishop Laud was, by an "ordinance" of Parliament, as it was called, tried for treason, condemned, and executed (Jan. 10, 1645).

37. The king being now reduced to the greatest extremity, resolved to leave Oxford, which was on the point of falling into the hands of Fairfax, and to yield himself up to the Scottish army at Newark, knowing that the Scots had already gained everything for which they had contended, and that they had become disgusted with the dominant influence of the Independents in Parliament. He was received with respect, but treated as a prisoner, and compelled to issue orders for the surrender of all his remaining garrisons (May, 1646). The Parliament desiring to gain possession of the fallen monarch, at last agreed to pay the Scots £400,000, in lieu of all demands, on condition that he should be given up; and accordingly he was surrendered to the English commissioners (Jan. 30, 1647).

38. Discontents having arisen in the army on account of the neglect with which it was treated by Parliament, Cromwell and those leagued with him secretly encouraged

36. What followed this battle? Earl of Montrose? Execution of Archbishop Laud?

37. What course did the king adopt? Why? How was he treated? To whom was he surrendered, and why?

38. How did Cromwell and his colleagues gain control of affairs? How was Charles treated? Whither did he escape?

them; and in order to obtain control of affairs, took the king by force from the Parliament commissioners, and placed him under the protection of the army. This being resented by Parliament and its adherents in London, the leaders marched the army into the city, and reduced both ~~it~~ and the parliament to submission. Charles was treated by his captors with respect and kindness; but, escaping from the confinement in which he was held, he fled to the Isle of Wight, where he was kept a prisoner by the governor in Carisbrook Castle.

39. Under the direction of Cromwell and the other army officers, Parliament now made proposals of settlement to the king; and these being rejected by him, voted that no further addresses should be made to him, thus practically dethroning him altogether (January 13, 1648). He was then shut up in close confinement, and all correspondence with his friends was strictly prohibited. This treatment of the king greatly displeased the Scots; and the Scottish Parliament having voted to raise an army to support his authority, preparations were made to invade England and form a combination with the Royalists. While Cromwell and the army were exerting themselves to oppose these efforts, the Presbyterians in Parliament regained their power, and annulling its previous acts, again entered into negotiations with the king.

40. A treaty was at last made with him, and adopted by a considerable majority in the House of Commons; but Cromwell, in the mean time, had defeated the Scots, and the council of officers causing the parliament-house to be surrounded with two regiments of soldiers, under Col. Pride, formerly a drayman, excluded all who were not favorable to their views (Dec. 6, 1648). This measure, called "Col. Pride's Purge," reduced the Parliament to

39. What was the next measure of Parliament? Its result? What was done with Charles? Effect of this on the Scots? What was done by the Presbyterians?

40. What led to Colonel Pride's Purge? Its effect?

about fifty members, by whom the vote in favor of the treaty was rescinded, and a trial of the king ordered on the charge of treason against the people.

41. A court was accordingly organized to try him. It consisted of one hundred and thirty-three members, among whom were the chief officers of the army, including Cromwell; and was presided over by John Bradshaw, a lawyer. Its sessions were held at Westminster Hall, and the king was called upon to answer to the charges brought against him. Charles acted with the courage and dignity becoming his character. He refused to acknowledge the jurisdiction of the court, though thrice brought before it; and demanded a conference with Parliament. This was refused, and sentence of death was pronounced against him. Three days afterward, in front of the banqueting-hall of Whitehall Palace, he was beheaded (January 30, 1649). [*See Note 4, end of the Section.*]

42. The character of Charles I. was in many respects worthy of commendation. In the private relations of life his conduct was quite exemplary, being entirely free from those vices which so often sully the character of kings. As a monarch, his principal fault was insincerity, by which he lost the confidence of his people; for he gave his assent to measures of reform which he subsequently endeavored to evade. His arbitrary policy finds some apology in the fact that his predecessors had exercised the same powers which he claimed; but his prudence and moderation were not sufficient to convince him that the great change which had taken place in the sentiments of the people necessitated a corresponding change in the royal pretensions; since the influence of authority can never prevail over that of public opinion.*

* See Notes 5 and 6, end of the Section.

41. What account is given of the trial of Charles? His behavior? His execution?

42. What is said of the character of Charles I.?

1649 **43. The Commonwealth.**—The Scots had ^{to} protested against the trial and execution of the **1660** king, and foreign nations had interceded in his behalf. The Prince of Wales, anxious to save his father's life, sent a blank sheet of paper, subscribed with his name and sealed with his arms, on which the judges might write what conditions they pleased, as the price of the king's release; but these men were not to be moved from their purpose. A few days after the execution of the king, the Commons voted to abolish the House of Lords as well as the monarchy, declared it high treason to acknowledge Charles, the Prince of Wales, King of England, and ordered a new seal to be engraved with the legend, "*The first year of freedom by God's blessing restored, 1648.*"

44. Having thus made an entire change in the outward form of government, the Commons next appointed a Council of State, consisting of forty-one members; and of this the regicide Bradshaw was made president. The real head of the government, however, was Oliver Cromwell, who with Desborough, his brother-in-law, Ireton, his son-in-law, and others, wielded the power of the army, then nearly 50,000 strong. Affairs in Scotland and Ireland first claimed their attention. In the former, Charles II. had been proclaimed king; and in the latter the authority of the Parliament was defied, and a civil war had for some time been raging.

45. Cromwell, as Lord-Lieutenant, having almost subdued the rebellion in Ireland, by the most dreadful slaughter of the insurgents, next proceeded to Scotland, where the young king had landed, and was supported by a considerable army, partly consisting of English Royalists. Cromwell marched to Edinburgh, but found it too strongly

43. What had been done to prevent the execution of the king? What vote of Parliament followed it? The new seal?

44. What was next done by the Commons? Who was the real head of the government? What had taken place in Scotland and Ireland?

45. What was accomplished by Cromwell in Ireland? In Scotland?

fortified to be attacked. His position on the sea-shore, near Dunbar, was very critical; for he was unable to advance or retreat, and was cut off from any supplies. The Scots, however, rashly marched to attack him, and were most disastrously defeated, the greater number of them being either killed or captured (Sept. 3, 1650). Edinburgh immediately surrendered, and the remnant of the Scottish army fled to Stirling.

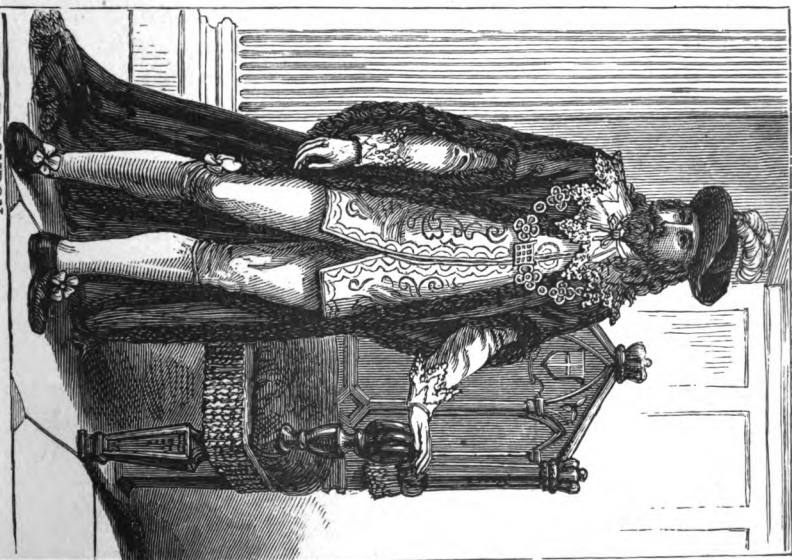
46. Charles, a few months after this, was crowned at Scone; * but becoming disgusted with the restraint under which he was kept by the Covenanters, he resolved to march into England, expecting to obtain there large accessions to his army. But in this he was disappointed; and being promptly pursued by Cromwell, was defeated at Worcester (*woos'ter*), where the whole Scottish army was either killed or taken prisoners (Sept. 3, 1651), the few that escaped from the battle-field being massacred by the country people, from national antipathy. This was styled by Cromwell his "crowning mercy." Charles escaped from England with great difficulty, being obliged to travel for two months in the disguise of a peasant. At one time he concealed himself for twenty-four hours in a large oak-tree, while his pursuers passed by. This tree was afterward known as the *Royal Oak*.

47. The affairs of the English republic, under the administration of the Parliament, continued to be prosperous. The Portuguese, who had aided Prince Rupert in making his escape, were humbled by Admiral Blake; the subjugation of Ireland was completed by Ireton, and Scotland was entirely reduced to submission by General Monk,

* Near Perth. Very little of the ancient town now remains. Here the kings of Scotland were crowned, on a famous stone now preserved in Westminster Abbey. It was originally brought from Tara, the ancient seat of the Irish monarchs.

46. What is said of Charles II.? The battle of Worcester? Its consequences? How did Charles escape?

47. What is said of the administration of Parliament? What was accomplished? What was done in Scotland by Monk? What other territories were subdued?



A LORD MAYOR AND LADY OF LONDON.

From an old print.

whom Cromwell had left to complete the work commenced by the victory at Dunbar. The people were disarmed, the preachers silenced, and all opposition immediately quelled at the point of the sword. The American settlements, all of which except those of New England had adhered to the king, were subdued, as were likewise the islands of Jersey and Guernsey, and the Isle of Man. The latter had been bravely and persistently defended by the Countess of Derby. This complete submission of the British territories left the parliament free to attend to foreign enterprises.

48. The first of these was a war with the Dutch Republic, which was provoked by the haughty behavior of the Dutch toward the English minister St. John, and the encouragement and hospitality shown toward the English Royalists. To cripple their commerce, the parliament passed the famous "Navigation Act," prohibiting all nations from importing any merchandise into England or her colonies except in English ships, or in the ships of the country where the goods were produced (1651). By this law the Dutch were the chief sufferers, they being at this time the chief commercial nation of Europe. Admiral Blake, with an inferior force, encountered the Dutch fleet under Van Tromp; and the latter, after losing two of his ships, was compelled to retire (1652).

49. Several engagements followed between Blake and the Dutch admirals Van Tromp and De Ruyter, in which both nations contended with the utmost skill and bravery for the mastery of the ocean: the balance of victory was, however, on the side of the English (1652-3). Meanwhile, Cromwell perceiving that the parliament had become jealous of his power, determined to dissolve it. Accordingly, going to the House with a body of 300 soldiers, he loaded the members with the vilest reproaches, and bade them

48. What led to a war with Holland? What measure was passed by Parliament? Effect of this law? What naval battle occurred?

49. What other engagements followed? With what results? How did Cromwell dissolve the parliament?

"to be gone and give place to honester men." Seizing the mace, he exclaimed, "Take away this bauble!" Then commanding the soldiers to clear the hall, he ordered the doors to be locked; and putting the keys into his pocket, departed to his lodgings in Whitehall (April 20, 1653).*

50. Desiring, however, to preserve some of the forms of the republic, he issued writs for the election of 140 persons, who might constitute a parliament. These, by his management, consisted of the meanest and most fanatical of the citizens; one of whom, a leather-seller named *Praise-God Barebone*, having made himself conspicuous by his sanctimonious cant and long prayers, the Parliament was called, in derision, "Barebone's Parliament." Cromwell, however, soon dissolved this ridiculous assembly, and caused himself to be appointed "Lord Protector." He was to be assisted by a Council of State, and was bound to summon a parliament every three years (Dec., 1653).

51. A few months previously, Van Tromp, the distinguished Dutch admiral, had been shot in an action with the English; and the Dutch, terrified by their losses and overwhelmed with the expenses of the war, solicited peace. A treaty was finally signed by Cromwell, establishing a defensive league between the two republics, but yielding the honor of the flag to the English (1654). The administration of the Protector was, in other respects, characterized by extraordinary vigor and ability. He boasted that he would make the name of *Englishman* as much feared and respected as had anciently been that of *Roman*; and the uniform success of his military and naval enterprises went far to realize the saying.

52. Under Blake, the English fleets achieved an uninterrupted series of victories. He subdued the Barbary

* See Note 7, end of the Section.

50. What account is given of "Barebone's Parliament?" What title did Cromwell obtain?

51. Death of Van Tromp? What treaty was made? Administration of Cromwell? His boast?

52. What was achieved by Blake? His death and character? What conquests were made during the war?

Powers (1655), and defeated the Spaniards in several important actions (1656-7). His death occurred in 1657. Blake was an inflexible republican, and, as such, he disapproved of the usurpations of Cromwell, notwithstanding the honors which the latter heaped upon him. During the war waged with Spain, the island of Jamaica was taken by an English squadron under Admirals Penn* and Venables (1655); and Dunkirk was captured from the Spaniards by the combined forces of France and England (1658), and, by agreement, delivered to Cromwell.

53. Although prosperous abroad, the Protector was at home involved in very great difficulties. He had called two parliaments successively; but not finding them subservient to his views, he had promptly dissolved them (1654-6). His military enterprises had involved him in heavy debt; conspiracies, one after the other, were formed against his government; and discontents arose in the army itself. A book entitled "Killing no Murder," published by one Colonel Titus, and boldly advising the removal of the usurper by assassination, caused him thereafter ceaseless apprehension and anxiety. He constantly wore armor under his clothes, and carried pistols in his pockets; scarcely ever slept three nights in the same chamber, or returned from any place by the same way which he went. At last this dreadful anxiety of mind, coupled with grief for the loss of a favorite daughter, brought on a fever, of which he expired (Sept. 3, 1658),—the anniversary of the day of his great victories at Dunbar and Worcester.

54. Cromwell was in his sixtieth year when he died. He was of a robust frame of body, and of a manly, though

* Father of the celebrated William Penn, the founder of Pennsylvania. During the reign of Charles II. he obtained a high command under the Duke of York, and acquired considerable distinction by his skill and valor. He was knighted by Charles for his services, in consideration of which also his son subsequently received the grant of land in North America which is settled, and which was named after him.

53. In what difficulties was Cromwell involved? What caused him a anxiety
The effect of it? His death?

54. His age? Personal appearance? Character?

not an agreeable aspect. His eyes were grey and keen, his nose immoderately large, and of a deep red; and his manner uniformly abrupt and clownish. His character had very many traits of greatness. No one can gainsay the splendid talents which he displayed, both as a general and a statesman; and had he rightfully possessed the sovereign power, he would undoubtedly have compared favorably with any monarch that ever reigned, both for ability and uprightness of intentions. But his perverted ambition, not content with vindicating the liberties and redressing the grievances of his country, prompted him to "wade through slaughter to a throne;" and, therefore, instead of receiving the benedictions of his countrymen, he was execrated and abhorred. [*See Note 8, end of the Section.*]

55. Richard Cromwell quietly succeeded his father in the office of Protector. He was a young man of no experience, and very little strength of character, though of a mild and virtuous disposition. His want of capacity for so difficult a position was soon manifest, notwithstanding the support which he received from General Monk, who commanded the army in Scotland, and from his brother Henry, as Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. A parliament was called, but it having given offence to the army officers, the latter compelled Richard to dissolve it (1659). Soon after this he signed his own abdication, and thus left the supreme authority to the army, who afterward ruled by a council of officers.

56. The country was now threatened with a renewal of civil war; but General Monk, a man of great caution and reserve, marched into England with the avowed intention of restoring the parliament which Cromwell had violently expelled. This was accomplished, the members generally taking their places; and the Presbyterians and Royalists

55. Who succeeded Oliver Cromwell? The character of Richard Cromwell? What led to his abdication?

56. What was done by Monk? What led to the Restoration? How was the king received in London?

forming a coalition against the Independents. Under Monk's direction, this parliament was formally dissolved, and writs issued for the election of a new one. In the latter, a majority was found in favor of restoring the king; and when his messenger appeared, he was received with the greatest joy; the terms offered were at once accepted, and the king was proclaimed with great solemnity by both Houses (May 8, 1660). A few days afterward, Charles entered London, amid the joyful acclamations of the citizens (May 29), and reascended the throne of his ancestors. This event is known in English history as the **Restoration**.

1660 57. Charles II. was thirty years old when, after
10 an exile of sixteen years, he was restored to his
1678 throne. His cheerful disposition, and easy, graceful
manners made him a very engaging person; and he won
the hearts of all who approached him by his manly figure
and his frankness and affability. Sir Edward Hyde, now
created Earl of Clarendon, who had returned with the
king from exile, was made chancellor and prime minister,
and soon afterward became connected with the royal fam-
ily by the marriage of his daughter, Anne Hyde, with the
king's brother, James, Duke of York. General Monk was
rewarded with the title of Duke of Albemarle.

58. Among the first acts of the restored king's reign
were the abolition of the last relic of the Feudal System—
the tenure of lands by knight's service,* the disbanding
of Cromwell's army, and the restoration of the Church of
England. An act was also passed pardoning all who had
taken part in the *Great Rebellion*, except the regicide

*This was originally an obligation imposed upon the holder of a certain extent of land, called a *Knight's Fee*, to perform the duties of a knight to his superior or lord. Afterward, a money compensation was allowed as an equivalent, which in time led to many abuses.

57. What is said of Charles II.? Who was made Chancellor? How related to the king? How was General Monk rewarded?

58. What were the first acts of this reign? Who were excepted from the general pardon? Treatment of the regicides remains? What took place in Scotland?

judges, six of whom were tried and executed. On the anniversary of the late king's death, the bodies of Cromwell, Ireton, and Bradshaw were disinterred, hanged on the gallows, then decapitated, and their heads fixed on Westminster Hall. With this exception, the king showed great moderation and clemency, and admitted into his council both Royalists and Presbyterians. In Scotland more severity was exercised, and the Marquis of Argyle was beheaded for having favored the usurped government.

59. In compliance with the wishes of Charles and his minister, the "Act of Uniformity" was passed, requiring that every clergyman should be ordained by the bishops, and should declare his assent to everything contained in the Book of Common Prayer, and should abjure the Covenant. Two thousand clergymen were expelled from their livings for refusing obedience (1662). The "Corporation Act," passed at the same time, enjoined all magistrates and officers of corporations to take an oath never, under any circumstance, to resist the king's authority, or to take up arms against him.

60. The most remarkable feature of this period was the entire change which took place in the sentiments of the people. During the reign of Charles I. they manifested the most intense zeal for liberty; but now seemed eager to evince an equally extravagant spirit of submission. Under the control of the Puritans, they seemed to think that religion consisted in gloom, austerity, and the sacrifice of all social gayety and pleasure; but, going to the opposite extreme, they now plunged into riot and dissipation. Everything religious or serious was ridiculed; and nothing but scenes of gallantry and festivity occupied the general attention. The monarch set the example, and indulged himself in mirth and festivity, while those who

59. The "Act of Uniformity?" How was obedience to it enforced? The "Corporation Act?"

60. What change took place in the manners of the people? What was Charles's conduct?

had suffered in his father's cause were left to pine in neglect and wretchedness.

61. In the third year of his reign, Charles married Catharine of Braganza, a Portuguese princess, with whom he received a large dowry; but finding her disposition serious and her manners formal and grave, he entirely neglected her for the society of his gay and dissolute companions. After a short time, his profusion and reckless self-indulgence considerably abated the people's loyalty; and they could not forbear making comparisons between this slothful and licentious monarch and the great Protector who had made the name of England so glorious throughout the world by his careful and vigorous administration. Dunkirk, which had been acquired during that splendid period, was now sold to the French to supply means for the king's extravagant pleasures (1664).

62. But scarcely any amount was found adequate for this purpose; and in order to obtain supplies from Parliament, he recklessly plunged into a war with Holland, the avowed cause of the war being certain alleged wrongs committed by the Dutch against the English trade. Before the war had been formally declared, a fleet sent out by the Duke of York took possession of New Netherlands in North America (1664), and some of the Dutch settlements in Africa were captured. De Ruyter retaliated by attacking Barbadoes and some of the other English dependencies. At the beginning of the war, a great naval battle was fought off the eastern coast of England, in which James, the Duke of York, assisted by Prince Rupert and the Earl of Sandwich, defeated the Dutch fleet with immense loss (1665).

63. The French monarch (Louis XIV.) then took sides

61. Marriage of Charles? His treatment of the queen? Popular sentiments regarding Charles? Sale of Dunkirk?

62. Why was war waged with Holland? Capture of New Netherlands? Other settlements? How did De Ruyter retaliate? What naval battle was fought?

63. Course of Louis XIV.? The King of Denmark? What great naval engagement occurred? Its result?

with the Dutch, alarmed lest the English might acquire an unlimited control of maritime affairs. The King of Denmark also declared war against England. The combined fleets of the allies, commanded by the great Dutch admiral De Ruyter and the Duke of Beaufort, were defeated by those of the English, under the Duke of Albemarle and Prince Rupert (1666). This battle lasted four days, and was one of the most terrific naval engagements ever fought: it occurred near the southeast coast. By it the English gained the unquestioned supremacy of the sea, and were able with impunity to insult the Dutch in their own harbors.

64. During this war, the *Great Plague* broke out in London; and such was the awful mortality occasioned by it, that in the city alone the number of deaths during the year (1665) was estimated at no less than 100,000. The rich and panic-stricken fled from the city; grass grew in the streets; and the silence of death reigned everywhere, except when it was broken by the rumbling of the dead-cart as it carried away its fearful burden. Close upon this calamity followed the Great Fire, which raged for three days, and destroyed 13,200 dwelling-houses, besides ninety churches (1666).^{*} St. Paul's cathedral was burned; but on its site was afterward erected, by the distinguished architect Christopher Wren, that beautiful edifice, the dome of which now towers above the smoke-stained roofs of London.[†]

65. The desire of Charles to save expense, in order that he might have means for his extravagant pleasures, led to neglect in keeping up the naval force of the kingdom; and the Dutch, taking advantage of this, defiantly entered the

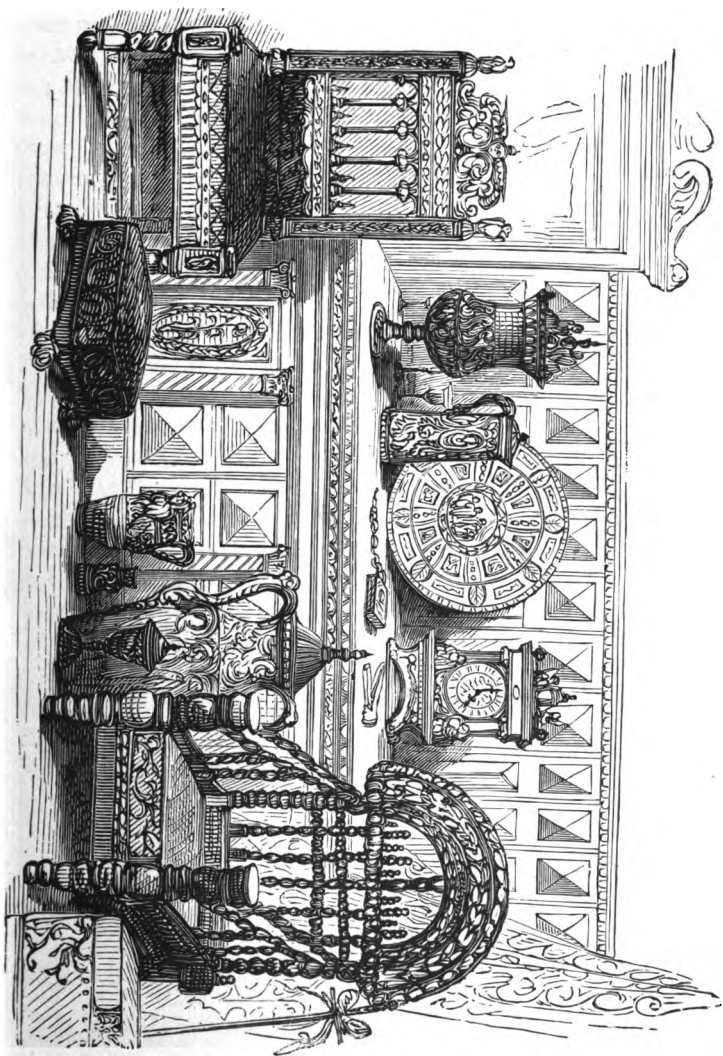
^{*} See Note 9, end of the Section.

[†] Except St. Peter's at Rome, this is considered the finest church edifice in Europe. It was commenced in 1675, and required forty-five years for its completion. Wren superintended the whole. He also drew designs for more than fifty other churches in place of those destroyed by the fire, and formed a plan for the entire rebuilding of the metropolis, embracing wide streets, magnificent quays, and other valuable improvements. He died in 1723, in his 91st year.

64. The Great Plague? The Great Fire? What buildings were burned? St. Paul's Cathedral?

65. What disaster was caused by the king's neglect? What followed the close of the war? Lord Clarendon?

FURNITURE OF CHARLES II.



harbors, and did immense havoc to the shipping. They even sailed up the Thames, and extended their ravages as far as London Bridge (1667). Peace was, however, declared the same year. The disgraceful close of this war, together with the previous measures of the government, excited intense indignation among the people, particularly against Clarendon, who was accordingly impeached and banished. He survived his banishment six years, which he spent in France, employing his leisure in the composition of his great work, the "History of the Rebellion."

66. After the fall of Clarendon, five ministers were chosen, whose unprincipled intrigues subsequently caused them to be stigmatized as the "Cabal."* Their first measure was, however, very popular. This was the formation of a league with Holland and Sweden (hence called the "Triple Alliance") for the purpose of restraining the French king, Louis XIV., in his ambitious scheme of seizing the Spanish Netherlands.† Louis was thus obliged to abandon the enterprise, and to submit to the terms agreed upon by the plenipotentiaries of the three countries, among whom England was represented by the celebrated Sir William Temple,‡ and Holland by the famous statesman John de Witt.§

67. Charles, however, disliked the alliance against Louis, although so acceptable to the people, because he hoped, by

* The initial letters of the names of these ministers—Clifford, Ashley, Buckingham, Arlington, and Lauderdale—gave point to this term of reproach, which at that period, as at present, was used to signify any secret committee, or *junto*.

† That part of the Netherlands which remained in the possession of Spain after the Dutch provinces had revolted, and achieved their independence. It chiefly consisted of the present kingdom of Belgium.

‡ Sir William Temple was especially celebrated for his skill as a negotiator. After spending twenty years in the affairs of state, he retired in 1680 from public employment, and spent the remainder of his life in literary pursuits and in the cultivation of his grounds. He died in 1700, at the age of seventy-one. His works, consisting chiefly of memoirs of public affairs, are very valuable.

§ John De Witt, for several years "Grand Pensionary" of Holland, was noted for his scientific attainments, eminent ability as a statesman, and incorruptible integrity. He was at the head of affairs during the wars with England under Cromwell and Charles II., but uniformly deprecated a warlike policy on the part of the two countries. His hatred of the Orange family and the Stadtholder was intense, and involved him in many troubles. During a popular insurrection occasioned by the invasion of the French in 1672, the odium of which was attached to him, he and his brother were seized by the enraged mob, and murdered with every circumstance of indignity and cruelty.

66. What ministry succeeded Clarendon? Why were they called the "Cabal?" (See Note.) The "Triple Alliance." Its result? Who were the plenipotentiaries of England and Holland?

67. Why did Charles dislike the alliance? What treaty did he make? By whom was it negotiated?

means of aid received from that monarch, to make himself independent of the English parliament. He, therefore secretly concluded with Louis a most disgraceful treaty, agreeing to assist him in subjugating Holland, and to make a public profession of the Roman Catholic religion. In return, he was to receive a large sum of money (£200,000) yearly, and was promised an army in case of an insurrection in England (1670). The negotiations by which this was brought about were chiefly carried on by the Duchess of Orleans, the sister of Charles, aided by a beautiful French lady, who afterward came to England, and having won the favor of the king, was made Duchess of Portsmouth.

68. One of the most dishonorable acts of Charles's government, in order to obtain supplies, was the closing of the Exchequer, or Treasury, in which the London merchants and goldsmiths had deposited their funds, on which they were now told that they would receive only the interest, as the principal would not be paid (1672). General bankruptcy and ruin followed this shameful violation of public credit; and all trade was for a time completely paralyzed. Other measures adopted by the king without the consent of Parliament were of an arbitrary and unconstitutional character.

69. A few months later, England joined France in a war against the Dutch; and while the fleets of the latter contended against those of the English, commanded by the Duke of York, the French army invaded the territory of the republic, captured many of its cities, and drove it to the extreme measure of opening the sluices, and inundating the country. In these perilous circumstances, the Dutch forces were commanded by William, Prince of Orange,*

* Afterward William III., King of England. He was then in the twenty-second year of his age, but had already given many indications of the greatness of character for which he subsequently became so distinguished.

68. What dishonorable act was committed by the government? The consequences?

69. What war followed? What were its effects on Holland? Its duration? How terminated?

who gained great distinction by his determined courage and patriotism. The war continued about two years, at the end of which it had become so unpopular, that the king was compelled to make a treaty of peace with the Dutch provinces (1674).

70. While this war was in progress, the "Test Act" had been passed by Parliament (1673), obliging all government officers to take the oaths of allegiance and supremacy, and to abjure the doctrines of the Roman Catholic church. In consequence of this, the Duke of York, who had previously made a public profession of his faith in that church, resigned his office as admiral, and was succeeded in the command of the fleet by Prince Rupert. The subsequent marriage of the Duke with a Catholic princess (Mary of Modena) very much increased the popular feeling against him.

71. The general distrust and suspicion felt at this time against the Catholics, led to what was called the "Popish Plot" (1678). This was a conspiracy alleged to have been formed by the Catholics to set fire to the city of London, assassinate the king, massacre the Protestants, and betray the kingdom to the French. The principal witness in this absurd accusation was one Titus Oates,* whose false and malicious statements were received with implicit confidence, and occasioned the wildest excitement. The rewards bestowed upon him led others to commit similar perjuries, and many innocent persons suffered death before the imposture was discovered. The most illustrious of these victims was William Howard, Viscount Stafford, whose gray hairs could not save him from an unmerited death. He was condemned, after a trial of six days, and perished on

*This infamous character had been a clergyman, but was dismissed for vicious practices. During the reign of James II. he was condemned for perjury, and sentenced to be whipped and pilloried. He died in 1705.

70. The Test Act? Conduct of the Duke of York? By whom succeeded as admiral? His marriage?

71. The so-called "Popish Plot"? Titus Oates? Viscount Stafford? His fate?

the scaffold, amid the loudly-expressed sympathies of the spectators (Dec. 29, 1680).

72. The year preceding this event was rendered memorable by the passage of the famous "Ha'beas Cor'pus Act,"* securing all subjects from imprisonment, except where it can be shown to be justified by law. This was designed to check the illegal and arbitrary arrests made by the authority of the king, who in many respects exercised the most despotic sway. He deprived many of the cities, London included, of their charters, in order to extort money for their restoration; and no one felt himself secure from the numerous gangs of spies and informers who were employed by the court.

73. This state of things led to a conspiracy called the "Rye-house Plot," from the name of the house in which the conspirators met, it being situated at a place called Rye, a lonely spot on the road by which the king returned from Newmarket to London. The plan was to overturn a cart, so that the king's coach would be stopped, and then to rush out and assassinate him. The failure and discovery of this plot brought to light the existence of another combination, the object of which was to create a revolution by dethroning Charles, and placing his natural son, the Duke of Monmouth, on the throne, or at least to compel Charles to acknowledge him as his successor, there being a rumor that his mother had been lawfully married to the king.

74. The chief members of this combination were the Duke of Monmouth, Lord William Russell, Algernon Sidney, John Hampden (grandson of the distinguished patriot

* *Habeas Corpus* means, "have the body." The writ, or order of the court of justice, was so called because it enjoins any person restraining another's liberty, to have *his body*, that is, to produce the prisoner, before the court, so that the cause of his detention may be known.

72. The "Habeas Corpus Act?" Its object? Arbitrary conduct of the king?

73. The "Rye-house Plot?" Its object? The result? To what discovery did its failure lead?

74. Who were the chief conspirators? Who were beheaded? Lord Russell! Sidney? (See note, page 193.) Hampden? Monmouth?

of that name), the Earl of Essex, and Lord Howard. On the evidence of some of the conspirators, Russell and Sidney were beheaded; but Monmouth escaped by flight (1683). The fate of Lord Russell, who was a most virtuous nobleman, excited the deepest sympathy; and that of Sidney,* who was in principle a Republican, and had fought in the civil war against the late king, was also greatly regretted. Hampden was punished only by the imposition of a heavy fine; and Monmouth, having made a humble submission to the king, was pardoned.

75. A short time after this, Charles married his niece, the Lady Anne, daughter of the Duke of York, to Prince George, brother to the King of Denmark, thinking to increase his popularity by allying himself thus closely to a Protestant prince. The death of the king soon followed, being caused by an apoplectic fit (1685). During his last illness he received the offices of the Catholic church. The only redeeming traits of his character were his affability, ease, and cheerfulness as a companion. In other respects, he was most unworthy, being utterly unprincipled, and immoral in the lowest degree. His whole court was steeped in vice and profligacy; and the tone of society, in every grade, was affected by his degrading example. With no natural disposition to tyranny, his recklessness and extravagance caused him to disregard the most sacred privileges of his subjects, and to trample, without scruple, upon their dearest liberties. He left no legitimate children, and therefore the crown descended to his brother James.

76. In the first part of the reign of Charles II. (1667), the celebrated poet, *John Milton*, published his greatest

* Sidney was the second son of Robert, Earl of Leicester. He made Brutus his model, in his political character; and on Cromwell's usurpation he retired in disgust from the country. He returned in 1677, having obtained the king's pardon. His political writings, especially the Discourse on Government, have been very greatly admired.

75. Marriage of the Lady Anne? The king's death? His character? Effects of his example? Of his extravagance?

76. What writers flourished? Milton? Bunyan? Butler? Locke? Dryden? The drama? Sir Matthew Hale?

work, "Paradise Lost." This illustrious man had been Foreign Secretary under Cromwell, and had distinguished himself by his writings in defence of the Commonwealth. His principal contemporaries in the field of literature were *John Bunyan*, the author of "Pilgrim's Progress;" *Samuel Butler*, who wrote "Hudibras," a burlesque poem on the Puritans and the civil war; and *John Locke*, the author of the immortal "Essay on the Human Understanding." *Dryden* also wrote several of his finest poems, and was made poet-laureate. The drama received many talented contributions from *Ot'way*, *Wych'erly*, and others; but, taking its character from the court, it was shamefully immoral. Sir Matthew Hale, the just and pious judge, also flourished during this period.

1685 77. **James II.**—No opposition was made to the
 to accession of the Duke of York, his title being gen-
1688 erally recognized as indisputable; but notwithstanding the glory which he had acquired as a naval commander, he was viewed with distrust by the people on account of the attachment which he had openly manifested to the church of Rome. Soon after the coronation of James and his queen, Parliament assembled, in his address to which the king showed something of the same spirit of defiance which had involved his father in so much trouble. All the chief offices of the crown continued in the hands of Protestants.

78. The Duke of Monmouth, who had fled to Holland during the preceding reign, now, under the instigation of the Earl of Argyle, an exiled nobleman from Scotland, renewed his claim to the throne. Argyle landed in the western part of Scotland, but was soon defeated, taken prisoner, and a short time afterward executed at Edinburgh. Monmouth landed in England with scarcely one hundred

77. James II.? Popular feeling toward him? His address to Parliament?

78. The Duke of Monmouth? The Earl of Argyle? Monmouth's invasion its result? Monmouth's conduct and fate?

followers, but was soon joined by a considerable force, and proceeded slowly into the interior of the country. At Sedgemoor he was met by the royal army, and, after a battle of three hours, defeated with great slaughter. Monmouth fled, but in a few days was found concealed in a ditch, and taken to London. In an interview with the king he threw himself on his knees, and implored forgiveness; but as he had plotted several times against the government, and had publicly proclaimed James a traitor, a tyrant, the murderer of his brother, and a popish usurper, the king was deaf to his entreaties. Two days afterward he was beheaded (1685).

79. Those who had been concerned in this rebellion were pursued with the most dreadful ferocity, an officer named Kirke acquiring a disgraceful notoriety by the shocking cruelties perpetrated by his soldiers, who were ironically styled "Kirke's Lambs."* Trials were held under the infamous Judge Jeffreys; and many innocent persons were condemned and executed. This circuit was called the "Bloody Assize," Jeffries boasting of the large number of persons (more than three hundred) whom he had caused to be hanged. More than eight hundred others were sent as slaves to the West Indies, under the orders of court favorites to whom they had been granted, and who made a shameful gain by their sale, or extorted various sums for their liberation. Two women were executed for sheltering fugitives, and their case excited much compassion, more especially that of Alice Lisle (*lile*), widow of one of Cromwell's lords, who was sentenced by Jeffreys to be burned alive; but through the intercession of friends, her sentence was changed to beheading. [*See Note 11, end of the Section.*]

80. The imprudent zeal of the king in promoting Catholics to office and power, occasioned great excitement

* See Note 10, end of the Section.

79. Treatment of the rebels? "Kirke's Lambs?" Judge Jeffries? The "Bloody Assize?" Alice Lisle?

80. What caused much popular excitement? What declaration was published by the king? What led to the arrest of the bishops?

and dissatisfaction. Having published on his own authority, and in opposition to the Test Act, a declaration allowing liberty of conscience, and declaring that non-conformity to the established religion should no longer be punished, he issued an order requiring that this declaration should be read in all the churches. This, as being illegal, the clergy refused to obey; and a petition was presented against it by seven bishops, including Archbishop Sancroft. James, greatly exasperated at this opposition, caused the bishops to be committed to the Tower, where they remained a week before they were set free on bail (1688).

81. The popular excitement produced by this conduct of the king was intense. Crowds attended the bishops as they were conducted from the Tower, and signified their sympathy and veneration in every possible way. The trial took place in Westminster Hall, the bishops being charged with having published a false and seditious libel; and when the jury had delivered their verdict, "Not Guilty," and the bishops were discharged, the city of London was illuminated, and the people became almost frantic with joy. During these exciting events the queen gave birth to a son; and a rumor was spread by the Protestant party that the child had been brought into the palace, in order to be imposed upon the people as an heir to the crown. The infant was baptized by the name of James.

82. The king expecting opposition, had collected a standing army of about 16,000 men; but these openly expressed their sympathy with the Protestant party. By the advice of the French minister, James had obtained several regiments of Irish soldiers, in whom, as being Catholics, it was thought reliance could be placed. These were hated by the English; and a popular air, called from its burden *Lillebuloero*, still further fanned the flame against James and the

81. Conduct of the populace? The trial of the bishops? Effect of their acquittal? The king's son?

82. What course did James pursue? *Lillebuloero*? Message to William, Prince of Orange?

Irish troops. In the mean time, some of the leading nobles and clergy of England had sent to William, Prince of Orange, nephew and son-in-law of the king, entreating him to come with an army and aid them in defending their religion and their freedom. [*See Note 12.*]

83. William promptly accepted the call, and having collected an army of 14,000 men and a fleet of five hundred ships, he sailed from Holland, and landed safely and without opposition at Torbay, on the southern shore (Nov. 5, 1688). He was received with acclamations of joy by the people, and advanced slowly, reaching Exeter in four days. James at first resolved to stake his kingdom on the issue of a great battle; but being abandoned by his subjects, among them Lord Churchill (afterward so celebrated as the Duke of Marlborough), and other distinguished noblemen; and being deserted also by his daughter Anne, and her husband, Prince George, he resolved on flight. Having previously sent away his queen and son to France, he followed them in disguise; but was captured and brought back. His enemies were, however, not desirous of retaining him; and, the Dutch soldiers having occupied London, he was permitted again to escape; whereupon he sailed away to France, and joined his wife at the castle of St. Germain, near Paris, being received by Louis XIV. with the greatest sympathy and kindness.

84. A convention parliament was immediately called (Jan. 23, 1689), and the crown was bestowed on William and Mary for their lives, the former to have the sole administration of the government. The succession was settled, first on the children of Mary, and then on those of her sister Anne; and, these failing, on the children of William by any other wife. Annexed to this settlement

83. What was done by William? By James? By whom was he abandoned. His escape? By whom was he received?

84. What was called? What did the Convention do? The settlement of the crown Declaration of Rights?

was a Declaration of Rights, definitely fixing the extent of the king's prerogative, and more precisely stating the constitutional principles of the government.

85. Among these the chief articles were: 1. The king cannot suspend the laws or their execution; 2. He cannot levy money without the consent of Parliament; 3. The subject has a right to petition the crown; 4. A standing army cannot be kept in time of peace without the consent of Parliament; 5. Elections and parliamentary debates must be free, and parliaments must be frequently assembled. These acts of the Convention were afterward confirmed by a parliament regularly summoned, in an enactment called the "Bill of Rights," and constituted what is known in English history as the "Glorious Revolution of 1688."*

86. James spent the remainder of his life at St. Germain, a pensioner on the bounty of the French king. He died there in 1701. His character is variously drawn, in accordance with the partisan views of those who have delineated it. By some, his zeal for his religion is represented as sectarian bigotry, and his ardor in vindicating its freedom becomes perversity and spite. His rash violation of the laws, and his defiance of the Constitution of the country, were characteristic of the whole Stuart race, every member of which was distinguished by a blind resistance to public opinion. In these things, James evidently proved that he was incapable of learning by experience. While, therefore, his character cannot be held up to admiration, it should be spared very much of the obloquy to which his indiscretions and the disasters consequent thereon have rendered it liable.

87. The navy greatly increased under James II., con-

* So called, although it took place in 1689 (January); because, until 1752, the English commenced the year on the 25th of March.

85. What were the chief articles? How was the declaration confirmed? Revolution of 1688?

86. Further history of James II.? His character?

87. Increase of the navy? Commerce? Newspapers? Coffee-houses?

taining, at the time of the Revolution, one hundred and seventy-three vessels, manned by 42,000 seamen. James, who had displayed considerable talents as an admiral, took great interest in this branch of the service, and was the inventor of naval signals. During this and the preceding reign, the country advanced greatly in wealth and commerce; and the population of its colonial territories was considerably augmented. *Newspapers* had been established in the reign of Charles I., but the jealousy and arbitrary conduct of the crown prevented their free publication; and thus the *coffee-houses* became the chief places for the circulation of news, and the discussion of political opinions. The government regarded these places with much suspicion, and at one time made an ineffectual effort to close them.

1689 88. **William and Mary.**—William, on whom
to the sole exercise of regal power devolved, although an
1694 able sovereign, was deficient in those personal qualities which are needed to acquire popularity; and hence he had scarcely ascended the throne, when opposition confronted him from various quarters,—even from some of those who had been instrumental in his elevation. Suspecting disaffection among the Scotch regiments in the English army, he resolved to send them to Holland, and supply their places with Dutch troops. They, however, indignant at the order requiring them to leave the country, mutinied, and marched northward. William promptly despatched several regiments of Dutch dragoons after them, and compelled them to submit to the order. This caused the passage of the Mutiny Bill, which placed the army under martial law.

89. Although the clergy had been, in a great degree, instrumental in accomplishing the Revolution, a large number, including the primate and seven bishops, refused

88. What is said of William? Difficulty with the Scotch troops? How subdued? The Mutiny Bill?

89. The Non-jurors? The Toleration Act? The Catholics?

to take the oath of allegiance to William, on the ground that they could not be released from the oath which they had previously taken to James. On this account they were called "non-jurors," and were punished by ejectionment from their livings. This led to the passage of the "Toleration Act," by which Protestant dissenters were exempted from the penalties incurred by the free exercise of their religion. The disabilities of the Catholics were, however, continued in full force.

90. Although William had been acknowledged king by the Scotch convention in Edinburgh, there was a considerable party in favor of James. Under Viscount Dundee (more celebrated as Graham of Claverhouse), an army of Highlanders defeated the royal forces;* but Dundee was slain; and the insurgents were so much discouraged by his death that they dispersed. The Scots were, accordingly, soon reduced to submission, after which Episcopacy was abolished, Presbyterianism being established in its place (1689). The full pacification of the Highlands was not effected, however, until some time afterward (December, 1691).

91. In connection with this occurred the dreadful "Massacre of Glencoe" (1692). McIan, chief of the McDonalds, had delayed to take the oath of allegiance to William, until after the time appointed for it; whereupon the enemies of the McDonalds obtained from the king, by a false statement, an order for the military execution of the whole clan. Accordingly, a body of soldiers entered the valley of Glencoe, and put to the sword all who were unable to escape, including men, women, and children. The signing of this order very much increased William's unpopularity, and has since subjected his name to considerable obloquy.

92. In Ireland, the opposition to William was much

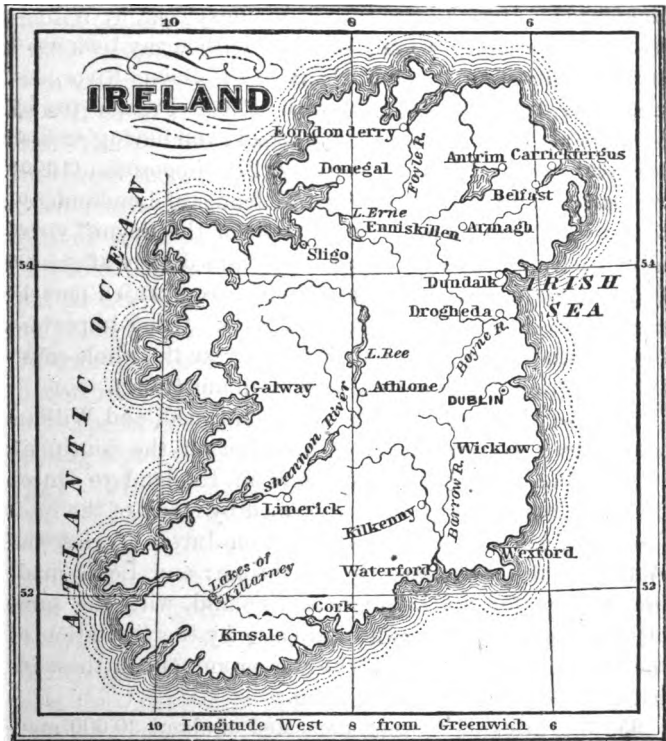
* This battle was fought at a place called *Killiecrankie*, at the northwest extremity of a pass in the Grampian mountains.

90. Insurrection in Scotland? How terminated?

91. Massacre of Glencoe? Its effects?

92. Invasion of Ireland by James II.? Siege of Londonderry? What happened at Enniskillen?

more general and decided; and James, taking advantage of this circumstance, invaded the island, having been supplied with a large naval force by Louis XIV. of France. He landed at Kinsale, and was received with great demonstrations of joy by the people; and, his army being soon augmented by large accessions under Tyrconnel, the Lord-



Deputy, he entered Dublin in triumph. Londonderry and Enniskillen alone held out against him, the former of which he closely besieged; but the inhabitants, led by a Presbyterian clergyman named Walker, resisted with the greatest fortitude during one hundred and five days, and were at last relieved, the besieging forces being compelled to retire.

The inhabitants suffered the most dreadful hardships during the long siege, and the garrison was reduced from 7,000 to 3,000 effective men. The forces of James were also routed at Enniskillen with great loss.

93. William's general, Marshal Schomberg (*shom'berg*), arrived a few days afterward, and took possession of Carrickfergus. Here he was joined, the next year, by William with a large army; whereupon the Irish army took up a strong position on the south bank of the Boyne River, and was soon joined by James, with 10,000 French troops. William at once proceeded to the attack, and having crossed the river, routed the enemy with very little opposition (1690). Schomberg and Walker, the brave defender of Londonderry, fell in the engagement. The "Battle of the Boyne" virtually decided the fate of James, who immediately afterward fled to Dublin, and thence to Kinsale, from which port he escaped to France in a French frigate. Other important towns soon surrendered, and the next year the whole country submitted to the authority of William (1691).

94. The war with France still continued, and William was obliged to spend most of his time on the continent, leaving the management of affairs in England to Queen Mary. Meanwhile, plots were formed by many of the most distinguished men of all parties, Non-Jurors, Tories, and Whigs, to restore James to the throne; and Louis made preparations for the invasion of England, with the same object,—being partly induced thereto by the invitation of the Duke of Marlborough, who was prominent in these intrigues against the reigning king.

95. The army of invasion consisted of about 30,000 men, principally Irish troops, who, after the pacification of Ireland, had emigrated to France; and the fleet was also very large and powerful. James was quite confident of success;

93. Who took Carrickfergus? Battle of the Boyne? Who fell in the action? What followed it?

94. Absence of William? Plots to dethrone him? By whom aided?

95. Army of invasion? Battle of Cape La Hogue? Subsequent proceedings of James II.?

but in an engagement which took place off Cape La Hogue (*hōg*), the combined Dutch and English fleets, under Admiral Russell, gained a brilliant victory over the French (May 22, 1692), and the exiled monarch again sought an asylum at the court of Louis. He made no further effort to recover his lost throne, but passed the remainder of his life in retirement.

96. The war, however, still went on, and William met with several disastrous losses in his campaigns in Flanders, as well as in the naval engagements which occurred with the French. This encouraged his enemies in England, who were busy in their intrigues with the French. To these misfortunes was added the loss of his queen, who died of small-pox (1694), leaving him sole ruler of the kingdom. Mary was possessed of many excellent qualities; and as a queen, her conduct was very exemplary. As a daughter, she has been deemed unfeeling and ungrateful; since she appeared to be without sympathy for her father's misfortunes. Due consideration must, however, be given to the peculiar circumstances in which she was placed, in passing a judgment on her character and conduct.

1694 **97. William III.**—The death of Mary revived
to the hopes of the friends of James II., and several
1702 conspiracies were formed in his favor; but they were unsuccessful. William carried on the war against France with great vigor, and gained several splendid victories (1695). This not only discouraged and humbled the French monarch, but frustrated the schemes of his enemies, the *Jacobites*, in England. At last, by the treaty of Ryswick,* peace was concluded with France, Louis consenting to resign several of his conquests, and to acknowledge William as king of England (Sept. 10, 1697).

* *Ryswick* is a small town in the western part of Holland, thirty-five miles southwest from Amsterdam.

96. Campaign in Flanders? Effect of disasters? Death of Mary? Her character?

97. Effect of Mary's death? William's conduct of the war? Consequences of his success? Peace of Ryswick?

98. As William had predicted, this treaty only proved a short truce, hostilities being soon renewed. Charles II., King of Spain, having died childless, bequeathed his crown to Philip, Duke of Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV. William at first acknowledged the new king of Spain, though with considerable reluctance and dissatisfaction; but the Emperor of Germany commenced a war to prevent this increase of the French monarch's power; and finally induced England and Holland to join him in a league, known in history as the "Grand Alliance" (Sept. 7, 1701). A few days after this, James II. died at St. Germain; and Louis at once proclaimed his son King of Great Britain and Ireland, thus violating the peace of Ryswick. Before, however, war was formally declared by Parliament, William met with an accident which proved fatal. He broke his collar-bone by a fall from his horse, and, in a little over a fortnight afterward, expired (March 8, 1702).

99. William was an able sovereign and statesman, as well as a most excellent general, being equally remarkable for sagacity in planning his campaigns and coolness and intrepidity in the time of battle. His frame was feeble, and he constantly suffered from ill health. To all but a very few personal friends, his manners were cold and distant; and therefore most of his subjects regarded him with dislike. England, indeed, was always to him a foreign country, which he governed with wisdom, but always so as to gratify his intense ambition and love of military glory. In literature and science he took very little interest. The establishment of a standing army and the accumulation of a great national debt* were some of the results of William's rule, and his expensive foreign wars.

* The first regular loan to the government was £1,200,000, the capital of the Bank of England, incorporated in 1693, having been projected by William Paterson, a Scotchman. At the peace of Ryswick, the National Debt of England amounted to twenty millions pounds. It is now more than eight hundred millions.

98. Renewal of hostilities? The Grand Alliance? Death of James II.? Its consequence? Death of William III.?

99. Character of William? Standing army and national debt? (See note.)

1702 100. Anne.—In accordance with the terms of the settlement, Anne, wife of Prince George of Denmark, and second daughter of James II., succeeded to the throne. She was thirty-eight years of age, and a member of the Church of England. In her first address to Parliament she expressed her desire that England should maintain its place in the Grand Alliance, and war was accordingly declared against France. In this war, known in history as the "War of the Spanish Succession," the Duke of Marlborough* had the chief command of the English and Dutch forces. During the first and second campaigns (1702-3), he made some conquests in Flanders; and in the next (1704), he defeated the French and Bavarians with great loss in the memorable battle of Blenheim† (*blen'hime*), in which the imperial troops were commanded by the famous Prince Eugene.‡ During the same year, the English fleet, under Sir George Rooke, captured Gibraltar; and this strong fortress has ever since remained in the possession of the British.

101. Being badly supported by the imperial army, Marlborough in the following year accomplished but little; but in the next (1706) he gained another brilliant victory over the French at Ramillies (*ram'e-leez*), and by means of it made almost a complete conquest of Flanders. The French also received the same year a terrible overthrow from Prince Eugene at Turin. The year 1708 was sig-

* John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough, was the son of a Cavalier, who was in high favor with the Duke of York; and he married a young lady who was the special friend and favorite of Anne. When, therefore, the latter ascended the throne, she was so much under the influence of Lady Marlborough and the Duke, her husband, that these were regarded as virtually almost the reigning sovereigns, Prince George of Denmark making no interference in English affairs. The correspondence of the queen and her favorite was of the most intimate and confidential character, and was carried on under the names of Mrs. Morley and Mrs. Freeman, the latter name being assumed by the Duchess.

† Blenheim is a small village in Bavaria, on the Danube, twenty-three miles west north-west of Augsburg. (See Progressive Map, No. 6.)

‡ Prince Eugene was born at Paris in 1663. He was the son of Eugene Maurice, Count of Soissons, and of Olympia Mancini, niece of Cardinal Mazarin. He entered into the service of the emperor, and soon gained great distinction, especially in the wars with the Turks. He died in 1736. He was small in stature, simple in dress and manner, and kind-hearted in his treatment to his soldiers.

100. Who was Anne? War of Spanish Succession? Victories of Marlborough Capture of Gibraltar?

101. Other victories of Marlborough? Effect of the battle of Malplaquet?

nalized by another great victory over the French at Oudenarde, which was followed, the next year, by the terrific battle of Malplaquet (*mal-plah'ka*), in which the allied army under Marlborough routed the French, but with the dreadful loss of 20,000 men. This decided victory finished the war in Flanders (1709).

102. While these events were in progress, there had been many other battles by sea and land. The Earl of Peterborough,* in conjunction with Sir Cloudesly Shovel, took Barcelona; and the former triumphantly traversed a large part of Spain, everywhere proclaiming Charles III. king (1705). On Shovel's return, a part of the fleet was wrecked on the Scilly Islands, and all on board of the admiral's ship perished (1707). Shovel was a commander of great merit, and had raised himself by his courage and talents from the station of a common sailor. The war lingered for several years, being at last closed by the treaty of Utrecht (*u'trekt*), in 1713. Previous to this, Marlborough was recalled; and being accused of dishonest practices in connection with the army contracts and accounts, was dismissed by the queen from all his employments. The Parliament also passed a vote of censure upon his conduct, whereupon he retired from England in disgust, and took up his abode in the Netherlands (1712).†

103. During the progress of the war, an important political event occurred at home. Disaffection existed in Scotland, and the Parliament of that country passed the "Act of Security," providing that the successor to the

* *Charles Mordaunt*, Earl of Peterborough, was one of the most brilliant men of his time, being equally distinguished for his skill as a naval and military commander. Few generals succeeded in accomplishing so much with such slender means, or displayed equal degree of genius and originality. He died in 1735.

† Marlborough returned to England in 1714, on the accession of George I., and was very enthusiastically received by the people. He died in 1722, possessing a reputation for military skill unsurpassed by that of any other English general. As a politician, however, he was insincere and unprincipled, and his avarice betrayed him into many mean and disgraceful actions. He is said to have been so illiterate, that he could not write or even spell his native language correctly.

102. Earl of Peterborough? Sir Cloudesly Shovel? Treaty of Utrecht? Disgrace of Marlborough? (See note.)

103. Disaffection in Scotland? Union of England and Scotland? Provisions contained in the Act of Union?

throne of England, on the queen's death, should not succeed to the throne of Scotland, unless under conditions that would secure the honor and independence of the latter country. This had reference to the settlement already effected* of the English crown on Sophia, wife of the elector of Hanover and grand-daughter of James I., to which arrangement there was much opposition in Scotland. Other proceedings tended to actual hostilities between the two countries, and demonstrated the necessity of a closer union between them. This was effected in 1707, by the passage of the "Act of Union," providing that the two kingdoms should be united under the name of Great Britain; that the crown should be settled on the Princess Sophia and her heirs, being Protestants; and that there should be but one Parliament of the united kingdom.

104. To this act the people of Scotland were compelled to submit; but it occasioned great discontent, and James, son of James II., taking advantage of the feeling, obtained from Louis an armament with which he sailed to Scotland, hoping to raise a general insurrection in his favor. On the Continent he was styled the Chevalier de St. George, but the English styled him the Pretender. The effort failed, several of the French vessels being captured by the English fleet under Admiral Byng (1707). James escaped, and for some years made no further effort to accomplish his object.

105. The year after the treaty of Utrecht, Queen Anne died, and with her terminated the main Stuart line (1714). She was of middle stature, of dark hair and complexion, and of a heavy, dull expression of features. Her amiable and confiding disposition won for her the title of "Good Queen Anne;" but it subjected her to the influence of wily favorites, who took advantage of her generosity. This was the

* By the "Act of Settlement" passed in the latter part of the reign of William III.

104. Effect of the Act of Union in Scotland? The Chevalier de St. George?
105. Death of Queen Anne? Her personal appearance and character? Mrs Masham?

case with the Duchess of Marlborough, who was supplanted by a Mrs. Masham, wife of an officer of the royal household, to whose advice and influence the queen submitted in the most important affairs of the government.

106. The reign of Queen Anne was not only distinguished for its military and political events, but was characterized to such an extent by the progress made in science and literature, that it has been styled the "Augustan Age of England." Addison, Steele, Bolingbroke, and Swift were the most eminent prose writers of this period; the most distinguished poet was Alexander Pope, who published during this period some of his most admired compositions. His poems are characterized by remarkable terseness and brilliancy of expression, and keenness of wit. Greenwich Hospital for disabled seamen, which was commenced a short time after the battle of La Hogue, by order of Queen Mary, was finished during the reign of Queen Anne.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE STUARTS.

107. Few nations have undergone so sudden and complete a change in their manners as occurred in England during this period. At the commencement of the century, when James I. ascended the throne, tranquillity, concord, and a general spirit of submission reigned throughout the kingdom; but in a few years all this gave place to faction, fanaticism, and a spirit of rebellion that almost amounted to frenzy. The virulence of party animosity was so great, that no marriages or alliances of any kind were permitted to take place between the members of the hostile factions. "Your friends, the Cavaliers," said a Parliamentarian to a Royalist, "are very dissolute and debauched." "True," replied the Royalist, "they have the infirmities of men; but

106. How was the reign distinguished? Celebrated writers? Alexander Pope? Greenwich Hospital?

107. Change in manners during this period? Party spirit? Characters imputed by the Cavaliers and Roundheads to each other?

your friends, the Roundheads, have the vices of devils—tyranny, rebellion, and spiritual pride.”

108. The Cavaliers were indeed gay in their manners and dress, being commonly men of birth and fortune; and they thus presented a marked contrast to the gloomy fanaticism of the Roundheads. The rigid severity of the Presbyterians and Independents permitted no recreations, except such as were afforded by the singing of hymns and psalms. Plays, dances, and all other merry-makings were sinful frivolities: horse-racing and bear-baiting—popular diversions of the time—were wicked enormities. Hence, Colonel Hewson with pious zeal marched his regiment into London and killed all the bears; on which incident Butler based a part of his burlesque poem, styled “Hudibras.”

109. During this period arose also the Quakers or Friends—a sect founded by George Fox, who was born in 1624. He was by trade a shoemaker; but feeling a strong impulse toward spiritual contemplations, he abandoned this occupation, and wandered about the country, preaching the doctrines which had been suggested to his mind during his solitary meditations. Proselytes were soon gained, and a sect formed, peculiar not only in their religious views, but in all their social habits and customs. Their zeal was soon tried by bitter persecution. They were thrown into prison,—sometimes into mad houses; they were pilloried; they were whipped; they were burned in the face; and their tongues bored with red-hot irons; but nothing could overcome their fortitude, or quench their enthusiasm.

110. Religious persecution marks the entire period, and led to that emigration which caused the establishment of most of the English colonies in North America. The Puritans fled to Massachusetts to escape the intolerance of

108. Character of the Cavaliers? Of the Roundheads?

109. The Quakers, their origin and peculiarities? How persecuted?

110. Religious persecution? Effect on the Puritans? On the Catholics? On the Quakers?

James I., and his son's arbitrary zeal. The Catholics founded an asylum from English persecution in Maryland; and the Quakers sought civil and religious freedom amid the wilds and wild men of Pennsylvania, after vainly seeking it among their former brethren in affliction, the Puritans of New England.

111. The superstition and ignorance of the age are clearly but terribly demonstrated by the prevailing belief in witchcraft—perhaps the most awful of popular delusions. After the last heretic had suffered death at the stake (1612), the fires were again lighted for the burning of those charged with this mysterious crime. This delusion was not confined to England, but spread over Europe, and extended to this country, where (especially at Salem) it raged with peculiar virulence. Between 1640 and 1660, it is said, some three or four thousand persons, in Europe, fell victims to this terrible delusion.

112. The *commerce and navigation* of England increased greatly during the peaceful period of Charles the First's reign. The trade to Guinea, the Levant, and the East Indies was quite large; immense quantities of cloth were annually exported to Turkey; and the English possessed almost the monopoly of the traffic with Spain. Interrupted during the civil wars, commerce soon recovered after the Restoration, and received additional encouragement from the losses sustained by the Dutch. Besides, the prevalence of democratical principles induced many of the gentry to educate their sons to mercantile pursuits, and thus commerce became more honorable than it had ever been at any previous time. The trade with the American colonies soon became considerable. At the close of the century, about 500 vessels were employed in this trade and with the West Indies. Of these, however, some were engaged in the

111. Witchcraft? How extensively believed in? Number punished for it?

112. Commerce and navigation? Causes of their prosperity? Trade with the American colonies? With the West Indies? Board of Trade?

slave-trade. A Board of Trade was established in 1670, its first president being the Earl of Sandwich.

113. Tea and coffee were introduced from the East,* but for a long time were so expensive that they were used only as luxuries. Ginger, cloves, pepper, and other spices were also brought from the East Indies, and tobacco became an extensive article of commerce. James I., who had a great dislike to its use, wrote a treatise against it, which he called "The Counterblaste to Tobacco," and in which he described it as "a custom loathsome to the eye, hateful to the nose, harmful to the brain, and dangerous to the lungs." Asparagus, artichokes, cauliflowers, and a variety of other vegetables were also introduced into England during this period. Whale-ships visited the shores of Greenland and Spitzbergen, and an extensive trade in whalebone was commenced, the whale previous to this having been valued only for its oil. Madras and Bombay became important centres of the East Indian trade, Java fell into the hands of the Dutch, but St. Helena became an English possession (1651).

114. Next to the capital, the chief seaport was Bristol, and Norwich the chief manufacturing town. Manchester, now the great centre of the cotton manufacture, was then a small town of about 6,000 inhabitants; Leeds, the great woollen mart, was but little larger; Sheffield and Birmingham were very small towns; and Liverpool, probably, did not contain 200 seamen. The population of London at the death of Charles II. is estimated at half a million. The streets, narrow, dirty, unpaved, and not lighted till the last year of that monarch's reign, were infested with ruffians and robbers, against whom the watchmen, generally old and feeble men, could afford no protection.

* Brought into Europe by the Dutch, but introduced in England as a beverage in 1666, by Lords Ossory and Arlington.

113. Introduction of tea and coffee? Spices? Tobacco? Asparagus, etc.? Whale-ships? The East India trade? St. Helena?

114. Important towns—their size at the period? Population of London? Its streets, etc.?

115. The first law for erecting turnpikes was passed in 1662. The roads were exceedingly bad, and travelling consequently very difficult. Goods were transported in wagons or on pack-horses; passengers, in stage-coaches, which were slow, lumbering vehicles, with great difficulty drawn through the mud which filled the roads. In 1669, a "Flying Coach" required thirteen hours to pass between Oxford and London—a distance of fifty-five miles. The inns were numerous and comfortable; but highwaymen, mounted and armed, infested the roads, and were often the confederates of the innkeepers. The post-bags were carried on horseback, at the rate of five miles an hour. The first regular post-office was established in 1635, for the more speedy communication of intelligence between England and Scotland.

116. The first English newspaper was printed during the session of the Long Parliament (1641), the Star Chamber having previously put effectual restraints upon the publication of intelligence. Liberty of the press was not enjoyed to any extent until 1695; when, the censorship of the press having been abolished, a number of newspapers were at once issued. They were, of course, very small, the entire sheet containing less matter than is now comprised in a single column of a large daily newspaper. King William and his ministers looked with great distrust upon this unprecedented freedom.

117. During this period, *manufacturing industry* began to assume that prominence in England which it now possesses. The cotton manufacture was commenced at Manchester, and the art of dying woollen cloth was introduced from Flanders, thus saving the nation vast sums of money. New manufactures were also established in iron, brass, silk,

115. Turnpikes and roads? Vehicles employed? The Flying Coach of 1669? The inns? Post-bags and post-office?

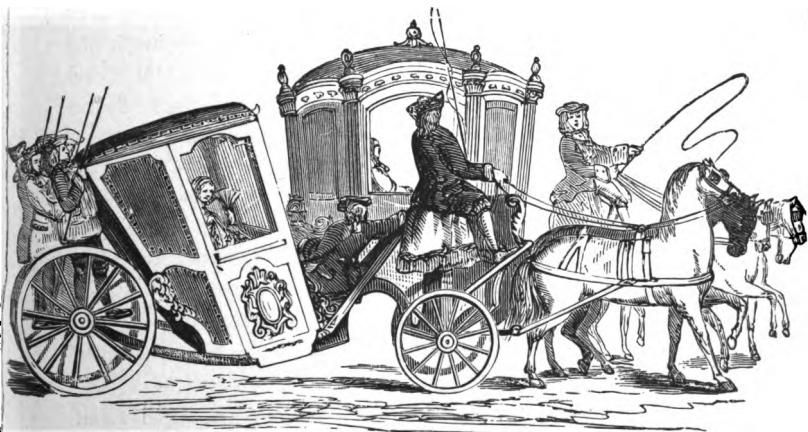
116. Newspapers, and the liberty of the press?

117. Manufacturing industry? What branches were introduced? Coinage? Change in private possessions? Coaches?



SEDAN CHAIR.

At the end of the seventeenth century, throughout the greater part of the eighteenth, and even in the nineteenth, the Sedan Chair was the vehicle almost always employed by the nobility in London in going to and from each other's houses and to Court.



COACHES—REIGN OF QUEEN MARY.

paper, etc. The increase of coinage is said to have amounted to upward of ten millions of pounds. A writer giving an account of this period, remarks, that "in 1688 there were on the 'Change more men worth ten thousand pounds than there were in 1650 worth one thousand; and that gentlewomen, in those earlier times, thought themselves well clothed in a serge gown, in which a chambermaid would, in 1688, be ashamed to be seen; and that besides the great increase of rich clothes, plate, jewels, and household furniture, coaches were in that time augmented a hundredfold."

118. The trade with India and the Levant led to the introduction of many articles of luxury, both in dress and furniture. Carpets, from being used only as covers for tables, came gradually into their present use; although during most of this period rushes or matting constituted the only covering used for floors. The manufacture of oil-cloth was commenced in 1660. The Duke of Buckingham introduced the making of glass from Venice. Prince Rupert, who was a zealous patron both of the useful and the fine arts, invented or improved the method of engraving called *mezzotint*. The glass bead called Prince Rupert's Drop derives its name from him.

119. The Stuarts were patrons of the fine arts. The value of pictures is said to have doubled in Europe in consequence of the competition of Charles I. and Philip IV. of Spain to obtain them. The distinguished Dutch painters, Van Dyke and Rubens, were invited into England, and received great attention from the Court. Inigo Jones and Sir Christopher Wren, the renowned architects, flourished during this period. The former built the beautiful banqueting-house at Whitehall; the latter is especially celebrated as the designer of St. Paul's. In London alone, fifty-one churches were erected from Wren's designs.

• 118. Effect of trade with India and the Levant? Carpets, etc.? Glass-making. Prince Rupert?

119. The fine arts? Inigo Jones? Sir Christopher Wren?

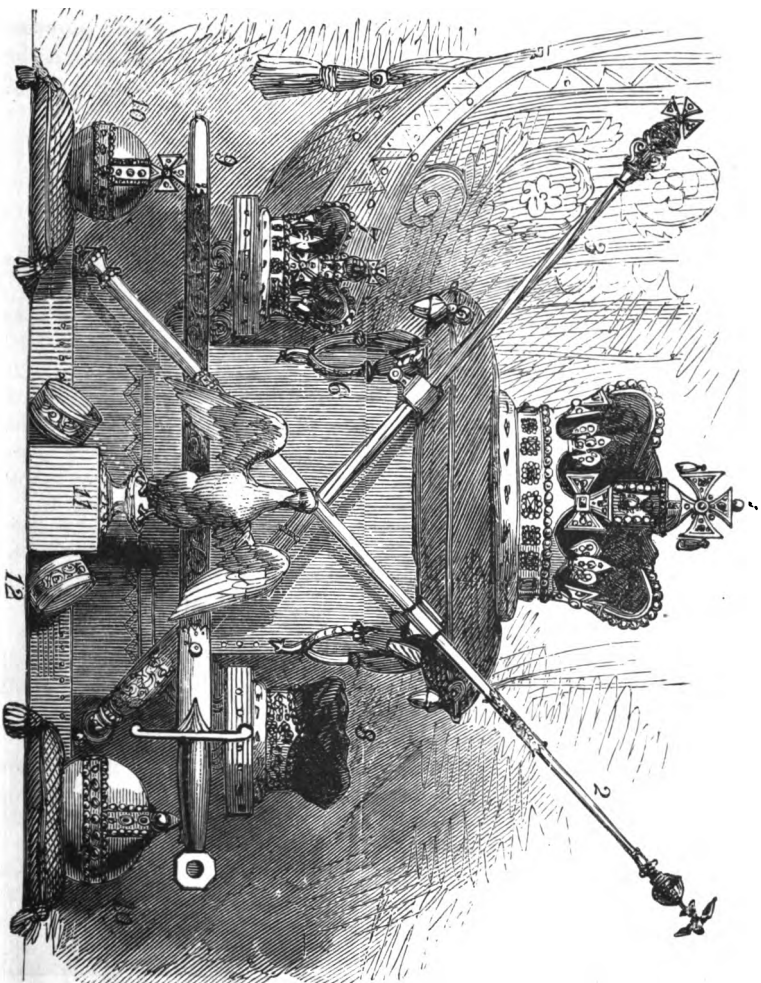
120. The Royal Society for the Promotion of Science was established during the reign of Charles II., and there arose in England a galaxy of great men, distinguished for their researches in every branch of human knowledge. Boyle, by improving the air-pump, was enabled to make many valuable experiments on the nature and properties of the air; Wallis and Hooke made some valuable improvements in optical instruments; Flamsteed and Halley were eminent astronomers—the former noted for the catalogue of stars which he made; the latter as the first to predict the return of a comet. Harvey also announced his famous discovery of the circulation of the blood (1619). Above all, however, towered the sublime genius of Newton, the discoverer of the law of universal gravitation.

121. The number of printing-presses in the kingdom was, however, very small. Books were therefore very scarce and dear; and consequently the booksellers' shops were thronged with readers, as there was a very general taste for the study both of science and literature. There were many distinguished writers besides those already referred to, among whom may be mentioned Sir William Davenant, who succeeded Ben Jonson as *Poet Laureate*;* Abraham Cowley, who at his death (1667) ranked as the first poet of England, and Robert Herrick, one of the most exquisite of the early English lyric poets. Thomas Fuller, the quaint and witty historian, divine, and essayist, whose writings abound in amusement and instruction; Jeremy Taylor, the eloquent and pious divine, noted especially as the author of the "Holy Living and Dying;" and Lord Clarendon, the famous statesman and historian, are the

* That is, "crowned with laurel," so called in imitation of the ancient practice of thus rewarding and distinguishing eminent poets. Traces of this appointment are found as early as the reign of Henry III. The office was made a patent one by Charles I., who fixed the salary at £200 a year, and a tierce of wine.

120. The Royal Society? What eminent physicists are mentioned? For what distinguished?

121. Printing-presses? Books? Popular taste? Eminent poets? Prose writers? Dramatists?



THE REGALIA OF ENGLAND.

12

1. The Crown of the Kings from Charles II.
2. The Sceptre with Dove.
3. The Sceptre with Cross.
4. Spurs used by the King at Coronation.
5. The Crown of Mary of Medina, used by the Queens from that Period.
6. Crown of Anne Boleyn.
7. Sword of Mercy, with Blunt Edge.
8. Symbol of Power.
9. Anointing Eagle.
10. Hincet
- 11.
- 12.

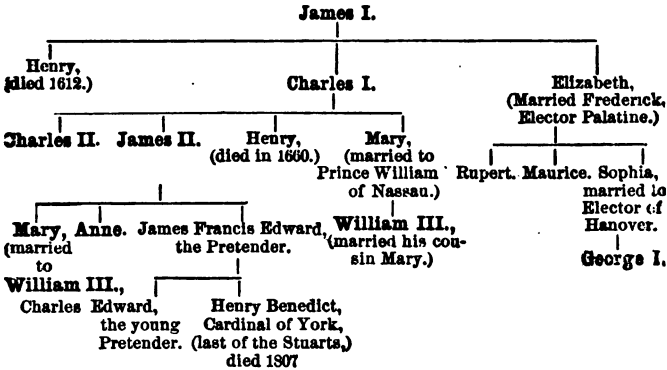
most celebrated among the prose writers of the period. Beaumont and Fletcher, and Philip Massinger, with Shakspeare and Jonson, are particularly eminent for their achievements in the drama.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

- 1603. James I.** Reigned 22 years.
 - " Conspiracy in favor of Arabella Stuart.
- 1605.** The Gunpowder Plot. Execution of Guy Fawkes
- 1607.** Settlement of Jamestown, in Virginia.
- 1611.** Translation of the Bible.
- 1618.** Execution of Sir Walter Raleigh.
- 1625. Charles I.** Reigned 24 years.
- 1627.** Disastrous expedition of the Duke of Buckingham.
- 1628.** Petition of Right.
 - " Assassination of the Duke of Buckingham.
- 1638.** Establishment of the Covenant in Scotland.
- 1640.** Parliament called after a cessation of 11 years, and again dissolved.
 - " Invasion of England by the Scots.
 - " Meeting of the "Long Parliament" (November 3).
- 1641.** Execution of the Earl of Strafford.
- 1642.** Commencement of the Civil War. The King sets up his standard at Nottingham.
 - " Battle of Edgehill.
- 1643.** Death of the patriot John Hampden.
- 1644.** Battle of Marston Moor.
- 1645.** Execution of Archbishop Laud.
 - " Battle of Naseby—signal defeat of the Royalists.
- 1647.** The King given up by the Scots.
- 1648.** Colonel Pride's Purge.
- 1649.** Execution of Charles (January 30).
 - " England proclaimed a Commonwealth.
- 1650.** Defeat of the Scots by Cromwell at Dunbar.
- 1651.** Battle of Worcester—Cromwell's "Crowning Mercy."
- 1652.** War with the Dutch. Victories gained by Admiral Blake.
- 1653.** Dissolution of the Long Parliament by Cromwell.
 - " Cromwell appointed "Lord Protector."

-
- 1658. Death of Cromwell (September 3). **Richard Cromwell**, Protector.
 - 1659. Richard Cromwell resigns the Protectorate.
 - 1660. **Charles II.** The Restoration. Reign of 25 years.
 - 1665. Defeat of the Dutch fleet by James, Duke of York.
" Great Plague at London.
 - 1666. Great victory over the combined Dutch and French fleets.
" Great fire at London.
 - 1667. Fall of Clarendon. "The Cabal."
" Publication of Milton's "Paradise Lost."
 - 1668. Triple Alliance between England, Holland, and Sweden.
 - 1673. The Test Act passed by Parliament.
 - 1678. The so-called "Popish Plot."
 - 1679. The Habeas Corpus Act passed.
 - 1683. The Rye-house Plot. Trial and execution of Lord Russell and Algernon Sidney.
 - 1685. **James II.** Reigned nearly 4 years.
" Battle of Sedgemoor. Execution of the Duke of Monmouth.
 - 1688. Trial of the seven bishops.
" Invasion of William, Prince of Orange. Flight and Abdication of James II.
 - 1689. **William and Mary** proclaimed king and queen.
 - 1690. Battle of the Boyne.
 - 1692. Massacre of Glencoe.
" Battle of La Hogue.
 - 1694. Death of Queen Mary.
 - 1694. **William III.**, sole King.
 - 1697. Treaty of Ryswick.
 - 1701. The Grand Alliance formed.
 - 1702. **Anne.** Reign of 12 years.
" War of the Spanish Succession.
 - 1704. Battle of Blenheim. Gibraltar taken.
 - 1706. Battle of Ramillies.
 - 1707. Union of England and Scotland.
 - 1708. Battle of Oudenarde.
 - 1709. Battle of Malplaquet.
 - 1711. Marlborough dismissed.
 - 1713. Treaty of Utrecht.
 - 1714. Death of Queen Anne.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE STUART FAMILY



REVIEW QUESTIONS.

- | | PAGE |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. Who was James I., and when did he become king of England?..... | 190 |
| 2. Give, as far as you can, the previous history of James..... | 149-159-190 |
| 3. What was the character of James?..... | 160-161-163-163-164 |
| 4. State what you can of Sir Walter Raleigh...147, Note 147-160-161-163-Note 165 | 165 |
| 5. Of the two formidable plots against James..... | 160-161 |
| 6. Of the American grants and settlements made during his reign..... | 161-164-165 |
| 7. Of Lord Bacon, Viscount St. Albans and Chancellor..... | 163 |
| 8. Of Prince Charles's journey to Spain, with its motive and result..... | 163-164 |
| 9. Give the history of the Puritans to this period..... | 146-147-152-164-165 |
| 10. Name, in order, the principal events in the reign of James I. | 160-165-215 |
| 11. Who was Charles I., and when did he become king of England?..... | 163-165 |
| 12. What trouble did Charles have with his first Parliament?..... | 165 |
| 13. Give the history of the Duke of Buckingham..... | 162-163-164 |
| 14. Of the two attempts to aid the Huguenots..... | 165-166 |
| 15. What troubles did Charles have with his second Parliament?..... | 166 |
| 16. By what policy and edict did Charles offend the Puritans?..... | 167-168 |
| 17. What was the Covenant, and what events led to it?..... | 167-168 |
| 18. Give the history of the Earl of Strafford..... | 167-169, Note p. 169-170 |
| 19. What illegal means for raising supplies did Charles resort to?.. Note p. 165-168 | 168 |
| 20. State what you can of the Star Chamber..... | 167, Note p. 167-170 |
| 21. Of Archbishop Laud..... | 167-168-169-170 |
| 22. Give an account of the affairs of Ireland at this time..... | 170 |
| 23. What were the immediate consequences of the rebellion in Ireland?.. | 170-171 |
| 24. Give a full account of Charles's contest with Parliament in the case of
Kimbolton, Hampden, and others..... | 171-172 |
| 25. State what you can of Hampden..... | 171, Note p. 171-172-173 |
| 26. How did matters between Charles and Parliament come to an issue?.. | 172-173 |

27. What preparations for hostilities were made on both sides ?.....	173
28. Mention several of the first hostile engagements.....	172
29. What aid did the Scots render Parliament ?.....	174-176
30. What course did the Scots afterward pursue ?.....	177
31. State what you can of Prince Rupert.....	173, Note p. 173-174-176-180-191
32. Of Sir Thomas Fairfax.....	173-174-175, Note p. 175-176
33. State how Charles I. fell into the hands of Parliament and of the army	176-177
34. Give an account of his confinement at the Isle of Wight.....	177
35. Give an account of his trial and death.....	178
36. What can you state of his character ?.....	178
37. Name, in chronological order, the principal events of his reign.....	215
38. Give an account of the early career of Oliver Cromwell....	174-176-176-177-178
39. Of his subsequent career up to the time of the Protectorship..	179-180-181-182
40. How did the Prince of Wales endeavor to save the life of his father ?.....	179
41. What were the first measures of the Commons after Charles's death ?.....	179
42. Give an account of the subjugation of Ireland.....	179-180
43. Of the war between the English and Dutch.....	181-182
44. State what you can of Admiral Blake	180-181-182-183
45. When was Cromwell appointed "Lord Protector ?".....	183
46. Give an account of the closing scenes of Cromwell's life.....	183
47. Describe his personal appearance and character.....	183-184
48. State all you can of Richard Cromwell.....	183-184
49. Who was Charles II., and when did he finally ascend the throne ?.....	179-183
50. Give an account of General Monk.....	180-181-184-185
51. What were the first acts in the reign of Charles II. ?.....	185-186
52. What was done, with the consequences, as regards the clergy ?.....	186
53. Give an account of the war with Holland.....	187-188-189
54. Of the Great Plague and Great Fire.....	189
55. Of the relations between Charles II. and Louis XIV	189-190
56. Of the war on the part of England and France against the Dutch.....	190-191
57. Name, in order, the principal events in the reign of Charles II.....	216
58. Who was James II., and when did he become king ?.....	193-194
59. Name, in chronological order, the principal events in his reign.....	216
60. What further can you state of James II. ?.....	198-199-201-202-203-204
61. What train of events made William and Mary monarchs of England ?..	197
62. Name, in chronological order, the principal events in their reign.....	216
63. What were the first troubles in William's reign ?.....	199-200
64. Give an account of William's troubles with the Scots.....	200
65. Give an account of his troubles in Ireland	200-201-202
66. Give an account of his troubles with France	201-202-203-204
67. Give a sketch of his life.....	190, Note p. 190-197-199-200-201-202-203-204
68. Who was "Good Queen Anne," and how did she become queen ?.....	197-205
69. What were the most important events in her reign ?.....	205-206-207-216
70. Give an account of the Duke of Marlborough..	205, Note p. 205-206, Note p. 206
71. Of the Puritans and Independents during the reign of the Stuarts.	160 — 209
72. What religious persecutions marked the period ?.....	164 — 210
73. What progress did commerce and navigation make ?.....	210-211-212
74. What progress was made in manufacturing industry ?.....	212-213
75. What, in the fine arts and the sciences ?.....	208-213-214
76. What, in literature, newspapers, and book-making ?..	164-194-199-203-212-214
77. Who were the distinguished writers of the period ?.....	193-194-203-214-215

NOTES.

1. Execution of Raleigh (p. 162, ¶ 5).—"Raleigh was arrested and committed to the Tower the moment he landed in England. Gondomar ceased not to call for vengeance, and James offered to give him up to the King of Spain; but that monarch said he would rather that Raleigh should be executed in England. The judges of the Court of Queen's Bench were therefore directed to proceed to execution against him on his former sentence. Raleigh in vain submitted to the court that the commission given him as commander, the power of life and death over others, amounted to a pardon; execution was granted, and the scholar, the writer, the warrior, and the statesman (for Raleigh was all of these) was led to a scaffold, in the 66th year of his age, in order to cement by his blood a marriage with a daughter of Spain. He mounted the scaffold with that courage which never deserted him. When he had taken off his gown and doublet, he asked the executioner to let him see the axe. He poised it, and running his thumb along the edge, said, with a smile, 'This is a sharp medicine, but it will cure all diseases.' The executioner was going to blindfold him, but he refused to let him, saying, 'Think you I fear the shadow of the axe, when I fear not the axe itself?' He gave the signal by stretching out his hands, and his head was struck off at two blows."—*Keighley's History of England*.

2. Character of James I. (p. 164, ¶ 10).—"James, though an able man, was a weak monarch; his quickness of apprehension and soundness of judgment were marred by his credulity in partialities, his childish fears and habit of vacillation. Eminently qualified to advise as a councillor, he wanted the spirit and resolution to act as a sovereign. His discourse teemed with maxims of political wisdom; his conduct frequently bore the impress of political imbecility. If, in the language of his flatterers, he was the British Solomon, in the opinion of less interested observers, he merited the appellation given him by the Duke of Sully, that of '*the wisest fool in Europe*.'"—*Lingard's History of England*.

3. The Cavaliers and the Roundheads (p. 171, ¶ 25).—"The Cavaliers, who affected a liberal way of thinking, as well as a gayety and freedom of manners inconsistent with puritanical ideas, were represented by the Roundheads as a set of abandoned profligates, equally destitute of religion and morals; the devoted tools of the court, and the zealous abettors of arbitrary power. The Cavaliers, on the other hand, regarded the Roundheads as a gloomy, narrow-minded, fanatical herd, determined enemies to kingly power, and to all distinction of ranks in society. But in these characters, drawn by the passions of the two parties, we must not expect impartiality; both are certainly overcharged. The Cavaliers were, in general, sincere friends to liberty and the English constitution; nor were republican and levelling principles by any means general at first among the Roundheads, though they came at last to predominate. It must, however, be admitted that the Cavaliers, in order to show their contempt of puritanical austerity, often carried their convivial humor to an indecent excess; and that the gloomy temper and religious extravagancies of the Roundheads afforded an ample field for the raillery of their facetious adversaries."—*Russell's Modern Europe*.

4. Execution of Charles I. (p. 178, ¶ 41).—"It was a calm, bright winter day. Soldiery, strongly ranked up, lined the streets around the palace of Whitehall, the matches of their muskets smoking in the clear, frosty air. A scaffold, hung

with black, stood at the end of the banqueting hall of the palace. Two men, dressed as sailors, and masked, stood by the axe. A window of the hall had been removed to give access to the scaffold. The king stepped out, for to this grim conclusion had it come at last; and all that he had now to do in this world was to die. The stormy journey, begun nine-and-forty years before in the chamber of Dunfermline Palace, whose ivy-curtained window is still to be seen, was to end here. He read a short speech calmly, and even coldly, knelt down and laid his head on the block, prayed silently for a minute, and then held out his hands as a signal to the executioner. The axe rose and fell, a gory head rolled on the scaffold, and Charles Stuart ceased from troubling."—*Mackenzie's History of Scotland*.

5. *Insincerity of Charles I.* (p. 178, ¶ 42).—"Cromwell, on a certain day, gets secret knowledge that a letter containing the king's real designs was to be dispatched to the queen, then abroad. At ten o'clock that night, a man not in the secret would come to the Blue Boar, in Holborn, carrying a saddle with the letter sewed up in its lining. A horse was ready waiting to take the bearer to Dover, whence a packet would sail for France. Cromwell took a friend with him; disguised as private soldiers, they two entered the tavern, sat down at a table, and had some beer. At ten o'clock the messenger appeared, carrying the saddle on his head. The two soldiers left their beer, went out, and seized the saddle, saying they had orders to search everything. They carried the saddle into the inn, ripped it open, and found the letter. Carefully closing the saddle again, and returning it to the messenger, they told him he was an honest fellow, and might go his way. And now for the letter. 'Be quite easy,' Charles wrote to his queen, 'as to the concessions which I may grant. When the time comes, I shall very well know how to treat these rogues, and instead of a silken garter I shall fit them with a hempen halter.'"—*Mackenzie's History of Scotland*.

6. *Character of Charles I.* (p. 178, ¶ 42).—"Charles I. was a young man of four-and-twenty when he succeeded his father on the throne. His foolish parent had brought him up in his own insane notions of kingship. Kings rule by Divine right. Kings are accountable to God alone. A king's mere will is above all law, and to resist it in any way is a crime. This was his creed—a creed destined to rouse the English and Scottish nations to 'actions of a very high nature, leading to untrodden paths.' But the fatal vice of his nature was his utter falsity. No mortal could trust his promises. Lying was with him a kingly right and prerogative. As a king, he was privileged to work himself out of every difficulty by dint of lies. If forced by necessity to yield and make some concession, he was entitled, as soon as the pressure was past, to cast all his promises to the winds."—*Mackenzie's History of Scotland*.

7. *Cromwell's Expulsion of the Long Parliament* (p. 183, ¶ 49).—"After several conferences, ending all in smoke, Cromwell's resolve broke into clear, bright flame, which all can see. He sent the contemptible remnant of the Long Parliament about its business. The Lord-General came down from Whitehall on that memorable morning, dressed very simply, as his custom was, in black clothes and gray worsted stockings, and, entering the House, sat down in his wonted place. He listened a while to the speaking, and then rose, hat off, to give his mind on the settlement of affairs. Elazing soon into anger, he clapped on his hat and strode up and down the floor, declaring that the members (only fifty-three were present) had sat there too long. Go they must. Twenty or thirty musketeers, armed with loaded snap-hances, entered at his command, and then the storm of words broke out in the fullest fury. Withering the members, now all huddled on their

feet, with words and looks of fire, he lifted the mace, emblem of the sacred authority of the Commons, and, with the contemptuous word 'bauble,' handed it to a soldier. Speaker Lenthall, disposed at first to be obstinate, left the chair, from which Harrison was going to pull him. The Rump vanished; and mace and key passed in a colonel's keeping from the locked-up chamber."—*Collier's History of England*.

8. **Character of Cromwell** (p. 184, ¶ 54).—"He was of a robust make and constitution, his aspect manly, though clownish. His education extended no further than a superficial knowledge of the Latin tongue, but he inherited great talents from nature. His character was formed of an amazing conjuncture of enthusiasm, hypocrisy, and ambition. He was possessed of courage and resolution that overlooked all dangers, and saw no difficulties. He dived into the characters of mankind with wonderful sagacity, whilst he concealed his own purpose under the impenetrable shield of dissimulation."—*Noble's Memoirs of Cromwell*.

9. **The Fire of London** (p. 188, ¶ 64).—"I saw the whole south part of the city burning, from Cheapside to the Thames, and along Cornhill (for it likewise kindled back against the wind, as well as forward), Tower street, Fenchurch street, Gracious (Grace-church) street, and so along to Baynard's castle, and was taking hold of St. Paul's church, to which the scaffolds contributed exceedingly. The conflagration was so universal, and the people so astonished, that from the beginning, I know not by what despondency of fate, they hardly stirred to quench it; so that there was nothing heard or seen but crying out and lamentation; running about like distracted creatures, without at all attempting to save their own goods; such a strange consternation was there upon them, so as it burned, both in breadth and length, the churches, public halls, exchanges, hospitals, monuments, and ornaments, leaping after a prodigious manner from house to house, and street to street, at a great distance from one to the other; for the heat, with a long set of fair and warm weather, had even ignited the air, and prepared the materials to conceive the fire, which devoured, after an incredible manner, houses, furniture, and everything. Here we saw the Thames covered with goods floating, all the barges and boats laden with what some had time and courage to save: as on the other, the carts, etc., carrying out to the fields, which for many miles were strewed with movables of all sorts, and tents erecting to shelter both people and what goods they could get away. Oh! the miserable and calamitous spectacle! such as haply the world has not seen the like since the foundation of it, nor to be outdone till the universal conflagration of it. All the sky was of a fiery aspect, like the top of a burning oven, and the light seen for above forty miles around about for many nights. God grant mine eyes may never see the like! who now saw above ten thousand houses all in one flame; the noise and crackling and thunder of the impetuous flames, the shrieking of women and children, the hurry of people, the fall of towers, houses, and churches, was like a hideous storm, and the air all about so hot and inflamed at last one was not able to approach it; so that they were forced to stand still and let the flames burn on, which they did for near two miles in length and one in breadth."—*Evelyn's Diary*.

10. **Colonel Kirke** (p. 195, ¶ 79).—"This ruffian had been a soldier of fortune at Tangiers, and had contracted, from his intercourse with the Moors, an inhumanity less known in European and in free countries. At his first entry into Bridgewater, he hanged nineteen persons without the least inquiry into the merits of their cause. As if to make a sport of the sufferings of his victims, he ordered a certain number to be executed while he and his company should drink the king's health, or that of Chief Justice Jeffreys. Observing their feet quiver in the agonies of death, he cried that he would give them music to their dancing, and he imme-

diately ordered the drums to beat and the trumpets to sound. By way of experiment, he ordered one man to be hung up three times, questioning him at each interval, whether he repented of his crime; but the man persisting he would engage in the same cause, Kirke ordered him to be hung in chains. This monster suffered his regiment to live at free quarters, and, instructed by his example, and encouraged by his exhortations, they committed all manner of excesses. By way of pleasantry, he called the military his *lambs*, an appellation which was long remembered with horror in the west of England. It is worthy of remark, that Kirke afterwards served in the army of the Prince of Orange."—*Hume's History of England*.

11. Judge Jeffreys (p. 195, ¶ 79).—"This sanguinary monster had already given a specimen of his character in many trials where he had presided, and he set out on the Western circuit with savage joy, as to a full harvest of blood and destruction. He began at Dorchester; and thirty delinquents being arraigned, he exhorted them, but in vain, to save him, by their confession, the trouble of trying them. And when twenty-nine of them were found guilty, he ordered them, as an additional punishment of their disobedience, to be led to immediate execution. Most of the other prisoners, terrified with this example, pleaded guilty; and no less than two hundred and ninety-two received sentence at Dorchester; of these, eighty were executed. Exeter was the next scene of his cruelty; two hundred and thirty-three were there tried, of whom a vast number were condemned and executed. He also opened his commission at Taunton and Wells; and every-where carried consternation along with him. On the whole, besides those butchered by Kirke, two hundred and fifty-one are computed to have fallen by the hand of this merciless tiger. The whole country was strewed with the heads and limbs of the insurgents. Every village almost beheld the dead carcass of a wretched inhabitant. England had never known such a carnage. Dr. Burnet says that no fewer than six hundred persons were hanged in consequence of Monmouth's rebellion. James applauded these proceedings, and he took pleasure to relate them in his drawing-room to foreign ministers, and at his table, calling it '*Jeffreys's Campaign*.' Upon his return Jeffreys was created a baron and peer of the realm."—*Hume's History of England*.

12. William and his Friend Bentinck (p. 197, ¶ 82).—"While the United Provinces were struggling for existence against the French power, the young Prince William, on whom all their hopes were fixed, was seized by the small-pox. That disease had been fatal to many members of his family, and at first wore, in his case, a peculiarly malignant aspect. The public consternation was great. The streets of the Hague were crowded from daybreak to sunset by persons anxiously asking how his Highness was. At length his complaint took a favorable turn. His escape was attributed partly to his own singular equanimity, and partly to the intrepid and indefatigable friendship of Bentinck. From the hands of Bentinck alone William took food and medicine. By Bentinck alone William was lifted from his bed, and laid down in it. 'Whether Bentinck slept or not while I was ill,' said William to Temple, with great tenderness, 'I know not. But this I know, that, through sixteen days and nights, I never once called for anything but that Bentinck was instantly at my side.' Before the faithful servant had entirely performed his task, he had himself caught the contagion. Still, however, he bore up against drowsiness and fever till his master was pronounced convalescent. Then, at length, Bentinck asked leave to go home. It was time; for his limbs would no longer support him. He was in great danger, but recovered, and, as soon as he left his bed, hastened to the army, where, during many sharp campaigns, he was ever found, as he had been in peril of a different kind, close to William's side."—*Macaulay's History of England*.

SECTION III.

THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

Extending from the Accession of George I. (1714) to the present time.

1714 1. **George I.** was the son of the Duke of Brunswick, Elector of Hanover, and of Sophia, grand-
1727 daughter of James I. To this king England seemed always a foreign country, for the people and institutions of which he had very little sympathy or regard. He was fifty-four years of age when he commenced to reign in England, which on his accession became united to Hanover. The Jacobites excited an insurrection in Scotland in order to place on the throne James, the Pretender, who had been promised important aid by Louis XIV. (1715). The death of that monarch, however, disappointed the hopes of James; and he landed in Scotland without men or money.

2. The Earl of Mar held the Highlands with 10,000 clansmen, and the Earl of Derwentwater made an effort to rouse the people of Northumberland in favor of James; but at the first approach of the royal army, under the Duke of Argyle, the Pretender and Mar fled to France, leaving their adherents to their fate. Derwentwater and some others were taken and executed, the estates of many were confiscated, and more than a thousand were banished to North America. A short time afterward a treaty of alliance was entered into between England and France; and, in consequence of it, the Pretender was obliged to seek an asylum elsewhere. He subsequently resided principally at

1. Who was George I.? What is said of him? What caused an insurrection in Scotland?

2. Who were the leaders? What was the result? What punishments were inflicted? What further is said of the Pretender?

Rome, and soon after contracted a marriage with the daughter of John Sobies'ki, late King of Poland.

3. Through her connection with Hanover, England was embroiled with Sweden and Spain. Certain Danish provinces had been ceded to George, which Charles XII., King of Sweden, claimed as his own; and on his return to his country after his long exile in Turkey, he threatened hostilities unless they were restored. Unable to cope with the English fleet in the Baltic, he entered into a scheme with Cardinal Alberoni, prime-minister of Spain, to place the Pretender on the English throne; and accordingly, the latter visited Madrid and was publicly recognized as King James III. (1719). Charles was to furnish a large army to invade Scotland, and the Spanish fleets were to attack England. The defeat, however, of the Spanish fleet by Admiral Byng, and the death of Charles XII., rendered the whole scheme abortive.

4. One of the most noted occurrences of this reign was the South Sea scheme. This was the project of a corporation, called the South Sea Company, to pay off the national debt, then about £53,000,000, by profitable mercantile enterprises with the Spaniards in South America. The government gave its consent to the scheme, and allowed its stock to be exchanged for the company's stock, which, in consequence of the rage for speculation pervading all classes of the people, reached the extraordinary premium of nine hundred per cent. The bubble, however, soon burst, and occasioned for a time wide-spread embarrassment and ruin (1720). The king and his prime-minister, Lord Stanhope, were charged with having connived at this fraud; and the latter, in the excitement of his vindication before the House of Lords, burst a blood-vessel, and died in a few hours (1721). He was succeeded by Sir Robert

3. What caused a difficulty with Sweden? What plan did Charles XII. adopt? What caused its failure?

4. South Sea scheme? Effect of the rage for speculation? What caused the death of Lord Stanhope? By whom was he succeeded?

Walpole, who continued thereafter to direct the government for more than twenty years.

5. The king was much attached to Hanover, and made frequent visits thither. His death occurred in Germany in 1727. His queen, Sophia Dorothea, had died a few months before, after a captivity of more than thirty years, in a gloomy castle near Hanover, in which she had been imprisoned by her husband on a charge of infidelity.* George I. never gained the regard of his subjects. He was sullen and reserved; and, having but little knowledge of the English language, appeared to great disadvantage in contrast with those who had been trained in the elegant and literary society of the preceding reign. He was succeeded by his son, who was also named George. Sir Isaac Newton, the renowned mathematician, astronomer, and physicist, flourished during this and the three preceding reigns, dying in 1727, at the age of eighty-five. His greatest discovery, that of the law of gravitation, was made during the reign of Charles II.

1727 6. **George II.** succeeded his father at the age of **10** forty-four years. Sir Robert Walpole continued to **1760** administer the government, having been retained in office through the friendship of Queen Caroline, whose influence over the king was so great that until her death, in 1737, she may be said to have ruled England. She was remarkable for the grace and dignity of her manners, and her conduct was characterized by kindness of heart, good sense, and propriety. Walpole's administration was one of peace; but his parliamentary tactics depended for success upon bribery and corruption. By bestowing titles of honor,

* George I. was journeying toward Hanover, with his favorite, the Duchess of Kendal, when a letter was thrown into his coach. It was addressed to him by his wife, who in it protested her innocence, upbraided him for his cruel treatment of her, and it is said summoned him to meet her within a year before the divine tribunal. The alarm occasioned by this letter brought on a fit of apoplexy of which he died.

5. Death of the king? Queen Sophia? Character of George I.? His successor? Sir Isaac Newton?

6. What is said of George II.? Sir Robert Walpole? Queen Caroline? Walpole's administration?

places of profit, or sums of money, he always succeeded in commanding a majority in Parliament.

7. A contest with Spain occurred during his administration, brought on by a dispute with respect to the boundary of the American colony Georgia, which had been settled by General Oglethorpe* in 1733, and named after the king; and by the efforts made by Spain to check the trade between England and the Spanish colonies in America, British ships being stopped on the ocean, and searched by the Spaniards. Admiral Vernon, who was sent out with a fleet to attack the Spanish settlements, captured Porto Bello, on the Isthmus of Darien (1739). He afterward attacked Carthagena,† the strongest of these settlements; but, after destroying most of its forts, was compelled to retire (1741). Another squadron, under Commodore Anson,‡ took and destroyed one of the Spanish cities in Peru, and together with other prizes, captured an East India galleon, carrying a cargo valued at £300,000. Anson was engaged in this expedition nearly four years, returning by way of the Cape of Good Hope, thus completing the circumnavigation of the globe (1740-4).

8. Meanwhile, England had become involved in a continental war. On the death of Charles VI., Emperor of Germany (1740), Louis XV., King of France, setting aside the hereditary claims of Maria Theresa (*te-re'zah*), the emperor's daughter, to the Austrian States, conferred them upon the Elector of Bavaria, who was raised to the imperial throne. The young and beautiful princess, taking refuge among the Hungarians, appeared in their assembly

* Born in 1688; served with Prince Eugene as aid-de-camp. He made a vigorous defence of Georgia against the Spaniards in Florida, and afterward served against the rebels in Scotland. He died in 1785, at the advanced age of ninety-seven.

† Carthagena, or Cartagena, is a considerable town on the northern coast of South America, now in the United States of Colombia.

‡ One of the most distinguished of England's naval officers. Besides the exploit referred to, he performed several others which reflected upon him great glory. His services were rewarded by a title, by George II. Lord Anson died in 1762, immensely popular, not only on account of his great achievements, but by reason of his simple manners and artless character. It was jocosely said of him that he had been round the world, but never in it.

7. War with Spain? Georgia? What did Admiral Vernon accomplish? Commodore Anson? (See note.)

8. What led to the War of the Austrian Succession? Who resigned?

with her infant in her arms; and they answered her appeal by proclaiming her queen, and enthusiastically drew their swords to sustain her cause. England, also supporting the cause of the Austrian princess,* was involved in a war with France. This war is called in history the "War of the Austrian Succession." Sir Robert Walpole, being opposed to the interference of England in this war, resigned his office (1742).

9. George II., who had served under Marlborough, joined the allied army of English and Germans, to aid in the defence of the Hungarian queen, and took part in the battle of Dettingen† (*det'ting-en*), which resulted in the defeat of the French (1743). This was the last occasion on which a king of England has commanded an army in person. The next year an indecisive action was fought between the English fleet, under Admiral Matthews, and the combined French and Spanish fleets, off Toulon. This was followed by a campaign in Flanders, in which the allies (England, Holland, and Austria), under the Duke of Cumberland, second son of George II., were defeated by the French under Marshal Saxe (*sax*) in the memorable battle of Fontenoy‡ (*fon-ta-nwah'*) (1745.) The operations of the war also extended to the American colonies; and Louisburg, an important French fortress, called from its strength, the "Gibraltar of America," was captured (1745).

10. After the battle of Fontenoy, the English troops were called from the continent to defend their own country against an invasion and rebellion on behalf of the exiled Stuarts. The year previous, the French had collected a fleet which

* This elector of Bavaria was the son of him who had fought against Marlborough, and was thus viewed as an hereditary enemy of England; and, moreover, his success, if it was thought by the English statesmen, would imperil the safety of the European states, inasmuch as it would increase the influence of France, and thus destroy the "balance of power."

† *Dettingen* is a village of Bavaria, on the Main river, east of Frankfurt.

‡ *Fontenoy* is a village of Belgium, forty-three miles southwest from Brussels, about half-way between Oudenarde and Malplaquet. (See Map of France, p. 55.)

9. Battle of Dettingen? What naval action occurred? What campaign followed? Battle of Fontenoy? What American fortress was taken?

10. Attempt of the Stuarts to regain the throne? Invasion by Charles Edward? What was done by him?

was to aid an army under Marshal Saxe in the invasion of England; but, the fleet having been dispersed in a storm, the attempt was abandoned. Charles Edward, son of the Pretender, however, determined to make an effort to recover the English throne for his father. He sailed for Scotland with a few friends, and landed near Inverness, where he was soon joined by several Highland chieftains with their clans, among whom was the celebrated Cameron of Lochiel (*lok-heel'*). Having taken Edinburgh and some other of the Scottish towns, he caused his father to be proclaimed King of Scotland under the title of James VIII. (1745).

11. Soon after this he met the royal forces, under Sir John Cope, at Preston Pans, and defeated them with great loss. This alarmed the English; and George II. having hurriedly returned from Hanover, a considerable force was collected, and placed under the Duke of Cumberland, second son of the king. Meanwhile, Charles, after some delay, crossed the border, and marched within one hundred and thirty miles of London, occasioning a very great panic in that city, the king himself preparing for flight. Charles's officers, however, refused to proceed; and he was compelled, though with great reluctance, to retreat. The royal army pursued, and an engagement took place at Culloden, in which the Pretender and his adherents were entirely defeated (1746). [*See Note 1, end of Section.*]

12. This was the last battle fought on the soil of Great Britain, and closed the long struggle made by the Stuarts to regain their lost throne. Charles wandered in disguise through the country for five months; but at last, though his secret was intrusted to several hundred persons, and a reward of £30,000 had been offered for his capture, he succeeded in effecting his escape to France.* Many of those

* Charles Edward spent the remainder of his life principally at Rome, bearing the title of Duke of Albany. In his later years he gave himself up to intemperance, and died of apoplexy.

11. What victory did he gain? The effect of it? What led to the battle of Culloden? Its result?

12. What is said of the battle? Escape of Charles? Punishment inflicted upon his adherents?

engaged in this rebellion were condemned, and either executed or transported. Among those who suffered death were Lord Lovat,* and some of the other Scottish nobles.

13. A treaty of peace was made with France at Aix-la-Chapelle (1748), by which Maria Theresa's claim to the throne was confirmed; but the war was soon afterward renewed in consequence of disputes respecting the boundary of the French and English possessions in North America. In 1755, General Braddock was defeated by the French in an expedition against Fort du Quesne (*doo-kane'*), and the survivors owed their escape mainly to the courage and skill of George Washington, then an officer in the Virginia militia. General Johnson gained a victory over the French and Indians at the head of Lake George, Baron Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), the French commander, being wounded and taken prisoner. An expedition under Colonel Monckton (*monk'tun*), the same year, drove the French from Nova Scotia (1755); and Louisburg was taken a second time, after a siege of one month (1758). In 1759, General Wolfe succeeded in reaching the "Plains of Abraham" with his army, and defeated the French forces under the Marquis of Montcalm (*mont-kam'*). Both generals were killed. Quebec capitulated after this victory, which virtually gave the possession of Canada to the English.

14. Meanwhile, England had taken part in the famous "Seven Years' War," brought on by a coalition of France and several of the other European states against Frederick the Great, of Prussia. England, principally with the ob

in 1788. Nineteen years afterward, his brother Henry, Cardinal of York, the last male heir of the Stuart line, expired. In St. Peter's, at Rome, a monument by Canova still bears the three empty titles, *James III., Charles III., Henry IX.*, of England.

* Simon Fraser, Lord Lovat, had been for some time a noted character. Selfish and treacherous, he appears to have been actuated only by the desire of aggrandising himself. In Queen Anne's reign he had engaged in a scheme to gain money by revealing a pretended plot in favor of the exiled Stuarts. In 1715 he joined the government side; and in 1746 he endeavored to play a double game, sending out his clan under the command of his son, while he pretended to support the government.

13. What treaty was made? Renewal of the war? What events occurred in North America?

14. What European war had broken out? Its cause? Connection of England with it? Administration of William Pitt? Ill success of the Duke of Cumberland? Events of the next year?

ject of defending the electorate of Hanover, formed an alliance with the Prussian monarch; and, under the able administration of William Pitt, afterward Earl of Chatham, the government displayed great vigor and enterprise. The want of success, however, of the Duke of Cumberland, enabled the French to overrun Hanover (1757), at which the king was so indignant, that he treated his son with the greatest coldness. Offended at this treatment, the victor of Culloden resigned all his offices, and went into retirement. Hanover was recovered the next year, and important advantages were gained by Frederick.

15. The French having threatened to invade England, Pitt sent an expedition against Cherbourg (*sher'burg*), which was captured, and a large quantity of ammunition and other stores destroyed. Some of the other French ports were also attacked, but not with the same success (1758). The English fleets, under Admirals Rodney, Boscaw'en, and Hawke, gained some signal victories during the following year; and the army, sent by Pitt into Germany to co-operate with the Prussians, defeated the enemy with great loss in the battle of Minden;* where the victory would have been still more decided had Lord Sackville, who commanded the cavalry, obeyed the instructions given him to charge the routed army. For this failure he was dismissed by Pitt from all his employments (1759).

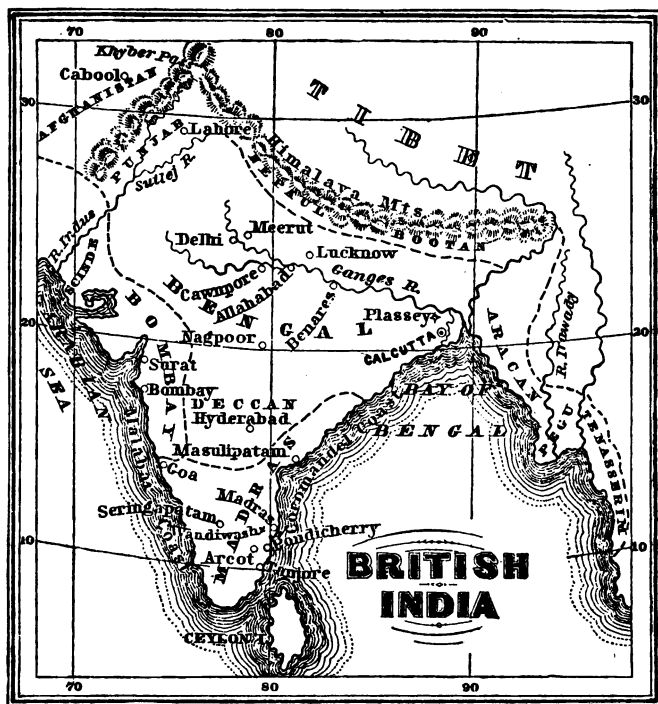
16. These events, combined with the glorious achievements of Wolfe in America, shed a peculiar lustre over the close of this reign. George II. died suddenly the following year at the advanced age of seventy-seven (Oct. 25, 1760). Although, during the whole of his reign, he remained thoroughly German in character, he was by no means as unpopular as his father had been; for his subjects admired

* Minden is a strongly fortified town of Prussia, near the frontier of Hanover.

15. Expeditions against the French ports? What admirals gained victories? Battle of Minden?

16. What shed a lustre on the close of George II.'s reign? His death? His character? Successor?

his courage, skill, and activity as a soldier, while his good nature was such as to excite their affection and esteem. Hence, with the exception of the partisans of the Stuarts, all were well inclined toward him; and the foreign wars in which he engaged, although not undertaken in the interest of England, were borne by the people with patience. His son Frederick having died some years before (1751), he was succeeded by his grandson George—the first of the Brunswick kings that was a native of England.*



17. Conquests in India.—The reign of George II. is particularly memorable for the conquests made by the

* See Note 2, end of the Section.

17. For what is this reign distinguished? Difficulties in India? Fort St. George? Aurangzebe?

English in India. Their first settlements had been compelled to struggle against the jealous opposition of the Portuguese and Dutch; but at this time they had to contend with a more powerful rival—the French. During the war of the Austrian Succession, Fort St. George, at Madras, was captured by the French, but was given back by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. The struggle soon recommenced, the French allying themselves with the native princes against the English. Previous to this time, Au-rung-zêbe', the Great Mogul, who had usurped the imperial power at Delhi (1658), had raised his empire to the highest pitch of splendor and greatness; but under his feeble and dissolute successors it fell rapidly to pieces, and the viceroys of the provinces usurped the power of independent rulers.

18. Of these the Nabob of Arcot, the capital of the Carnatic,* alone remained friendly to the English; and he, being attacked by the French and their Indian allies, was on the point of surrendering, when Robert Clive,† by one of the most daring expeditions recorded in history, restored the influence of his countrymen. With a band of 500 men, most of them Sepoys, or native soldiers, he attacked and took Arcot, a city of 100,000 inhabitants, and subsequently repulsed the French, who made a strong effort to regain its possession (1751). A few years later, when Calcutta had been taken by the nabob Su-ra'jah Dow'lah, and the English prisoners confined and stifled in the garrison

* The Carnatic was one of the old divisions of India, extending one hundred and ten miles along the east coast, and consisting of eight of the present districts of the Presidency of Madras. Its greatest breadth was about one hundred and ten miles.

† Clive was one of the greatest of the warriors and statesmen who took part in the conquest of India. He was at first employed as a clerk in the civil service at Madras, but joyfully abandoned the pen for the sword on the breaking out of the troubles with the French in 1751. On his return to England in 1760, he was made Baron of Plassey, and lived in great splendor on the immense wealth which he had acquired in the East. The East India Company's affairs having become deranged, from the dishonesty and inefficiency of its servants, he was chosen, in 1764, to set them right. This was accomplished within a very brief period; and he again returned to England in 1767. Soon afterward his conduct was brought under parliamentary censure, and Clive, smarting with the disgrace, committed suicide (Nov. 22, 1774).

18. What was accomplished by Robert Clive? Where is Arcot? Madras? Calcutta? (See map of British India.)

prison, called the "Black Hole" (1756),* Clive, with his accustomed energy and dispatch, fitted out an expedition at Madras, and marching to Calcutta, regained possession of the town and the English fort (1757).

19. Assisted by Admiral Watson, he prosecuted the war in Northern India with the utmost vigor and daring; and in the memorable battle of Plassey, completely defeated the native army, 50,000 strong, under Surajah Dowlah, with a force of about 3,000 (June 23, 1757). This splendid victory broke the power of the native princes in Bengal, and gave that province to the English. Three years afterward, another victory was gained by the English under Sir Eyre Coote,† at Wan'di-wash; and Pondicherry (*pon-de-she'r'ry*), some months later, having been taken from the French, British supremacy was likewise established in the Carnatic (1760). These great achievements were announced in England shortly after the death of George II.

20. During this and the preceding reign, English literature was enriched by the publication of many works of genius. *Daniel Defoe* wrote his principal work, "Robinson Crusoe" (1719); *Jonathan Swift*, Dean of St. Patrick's, Dublin, noted for his eccentricity and the bitterness of his satires, published "Gullivers Travels" (1726) and many other works showing great power and fertility; *James Thomson*, the poet of nature, gave to the world the "Seasons" (1726-30); *Isaac Watts* published "Divine Songs for Children;" *Bishop Butler* wrote the "Analogy of Religion to Nature," a work greatly celebrated for its

* The prisoners, one hundred and forty-six in number, including one woman, were thrust into this dreadful dungeon, only eighteen feet by fourteen, with two small windows, and shut up there during a night of intense heat. The sufferings of these wretched beings, from thirst and suffocation, were terrible; and in the morning only twenty-three remained alive, among whom was the Englishwoman. This dreadful outrage excited universal indignation against the monster by whom it was perpetrated.

† Sir Eyre Coote had served with distinction against the rebels in Scotland, in 1745. He was present at the battle of Plassey, and greatly distinguished himself. He afterward served as commander-in-chief in India, where he died in 1783. A monument was erected to him in Westminster Abbey.

19. Other achievements of Clive? Effect of the battle of Plassey? How was the control of the Carnatic gained? Sir Eyre Coote? (See note.)

20. English literature? What authors flourished during the reign of the first two Georges? Mention their principal works.

justness of reasoning; and *Richard Bentley*, the profound classical scholar and critic, published many learned dissertations, with reference to one of which Swift wrote the famous "Battle of the Books." The "Grave," by *Robert Blair*, is also a noted work of this period, being greatly prized as one of the finest specimens of blank verse of the century.

1760 **21. George III.**—This prince ascended the throne ¹⁰ at a time of great rejoicing for the glorious victories **1820** gained in North America and India. Wolfe in one, and Clive in the other, had shed the most resplendent lustre on the English arms; but their successes were in great part due to the able administration of the "Great Commoner," as the people were fond of styling the illustrious prime minister, William Pitt. The French being now seriously embarrassed by their defeats, entered into an alliance with Spain, called the Family Compact, since the kings were all of the Bourbon family (1761). Pitt, on learning this, urged an immediate declaration of war against Spain; but being overruled in the council, resigned, and was succeeded by the Earl of Bute, the former tutor and now the especial favorite of the king. [Note 3.]

22. In the same year the king married Charlotte, a German princess, of Mecklenburg Strelitz, then only seventeen years of age, but intelligent and amiable. She had won, it is said, the affections of George while Prince of Wales, by a spirited letter which she wrote to Frederick the Great, and in which she besought him to stop the ravages of war then desolating her own and other German states, the people suffering inconceivable miseries from the cruelty of the merciless Prussian soldiery.

23. Notwithstanding the retirement of Pitt, the war

21. What is said of the time of George III.'s accession? The "Great Commoner?" What caused his resignation? His successor?

22. Marriage of the king? Princess Charlotte's letter to Frederick the Great?

23. War with Spain? What captures were made? Peace of Paris? What led to Bute's resignation? His successor?

with Spain could not be avoided, and was entered into with spirit. Several of the islands of the West Indies were captured, and the city of Havana taken, after a desperate siege. The Philippine Islands were also captured, and many rich Spanish prizes made on the ocean. These successes, however, were of little avail; for Bute, alarmed at the vast increase of the national debt (now amounting to one hundred and forty millions sterling), consented to a treaty, which was made at Paris (Feb. 10, 1763), thus terminating the "Seven Years' War." The restoration of Havana and some of the other conquests made this treaty very unpopular; and Bute, frightened by the storm of execration which assailed him, resigned his office, and was succeeded by George Grenville (1763).

24. The statements made by the king in his speech from the throne having been violently attacked in a scurrilous journal styled the "North Briton," and edited by John Wilkes, a member of Parliament, Wilkes was arrested and thrown into the Tower. He was, however, discharged on account of his privilege as a member of Parliament; but at the next session, the Commons decided that the publication was "a false, scandalous, and malicious libel," and ordered it to be burnt by the hangman; and Wilkes himself was expelled from the House by a unanimous vote. Nevertheless, the prosecution was impolitic, Wilkes being supported by the people, on account of their intense dislike of the administration; and subsequently he was again returned to Parliament, and afterward elected Lord Mayor of London.

25. The most impolitic measure of the government was the passage of the celebrated "Stamp Act," for the purpose of raising a revenue by taxing the American colonies (1765). The people of the colonies resisted the measure on the ground that they were not represented in the Eng-

24. John Wilkes and the North Briton? Action of Parliament? Result of the prosecution of Wilkes? Cause of his popularity?

25. The Stamp Act? Why opposed by the colonists? Why repealed? What other law was passed? Its effect?

lish Parliament, and "that taxation and representation, by the British constitution, are inseparable." Pitt attacked the measure with great vigor and eloquence; and, Grenville having resigned, the act was repealed (1766). The next year the ministry again attempted to compel the colonies to assist in raising supplies for the English government, imposing a tax upon tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors. A storm of opposition was again excited by this measure, and soon afterward the duties were withdrawn from all articles except tea, which was taxed at the rate of three pence per pound (1770).

26. This was not satisfactory to the people of the colonies; since they contended not against the amount of taxes imposed but against the principle, which involved the right to tax them to an unlimited extent without their consent. By an arrangement made by the prime minister, Lord North, the East India Company, who had large stores of tea in their warehouses, sent several shiploads to America, to be sold to the colonists on easy terms, but still liable to the duty. This occasioned increased opposition. The tea for New York and Philadelphia was sent back to London, without being landed; in Charleston, it was stored in cellars, where it perished; and in Boston, a party of men, disguised as Indians, boarded the ships, broke open the chests of tea, and emptied their contents into the water (Dec. 1773).

27. In retaliation for this act of bold defiance, the English government passed the Boston Port Bill, by which that port was closed to all commerce, and the seat of the colonial government of Massachusetts was removed to Salem. The people of Salem, unwilling to thrive at the expense of their neighbors, offered the free use of their wharves to the Boston merchants; and Marblehead, fifteen

26. Why was the repeal unsatisfactory? Why were large quantities of tea sent to America? What was done with it?

27. The Boston Port Bill? Conduct of the people of Salem? Of Marblehead? What other act was passed by Parliament?

miles distant from the despoiled town, made a similar offer. Other acts, which were considered gross violations of the charters and rightful privileges of the colonies, were also passed by Parliament. Among these was one for quartering the king's troops on the colonists.

28. The resistance which the Americans made to these obnoxious measures was encouraged by many of the leading men in Parliament; among whom were William Pitt, now the Earl of Chatham, Edmund Burke, and Charles Fox. The ministry, however, were determined to reduce the colonies to obedience, and thus was brought on the war of the American Revolution, which commenced at *Lexington*, Massachusetts (April 19, 1775). This was soon followed by the battle of Bunker Hill (more properly Breed's Hill), in which the American militia, though with great difficulty, were driven from their position, and compelled to retreat (June 17). A few weeks later, George Washington, by appointment from the Colonial Congress, assumed command of the army; and in the month of March following, compelled the British army, under General Howe, to evacuate Boston (1776).

29. The same year the thirteen colonies, through their representatives in Congress, declared their independence (July 4), a short time after which Lord Howe arrived with a fleet off Sandy Hook. He and his brother, General Howe, had been commissioned to grant pardons to all who would lay down their arms and return to their allegiance; and, accordingly, they issued a proclamation to the people to that effect, and sent letters to Washington. The latter, however, were not received, as they were addressed to "G. Washington Esq," thus avoiding any recognition of his position as General. Previously to this, the British government had sent over a large body of German troops, hired

28. By whom were the colonists supported? When and where did the war commence? Battle of Bunker Hill? Washington's first achievement?

29. Declaration of Independence? What followed? Letters of Howe? Russian troops?

from the Landgrave of Hesse, the Duke of Brunswick, and other petty German sovereigns.

30. A series of disastrous defeats to the Americans followed, and the cities of New York and Philadelphia fell successively into the hands of the British; but General Burgoyne, invading the States from Canada, was effectually checked at Saratoga by the Americans under General Gates, and compelled to surrender his entire army (Oct. 17, 1777). This important victory secured for the states the alliance and aid of France, as well as the acknowledgment of their independence by that power (1778). The war, however, continued for several years, until the British army under Cornwallis having surrendered at Yorktown to the combined forces of the Americans and French (Oct. 19, 1781), the English government could no longer withstand the demands of the people, that no further attempt should be made to reduce the insurgent colonies.

31. A preliminary treaty was soon afterward made, acknowledging their independence (Nov. 30, 1782), and this was definitively signed at Paris (Sept. 3, 1783). By the terms of this treaty, the northern boundary of the United States was fixed at the Great Lakes, and the western at the Mississippi river; and an unlimited right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland was conceded. The first minister from the new republic, Mr. Adams, was received by the king with great affability and kindness (1785), the monarch remarking that, though he had been the last to consent to the separation of the colonies, he would be the first to welcome the United States as an independent power.

32. The Earl of Chatham did not live to see the independence of the colonies. He had protested against the course of the ministry in unjustly imposing taxes upon

30. What defeats were sustained by the Americans? What led to General Burgoyne's surrender? What did the victory secure? What closed the war?

31. What treaty was made? What was fixed as the boundary of the United States? Who was the first minister from the United States to England? How was he received by the king?

32. Course of the Earl of Chatham? Under what circumstances did his death occur?

them, predicting that it would lead to their separation from the mother country. When, therefore, after the surrender of Burgoyne, a motion was made in the House of Lords to obtain peace at any price, though suffering from extreme illness, he rose from his bed, and, going to the House, protested, with his usual vehement eloquence, against the dismemberment of the empire. On rising to reply to some remarks in opposition to his views, he fell back in convulsions, and was carried insensible from the house. Four days afterward he expired (1778).

33. It was not with her colonies alone that England had carried on war. The acknowledgment of their independence by France led to a war with that country; and this was soon followed by hostilities with Spain (1779) and Holland (1780), which powers were joined, in what was called the "armed neutrality," by Russia, Sweden, and Denmark. Thus all the most powerful nations of Europe arrayed themselves against Great Britain; but the latter, by means of her powerful fleets, succeeded in thwarting their hostile designs. The Spaniards made an attack on Gibraltar, but were repulsed, after a three years' siege, with severe loss; the Dutch suffered greatly by the destruction of their commerce; and the French fleet was totally defeated by Rodney, after it had aided in compelling the surrender of Cornwallis (April, 1782). A small squadron of French and American vessels, under the famous John Paul Jones,* had, however, gained a splendid victory over two British frigates near the coast of Scotland (1779).

34. During the American war important advantages had been gained by the British in India, under Warren Hast-

* John Paul Jones was born in Scotland, in 1747. At the age of twelve, he was apprenticed to a shipmaster who was engaged in the American trade. When the American Revolution broke out, he was in Virginia, and soon after entered the American service. His name was John Paul, to which, for some reason, he added Jones. After the Revolution, he entered the Russian naval service, and took an active part in the Turkish war. He died at Paris in 1792.

33. With what other countries did England wage war during the same period? The "Armed Neutrality?" Achievements of the English fleet? Siege of Gibraltar? How did the Dutch suffer? The French fleet? What was done by Paul Jones?

34. What advantages were gained in India during the same period? Warren Hastings? Why was he impeached?

ings, by whom, with the aid of the veteran warrior, Sir Eyre Coote, Hyder Ali (*ah'le*), the most energetic of the native princes, had been repulsed in several attacks on the Carnatic. The measures, however, which Hastings adopted to obtain money, in order to make the large remittances expected by the East India Company, were characterized by great oppression and injustice toward the native princes and their subjects. Accordingly, after his return to England, articles of impeachment were presented against him in Parliament by the celebrated Edmund Burke (1788).

35. His trial, in Westminster Hall, is one of the most memorable mentioned in history. It commenced in 1788, and lasted till 1795, resulting in the acquittal of Hastings, who complained that his arraignment had occurred in one generation, and that the judgment was not pronounced till the next. This trial was not only remarkable for its length, but for the brilliant talents and eloquence displayed by the managers of the impeachment, among whom were Burke, Sheridan, Fox, and Windham,—a galaxy of distinguished men unsurpassed for splendor of genius in the annals of any country. [*See Note 4, end of Section.*]

36. During this period, the premiership had been held by William Pitt, son of the Earl of Chatham, to whom, although only twenty-four years of age, it was given in 1783, and who continued to govern the country during eighteen years, a much longer period than any minister since Walpole. When he commenced his administration, the people were discontented, and the treasury exhausted by the long and expensive wars just brought to a close; but, by his consummate ability, confidence was soon restored, and in a few years the finances of the country were so much improved that ten millions of the national debt had been paid off. An event, however, occurred that baffled his far-seeing calculations, and convulsed all

35. Trial of Hastings? For what was it remarkable?

36. What is said of William Pitt? Results of his administration? What occurred to defeat his plans?

Europe. This was the breaking out of the great French Revolution (1789).

37. At first, the revolutionists in France received considerable sympathy in their efforts to obtain for the people a proper share in the government, and to abolish the dreadful system of oppression and misrule under which France had for centuries groaned in misery; but their excesses soon disgusted and alarmed every civilized nation in Europe. After the execution of the French king, Louis XVI., in 1793, Great Britain, Holland, Russia, and Spain formed a coalition to restore the monarchy in France, and thus prevent the spread of republican principles into other countries, the French Convention having voted that they would give assistance to every nation that wished to "recover its liberty."

38. Against this formidable combination, the revolutionary government showed the most extraordinary vigor and activity. In a short time they sent eight armies into the field, and successfully baffled the most strenuous efforts of their enemies. The English fleets, under Lord Howe, Admiral Duncan, and Lord Nelson, gained, however, several brilliant victories. During this struggle, Napoleon Bonaparte carved his way to fame and fortune. After defeating the Austrians in Italy in two brilliant campaigns, he induced the French government, then administered by the "Directory," to consent to an expedition designed to conquer Egypt, as a means of attacking the commerce and power of England in the East (1798).

39. Landing there with an immense army, he captured Alexandria, and then marched toward Cairo (*ki'ro*), which, after defeating the Mamelukes in the noted "Battle of the Pyramids," he entered (1798). This gave him possession

37. The French revolutionists? What coalition was formed against them? Why?

38. Conduct of the revolutionary government? Achievements of the English fleets? Napoleon Bonaparte? His mode of attacking England?

39. What did he accomplish in Egypt? The Battle of the Nile? What was Nelson's conduct? How rewarded?

of the country; but a few days afterward Nelson destroyed the French fleet in the memorable "Battle of the Nile,"* and thus cut off the retreat of the invaders. Of all the ships that had carried Bonaparte's army to Egypt, only four escaped to carry the news of the disaster to France. Nelson displayed all his characteristic gallantry and skill, and was severely wounded in the action. He was rewarded by a liberal annuity, and the title of Baron Nelson of the Nile.

40. In consequence of the invasion of Egypt, the Turkish sultan declared war against France; and Napoleon, therefore, leaving Egypt in charge of one of his generals, undertook an expedition into Syria. Several towns, one after the other, yielded to his arms, among them Jaffa, where he caused a large number of the Turkish prisoners to be massacred. At Acre, he found the Sultan's fleet under the command of Sir Sydney Smith, an English officer; and after a siege of nearly two months, was compelled to retreat (1799). Having returned to Egypt, he went on board a French man-of-war in the night, and accompanied by some of his best generals, the others being left with the army, succeeded in escaping the English cruisers, and arrived safely in France. A change in the government took place soon afterward, and Bonaparte assumed its control under the title of *First Consul*.

41. Meanwhile, the revolutionary spirit had spread to Ireland, and excited a determination on the part of the people there to regain the independence of which they had so long been deprived by the English, whose yoke had been galling in the extreme, especially to the Irish peasantry. Left to the mercies of the agents appointed by their foreign

* Fought in Aboukir Bay, in the northern part of Egypt. (See Progressive Map, No. 6.)

40. Why did Napoleon invade Syria? What was done there? Siege of Acre? Napoleon's escape? What change occurred in the French government?

41. Affairs in Ireland? Oppression of the Irish peasantry? "Society of United Irishmen?" The Orangemen?

lords, this wretched people suffered every species of insult and oppression, to which was also added the bitterness of religious persecution. The "Society of United Irishmen" was formed in 1791, and declared its objects to be a reform of the legislature according to the principles of civil, political, and religious liberty. It consisted of Protestants as well as Catholics; although the majority of Irish Protestants, called "Orangemen," opposed these views, and favored a continuance of the English rule.

42. Two expeditions sent by France to assist the Irish patriots were destroyed; but a formidable insurrection broke out soon afterward, the number in arms being estimated at 250,000 (1798). Numerous engagements occurred in various quarters, but generally to the disadvantage of the insurgents, who were finally compelled to submit to the government (1800). It was then proposed to unite the two countries under one parliament, and although the measure was violently opposed by many, among whom were Grattan and Curran, the most eloquent of the Irish orators, the bill for the union, which had passed the English legislature, was accepted by the Parliament of Ireland (1801).* Thereafter, the kingdom assumed the title of the "United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland."

43. Sir Ralph Abercrombie, who had been sent to Egypt, gained an important victory over the French forces which had been left by Napoleon in that country as a standing menace to the power of Great Britain (1801). Abercrombie was mortally wounded in the action; but his successor, General Hutchinson, having formed a union with the Turks, captured Cairo and Alexandria, the French surrendering with the agreement that they should be carried

* This, it was generally asserted and acknowledged, was accomplished by Pitt by means of bribing the members.

42. The Irish rebellion of 1798? Its result? Legislative union of England and Ireland?

43. Sir Ralph Abercrombie's victory? Other victories of the English? Capitulation of the French? The Rosetta stone?

back to France at the expense of the allied powers. The French *savans* were only permitted to retain their own manuscripts and private papers, all the scientific collections which they had made for the French republic being surrendered to the victors. Among the latter was the famous Rosetta stone, so useful afterward in furnishing a basis for deciphering the hieroglyphics on the Egyptian monuments.

44. Meanwhile, the northern powers—Russia, Sweden, and Denmark, had formed a league to protect their commerce against the British, who claimed the right of searching the vessels of neutral nations; and being soon joined by Prussia, they commenced acts of hostility against Great Britain. Accordingly, a fleet under Sir Hyde Parker and Lord Nelson, was sent to the Baltic, and in an action that ensued off Copenhagen, the Danish fleet, principally through the desperate valor of Nelson,* was destroyed. This had the effect to detach Denmark from the league; and the Russian Emperor Paul being, about the same time, assassinated, Alexander, his successor, resolved on a policy friendly to the British (1801). Shortly afterward, a treaty was signed by Great Britain and the northern powers, by which the rights of neutral navigation were satisfactorily adjusted. These events were soon followed by the treaty of Amiens (*am'-e-enz*), by which peace was concluded between France and England (1802).

45. For some time after the legislative union of Ireland and England, considerable discontent existed in the former country; and in 1803 an insurrection was attempted in Dublin, but was immediately suppressed. It was for his connection with this affair that the talented but ill-fated Robert Emmet suffered death. Pitt had before this desired

* In the thickest of the fight some of the largest of the English vessels got aground on the shoals, and the Admiral gave the signal to withdraw; but Nelson, pretending that he did not see it, continued the fight. "I have been in more than a hundred engagements," he afterward said, "but that of Copenhagen was the most terrific of them all."

44. What league was formed? Why? Expedition to the Baltic? What led to an adjustment of difficulties? Treaty of Amiens?

45. What caused an insurrection in Ireland? Resignation of Pitt?

that the Catholic disabilities should be abolished, in order to make the Union more complete and satisfactory; and as the king refused to give his assent, he resigned, and was succeeded by Henry Addington, who had long been speaker of the House of Commons (1802).

46. The peace of Amiens proved only a brief truce; for the very next year after its conclusion, the First Consul assumed a threatening attitude toward England, and publicly insulted her ambassador. War was accordingly resumed, and immense preparations were made in France to invade England; but they were entirely frustrated by the British cruisers which swept the Channel, and bombarded some of the French ports. Pitt, yielding to the call of the public, now resumed the direction of affairs, and the war was carried on with great activity. Nelson gained his most brilliant victory, entirely defeating the combined French and Spanish fleets off Cape Trafalgar; but at a heavy cost to his country, for he fell mortally wounded in the action (1805). He was buried with more than kingly honors in St. Paul's Cathedral, and the whole nation mourned his loss.

47. Napoleon, in 1804, became Emperor of France, and the next year caused himself to be crowned King of Italy, with the famous "iron crown" of the Lombards. These assumptions of power led to a coalition against him, consisting of England, Austria, Russia, Sweden, and Prussia; but, with his characteristic daring and promptitude, he marched against the Austrians, and succeeded in capturing a large army at Ulm (1805); and shortly afterward routed the combined army of Austria and Russia at Austerlitz with overwhelming loss. This was soon followed by the sanguinary battle of Jena, in which he gained so decisive a victory over the Prussians, that he immediately

46. What caused the renewal of the war with France? What events followed? Nelson's last victory and death?

47. What coalition was formed against Napoleon? Why? What victories did he gain? The result?

entered Berlin in triumph, and dictated terms to the conquered monarch (1806).

48. The year 1806 is memorable for the death of the two great statesmen Pitt and Fox. The former was only forty-six years of age, having been brought to a premature grave by the excessive toils and anxieties of his great office.* At Berlin, Napoleon issued the famous decree declaring the British Isles in a state of blockade, and forbidding all commercial intercourse on the part of any nation with Great Britain or her colonies. After the severe battles of Eylau (*i'low*) and Fried'land, he was enabled to dictate terms to the Russian Emperor at Tilsit, and was thus left free to prosecute more effectually hostilities against the British. The latter fearing that he would take possession of the navy of Denmark, which was considerable, sent a powerful force under Sir Arthur Wellesley* and Admiral Gambier to Copenhagen to demand that it should be given up; and, this being refused, the city was bombarded and captured; and the whole Danish fleet, with an immense quantity of naval stores, was carried to England. [*Note 5, end of Sec.*]

49. Napoleon's commercial restrictions, as declared in the Berlin decree, were not obeyed by Portugal, into which country British merchandise was freely admitted, and thence transported into Spain. A French army was therefore ordered to invade the country; and, Lisbon having been captured, the prince-regent took refuge in the British fleet then in the Tagus river, and, sailing to Brazil, fixed the seat of his government in that country (1807). Portugal was then declared by Napoleon a province of the French empire. Not content with this usurpation, he next seized the throne of Spain, and arbitrarily placed upon it his brother, Joseph Bonaparte (1808).

* Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterward the Duke of Wellington, had previous to this acquired very great distinction by his skill and bravery in India.

48. Why is the year 1806 memorable? What is said of Pitt? What decree did Napoleon issue? Treaty of Tilsit? Taking of Copenhagen and the Danish fleet?

49. Why was Portugal invaded by the French? The result? What course did Napoleon pursue toward Spain?

50. These events led to the "Peninsular War," the British government being determined to prevent the consummation of Napoleon's ambitious schemes, which, by disturbing the "balance of power" in Europe, threatened the safety and independence of every one of its nations. Accordingly, Sir Arthur Wellesley was sent to Portugal with an army to assist the people, who had risen in insurrection against the French invaders. At Vimeira (*ve-ma'e-rah*) he gained a decided victory; but it was not improved in consequence of a change of commanders, the English, by the convention of Cintra, agreeing to retire from the country. Sir John Moore, who was ordered to co-operate with the Spaniards against the French, was driven into retreat by Napoleon, receiving no support from the inhabitants. He afterward fell in the battle of Corun'na, where the French, under Soult, were repulsed; and the English troops, after having suffered inconceivable hardships, made their escape from the country with the assistance of the fleet (1809).*

51. Notwithstanding these reverses, the British government, now under the administration of the celebrated George Canning, determined to prosecute the war in the Peninsula with vigor. The chief command was given to Sir Arthur Wellesley, who, after entering Portugal and driving the French into Spain, passed into the latter country and formed a junction with the general of the Spanish army, then about 30,000 strong, but in bad condition. An attack of the French at Talave'ra brought on a terrific battle, in which the British fought with desperate valor,

* It was with reference to this event that Wolfe's well-known poem was written, commencing with the verse,

Not a drum was heard, not a funeral note,
As his corse to the rampart we hurried;
Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot
O'er the grave where our hero was buried.

50. What war did this lead to? Who was sent to Portugal? Battle of Vimeira? Sir John Moore?

51. Policy of the British government? Who received the chief command? What led to the battle of Talavera? Its result? What title was given to the British general? Why did he retreat?

and compelled the French to retreat. Wellesley received the title of Viscount Wellington as a reward for this splendid victory. He was, however, compelled to retire into Portugal, before the immense armies which Napoleon poured into Spain, and by which, before the end of the year, he made himself master of the whole country (1809).

52. Meanwhile, hostilities were resumed on the part of Austria, with armies which amounted, in the aggregate, to about 500,000 men. Napoleon, however, notwithstanding his inferior forces, and the numerous operations which he was obliged simultaneously to carry on, was almost everywhere victorious. At Eck'mühl, he defeated the Archduke Charles, but was compelled to fall back from his position at Aspern. A week afterward he gained a decisive victory at Wagram (*wah'gram*); after which the Austrian emperor was obliged to submit to such terms of peace as the victor chose to dictate (1809).

53. Austria being thus helpless at his feet, Napoleon sent additional forces into Spain and Portugal, determined to drive the British out of the latter country, and to crush the Spaniards, who still kept up a vigorous opposition to the invaders; but chiefly by irregular troops, called *Guerillas*. In the Battle of Busa'co, Wellington repulsed the French General Masse'na with heavy loss; then, retreating to the heights of Tor'res Ve'dras, some distance north of Lisbon, he took up a position which Massena did not dare to attack, but retired into winter quarters (1810). In this year, George III. having become insane, the Prince of Wales was made Regent.

54 During the next year, warlike operations went on in Spain and Portugal under Wellington, opposed by Massena; but the latter was so unsuccessful, that Napoleon super-

52. War with Austria? What victories did Napoleon gain? Their result?

53. Napoleon's next object? What battle was fought by Wellington? His position at Torres Vedras? Insanity of George III.?

54. Ill success of Massena? Battle of Salamanca? What other war was commenced in 1812? Its cause? Results of the first operations?

seded him, and appointed General Marmont in his place. In 1812, Wellington defeated that officer with immense loss at *Salamanca*, and marching on Madrid captured the city, together with a vast quantity of military stores. In this year commenced the war with the United States, brought on by the unjust claims of Great Britain to the right of searching American vessels for deserters and other British seamen, in order that she might seize and impress them into her service. The war commenced with great disasters to the Americans on land; but on the ocean the brilliant victories achieved by Captain Hull, Commodore Decatur, and others, retrieved the honor of their country.

55. In 1813, Wellington, now Commander-in-chief of the Spanish as well as the British forces, attacked the French at Vittoria, and drove them from the town, capturing the whole of their artillery and ammunition, together with other property valued at a million sterling (June 21). They continued their retreat, followed by the allies, as far as the passes of the Pyrenees, where Marshal Soult, sent by Napoleon to defend the French frontier, was repulsed in a series of engagements called the "Battles of the Pyrenees." Wellington crossed into France, forcing every position assumed by Soult; and the next year reached Toulouse, where he again attacked the French, and compelled them to retreat (April, 1814).

56. Meanwhile, Napoleon, defeated in the Russian expedition (1812), and subsequently at the great battle of Leipsic (1813), had been driven into disastrous retreat before the vast army of the allied powers; and, finally, finding himself unable to make further resistance, had consented to abdicate the French throne, and retire to the little island of Elba (1814). The forces of the allies entered Paris, and the crown of France was conferred upon Louis XVIII.

55. Battle of Vittoria? Its results? Retreat of the French? "Battles of the Pyrenees?" Battle of Toulouse?

56. What led to Napoleon's abdication? On whom was the French crown conferred? The American war? Its end? Battle of New Orleans?

The American war was continued during 1813 and 1814; but the British gained no permanent advantage, and in the latter year peace was made by the treaty of Ghent (Dec. 24). Before, however, this was known in America, a fine army under General Pakenham (*pak'n-am*) made an attack upon New Orleans, but was repulsed by a force under General Jackson, the British general and two thousand of his soldiers being slain (Jan. 8, 1815).

57. As a reward for his brilliant conduct in the Peninsular war, Wellington was made a duke, and publicly thanked by both Houses of Parliament, also receiving a grant of £400,000. Toward the close of 1814, a Congress of representatives of the European powers met at Vienna, to arrange and settle the affairs of Europe, which had become greatly confused by the many revolutions caused by these long wars. While in session they were suddenly surprised by the departure of Napoleon from Elba. Landing at Cannes (*kan*), on the southern shore of France, he was enthusiastically welcomed by the troops; and entering Paris was greeted with the joyful acclamations of all classes (March 20, 1815). Louis XVIII. having fled, Napoleon found himself once more on the throne, and in less than two months was enabled to organize an army of 200,000 men.

58. This daring disregard of the treaty of the previous year alarmed all Europe, and a combination of the principal powers was immediately formed once more to dethrone the French Emperor. Great Britain entered into it with spirit and vigor, the Parliament voting nearly one hundred millions sterling to carry on the war. The Duke of Wellington, at the head of an immense army, proceeded to Belgium, whither also the Prussians, under Blucher (*blou'kər*), were marching to oppose Napoleon, who had crossed the frontier with 100,000 infantry and 25,000 cavalry. At the

57. How was Wellington rewarded? The Congress of Vienna? What sudden revolution occurred?

58. What followed this event? What preparations were made for the war. The respective armies?

same time Austria and Russia were preparing to invade France with overwhelming armies.

59. The plan of Wellington was to form a junction with Blucher and march on Paris; but Napoleon, in order to prevent this, at once attacked the Prussians at Ligny (*leen'ye*),* drove them from their position, and sent Grouchy (*groo'she*) in pursuit with 35,000 men, to cut off their union with the British, who lay then at Brussels. Wellington at once advanced and took up his position at Waterloo, where he was attacked with the most desperate impetuosity by the French forces (June 18). Charge after charge was made, and at last even by the Old Guard,—the unconquered veterans of Austerlitz and Jena, but without effect. Meanwhile Blucher had out-marched Grouchy, and just as Napoleon's last great charge was being made, appeared on the field. The French columns, panic-stricken, broke and fled; and the great battle of Waterloo was ended.

60. A second abdication of Napoleon followed; and finding no means of escape from France, he surrendered himself to the commander of a British vessel of war at Rochefort, and was carried to England. By agreement of the allied sovereigns, he was sent to the little island of St. Helena, where, after an imprisonment of six years, he died. This final overthrow of Napoleon ended the great struggle which for nearly twenty-five years had been made by Great Britain, to check the conquests of the French, and preserve the "balance of power" in Europe. To accomplish this end immense sacrifices of men and money had been made, the national debt having been increased to nearly nine hundred millions of pounds.

* A village of Belgium, situated about twenty-five miles southeast from Brussels.

59. What was Wellington's plan? Napoleon's attack? Its result? The battle of Waterloo and its consequences?

60. What course did Napoleon then take? His fate? What is said of the war and its effects on England?

61. The sudden change to peace, after this long war, produced great distress among the people. Trade languished, a multitude of persons were thrown out of employment, and the vast number of soldiers and sailors who had been discharged greatly augmented the difficulty. To add to the people's distress bread became very dear, in consequence of the scarcity of wheat caused by unfavorable seasons and the corn laws, which prevented its importation. Riots ensued, particularly in the manufacturing districts, where by the improvement of labor-saving machinery very many persons were deprived of their ordinary employments; and these wreaked their vengeance by the destruction of the newly-invented machines for spinning and weaving.

62. To these causes of tumult was added the agitation of the question of parliamentary reform, and large meetings of the people were held to demand annual parliaments and universal suffrage. One of these, at Manchester, called by Henry Hunt, a celebrated popular orator, was dispersed by the authorities, several persons being killed (1819). Prominent among those who advocated the introduction of liberal reforms in the government was the celebrated William Cobbett,* who, in a periodical entitled the "Political Register," boldly and ably advocated the cause of the laboring classes. For this he was repeatedly prosecuted by the government on a charge of libel, and was fined and imprisoned.

63. George III. died in 1820, after a reign of sixty years, —the longest in English history; during the latter part of

* *William Cobbett*, one of the most extraordinary men of his age, was born in very humble life, in 1762. In his earlier years he served as a soldier in Nova Scotia; but afterward settled in Philadelphia, where he wrote the celebrated papers which appeared under the name of "Peter Porcupine." The first number of the "Political Register" appeared in England in 1802, he having removed to that country. Toward the close of his life he was a member of Parliament. He died in 1835. Few writers have excelled him in vigor of thought and homely clearness of style, and very few have rendered a more lasting service to the cause of liberal government and freedom of discussion.

61. What resulted from the change to peace? What caused distress among the people? Riots?

62. Parliamentary reform? Meeting at Manchester? William Cobbett?

63. Death of George III.? His private and kingly character? His children
Death of Queen Charlotte?

it he had lived in entire seclusion. His private character, in every relation of life, was worthy of esteem; and his kindliness of disposition and homely familiarity endeared him to the great body of the English people, by whom he was regarded with sincere affection, being in his latter years generally spoken of as "the good old king." As a monarch, his moderate abilities, narrow views, and obstinate adherence to obsolete principles and time-honored abuses, have subjected his name to considerable obloquy, if not contempt. He had twelve children, of whom the oldest was George, the prince-regent, who now succeeded him. His faithful and excellent queen, Charlotte, had died a short time previously. [*See Notes 6 and 7.*]

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE FIRST THREE BRUNSWICK KINGS.

64. During this period, extending from 1714 to 1820, and therefore nearly coincident with the eighteenth century, the British government assumed a more settled character; and, as the people advanced in intelligence, became more and more dependent upon their wishes. Hence the king ruled through his ministers, who were able to continue in office only as long as they succeeded in retaining the support of Parliament. The power exercised by the sovereign has ever since been very limited, solely depending upon his intelligence, force of character, and moral worth; and all the agencies of government have become more and more under the control of public opinion,—the great ruling power of every truly civilized nation. The popular agitations, riots, etc., to secure parliamentary reform, and a more general and equitable representation in the House of Commons, indicate the efforts which this power was exerting toward the close of this period to assert its supremacy.

64. Change in the government? Power of the sovereign? Influence of public opinion?

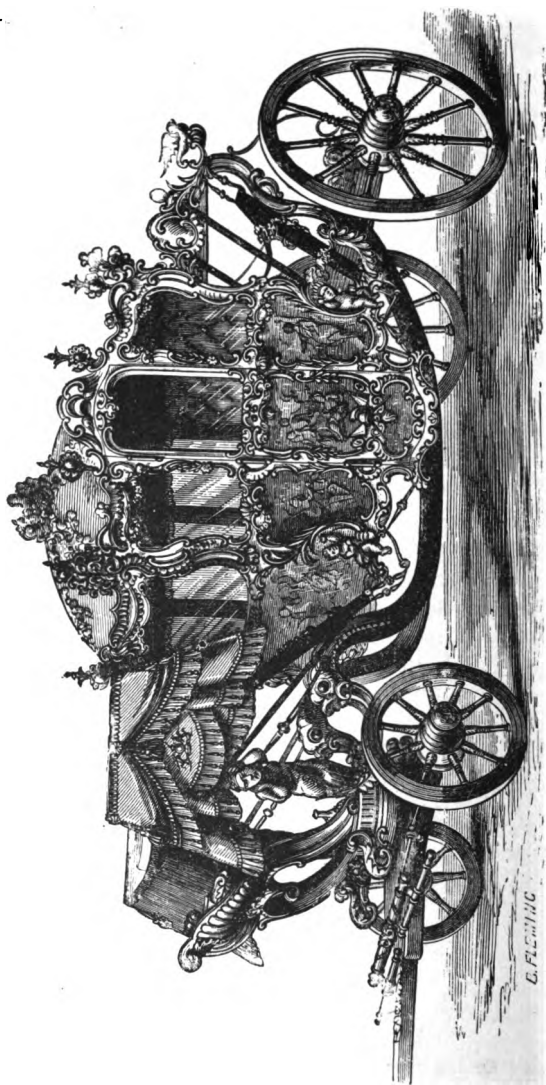
65. This ardent desire for freedom, which so strikingly characterized the public mind in England, was, in the first place, the result of the American war for independence, with its successful issue. The great questions which sprung up during this struggle, and which gave occasion to the magnificent displays of parliamentary eloquence of Burke, Fox, Sheridan, and others, shattered to pieces the old theories of arbitrary government, and imbued the popular mind with democratic notions and principles. The French revolution—the mightiest political and social tornado the world has ever seen—shook every institution that had hitherto been held sacred, and threatened, at one time, to resolve human society into its original elements. Hence arose, in England, a new party called “Radical Reformers,” or “Radicals,” whose principles were ably advocated by Paine,* Cobbett, and others; and hence also the spread of infidelity among the middle classes, fostered by such writings as Paine’s “Age of Reason.”

66. During the first part of this period, religion was at a very low ebb among all classes. The clergy, often ordained without any regard to their intellectual and spiritual attainments, but simply as a provision for the younger sons of aristocratic families, neglected the duties of their sacred calling to indulge in fox-hunting, gaming, and the pleasures of the table. The preaching of

* Thomas Paine, famous for his connection with the American and French revolutions and for his advocacy of infidel opinions, was born in 1737, and was by trade a stay-maker. In 1774 he emigrated to America, and advocated the cause of the colonies in a series of papers entitled “Common Sense,” the publication of which gained him the friendship of Washington, Franklin, and other distinguished American patriots. This was soon followed by the “American Crisis,” in eighteen numbers, published at different times (1776-83),—a work that exercised a powerful effect upon the public mind, in keeping up the spirit of patriotism and freedom. Subsequently he published in England his most famous work, the “Rights of Man,” for which he was prosecuted by the government, and found guilty of “a false, scandalous, and malicious libel.” Escaping to France, he became a member of the revolutionary convention, and during the “Reign of Terror” under Robespierre was thrown into prison. His religious writings, which have given him an infamous notoriety, were published afterward. He died in the United States in 1809, the victim of his own principles; for he became licentious, intemperate, and irascible,—a terror to his household, and a dreadful example to the world of what a wreck a man of truly great parts may become when he divests himself of religious restraint and the hope of immortality.

65. Effects of the American revolution? Of the French revolution? The “Radicals?” By whom were their principles advocated?

66. State of religion? The clergy? Effect of the preaching of George Whitefield and John Wesley? What is said of the Methodists? Watts, Doddridge, etc. Sunday-schools?



LORD MAYOR'S COACH.

(Built in the seventeenth century and still used on Lord Mayor's Day.)

George Whitefield* and John Wesley† did much to infuse into the public mind a higher regard for spiritual matters. The religious society which they founded received, at first as a nickname, the appellation of "Methodists," from the strictness of their religious principles and observances. It rapidly gathered within its ranks vast multitudes, particularly of the middle and lower orders of the people. The writings of Watts, Doddridge, and others also contributed to raise the religious tone of society. Sunday-schools were founded about the close of 1781 by Robert Raikes.

67. It was, however, some time before there was infused into the public mind a spirit of religious toleration. In 1778, was passed the "Catholic Relief Bill," freeing Catholics from the severe disabilities to which they had long been subjected. This measure had the effect to excite the animosities of the ignorant and bigoted of the population; and a movement was undertaken in opposition to it, led by Lord George-Gordon, a crazy nobleman, who made many silly and violent speeches in the House of Commons on the subject. By means of the inflammatory addresses made by him and others, and the outcry which was raised of "No Popery," dreadful riots were excited, in which many Catholic churches and other buildings were destroyed. Lord Mansfield's fine mansion, containing his valuable law library, fell a sacrifice to the senseless fury of the mob, which for several days had entire possession of London. Nearly five hundred persons were killed or wounded.

* *George Whitefield* was particularly celebrated for the fervid eloquence with which he preached to the people. He was ordained a minister of the Church of England, but subsequently joined Wesley and the Methodists. He spent part of his life in America, where he died while on a visit to the churches in New England (1770).

† *John Wesley*, the celebrated founder of Methodism, was an ordained minister of the Church of England, but soon became disgusted with the coldness and want of spirituality which prevailed among both clergy and laity. Like Whitefield, he was a powerful popular preacher, and like him also, he preached to the people of both hemispheres, residing some years in the colonies. For more than half a century he exercised the most complete authority over his numerous followers both in England and America. He died in 1791 at the age of eighty-eight. It is estimated that at his death there were 71,000 Methodists in England, and 48,000 in America. His influence was exerted chiefly among the lower orders, while the efforts of Whitefield, aided by the Countess of Huntingdon, awakened a religious interest among the higher classes of society.

67. Religious toleration? The Catholic Relief Bill? Effect of its passage. The Gordon riots?

68. In *commerce* and *navigation* vast and rapid strides were taken. The trade with the American colonies had become very considerable previous to their independence; but with the States it was much more extensive, the principal imports from them being tobacco, rice, and cotton. The importation of the last-mentioned article from America commenced in 1770, the first shipment being about 2,000 pounds. At the close of the period, the annual import amounted to 120,000,000 pounds. The same product was also imported from Brazil and the East Indies. The English West Indies exported large quantities of sugar, together with mahogany and logwood. The gradual introduction of *steam navigation* was a marked feature of the period. Experiments with the view to this application of the steam-engine had been early made; but it was not until nearly the end of the period that serviceable steam-vessels were constructed. In 1820 a line of steam-packets was established to ply between Holyhead and Dublin.*

69. The improvements in the methods and implements of agriculture were also very great, with, of course, a large increase in the quantity and variety of the vegetable products. The cultivation of the potato, introduced during the seventeenth century, did not become general until about the middle of the eighteenth. Philanthropists encouraged it with the view to prevent famine among the lower classes by affording a substitute for grain during seasons of bad harvests. Greenhouses for the cultivation of tropical plants also began to be constructed, and soon came into general use.

* Robert Fulton, an American. In 1807, made the first successful voyage by steam from New York to Albany, in a steamboat called the *Clermont*. Five years later a steamboat was started on the Clyde by Henry Bell, a former associate of Fulton; and thus was commenced steam navigation in Great Britain.

68. Commerce and navigation? With the American colonies and the United States? Importation of cotton? Steam navigation? What line of packets was established in 1820?

69. What improvements in agriculture took place? Cultivation of the potato? Why encouraged? Greenhouses?

70. In the *industrial arts*, the improvements introduced during this period were very numerous and valuable. Previous to 1718, England was entirely dependent upon foreigners for silk thread; but in that year a large mill was erected at Derby for its manufacture, by Mr. Lombe, who had gone to Italy in the disguise of a common workman, and taken drawings of the silk-throwing machinery in use in that country. Immense quantities of organzine* thread were thereafter produced. The cotton manufacture now took precedence of that of wool, which previously had been the chief material of English fabrics. This change was largely due to the carding-machine and the spinning-jenny invented by James Hargreaves,† but principally to the invention of the spinning-frame by Sir Richard Arkwright.‡ In 1771, Arkwright erected a large factory which was worked by water power. [See Note 8, end of Section.]

71. The *iron manufacture* became very extensive during this period, especially at Birmingham; and large quantities of cutlery were manufactured at Sheffield. The number of workmen employed in the former city alone, in 1770, was estimated at fifty thousand. To all these branches of manufacturing industry a wonderful impulse had been given by the application of steam. James Watt|| made his celebrated invention of the condensing steam-engine in

* That is, thread made like rope by twisting several strands into one thread.

† James Hargreaves was an illiterate artisan, supporting himself and family by spinning. In 1760 he invented the carding-machine as a substitute for carding by hand. The spinning-jenny, by which he was enabled to spin a large number of threads at the same time, was invented by accident in 1764. He died in 1768.

‡ Richard Arkwright, born in 1732, was originally a barber. In 1767 he devoted himself to making improvements in cotton-spinning; and the next year produced the spinning-frame, which consisted chiefly of two pairs of rollers, the first pair moving slowly in contact, and passing the cotton to the other pair, which revolved with such increased velocity as to draw out the thread to the required degree of fineness. He was at first very poor, and incurred the displeasure of the artisans by his labor-saving machines. He however rapidly rose to opulence and fame, and received in 1786 the honor of knighthood from George III. At his death, in 1792, his property amounted to more than half a million sterling.

|| James Watt was born in Scotland in 1736. He was first a mathematical instrument maker, and subsequently a surveyor. He began his experiments on the steam-engine about 1763, and soon discovered the cause of the inefficiency of that in general use at the time. This was worked by atmospheric pressure, steam being used only to produce a vacuum. In 1765 he hit upon the idea of a separate condenser, and of using steam as the motive power; and in 1769 his model was completed. Other improvements followed. He made numerous inventions unconnected with the steam-engine. He died in 1819.

70. Improvements in the industrial arts? Manufacture of silk thread? Cotton manufacture? What inventions facilitated it?

71. Iron manufacture? What gave impulse to these manufactures? Watt's invention? Mining? Inventions in pottery?

1769, and introduced during the next sixteen years, improvements in it of great practical value. The working of the coal mines was greatly facilitated by the application of Watt's invention. The inventions of Wedgwood* also made so many improvements in pottery, that he may be considered the founder of this branch of manufacture in Great Britain. His first success was the production of a beautiful cream-colored porcelain, called, in honor of Queen Charlotte, who greatly admired it, "Queen's Ware" (1763).

72. Through the sagacity, energy, and liberality of the Duke of Bridgewater, and his celebrated engineer, James Brindley, *canal navigation* assumed considerable importance in England. An act of parliament for the construction of his first canal was obtained in 1758. The roads, too, gradually improved; and during the greater part of the period travellers were conveyed by means of rapid stage-coaches to the various parts of the kingdom. The construction of the first locomotive, or steam-carriage, in 1804, commenced a wonderful revolution in this respect; railways had been used to a limited extent some time previously. Locomotive power was employed on a railway by George Stephenson† in 1814; but it was not until 1821 that passengers were transported in this way. [See Notes 9 and 10, end of Section.]

73. The *fine arts* were also cultivated with great success. Among painters the most prominent were Hogarth‡ and Sir Joshua Reynolds.¶ The latter was the first president of

* *Joshua Wedgwood*, born in 1730, was early engaged in the business of pottery. His many improvements in the manufacture of all kinds of porcelain realized him a vast fortune. He was a man of benevolence and culture; and besides his own special kind of knowledge, studied natural philosophy with much success. He died in 1795.

† *George Stephenson*, at first a workman in a colliery, rose to great distinction by his singular genius as a mechanist and engineer. Through his efforts the locomotive became a success, the first railroads being constructed under his supervision. He died in 1848, at the age of 67.

‡ *William Hogarth* was born in London 1697. His first employment as an artist was in engraving. His moral paintings attracted considerable attention from their humor as well as artistic excellence. The most celebrated of his paintings is, perhaps, the "Enraged Musician," which was finished in 1741. He died in 1764.

¶ *Sir Joshua Reynolds*, generally placed at the head of the English school of painting, was born in England in 1723. His portraits were of unsurpassed merit, eclipsing everything that had been executed since the time of Van Dyck. He was the companion and friend of Johnson, Burke, Goldsmith, Garrick, the famous actor, and other literary men of the time. He died in 1784.

72. Canal navigation, by whom encouraged? Travelling? The introduction of the locomotive? Railways?

73. Cultivation of the fine arts? Eminent painters? Of what was Reynolds the founder? Handel's achievements in music? The "Beggars' Opera?" Other musical composers?

the Royal Academy of Arts, founded in 1768. George III. was a generous patron of the fine arts, and conferred on Reynolds the honor of knighthood. In music, Handel,* by birth a German, achieved an enduring renown. The first oratorio was produced by him in 1733; but it was not until 1749 that his sublimest composition, "The Messiah," appeared. Very many operas were also composed and brought out by him. One of the most successful works of this kind was the "Beggars' Opera," composed by the poet Gay,† to whom it was suggested by Swift in 1726. Among other musical composers of this period were the celebrated Dr. Arne,‡ and Dr. Charles Burney,§ the latter distinguished particularly as the author of the "General History of Music."

74. The progress in *scientific discovery* was also quite remarkable. Sir Humphrey Davy,|| the great chemist, invented the safety-lamp (1816), one of the most valuable presents ever made by science to humanity. Sir William Herschel¶ discovered in 1781 a new planet, to which he gave the name *Georgium Sidus*, in honor of George III., now generally called *Uranus*. He also made many other valuable discoveries in astronomy. His monster telescope, forty feet

* *George Frederick Handel* was born in Saxony in 1684. At the age of fourteen, he produced his first opera at Hamburg. He went to England in 1710, and soon became exceedingly popular. A liberal pension was settled on him by George I., and his oratorios were frequently attended by the king and the royal family. He died in 1759, and was buried in Westminster Abbey, where a handsome monument was erected to his memory.

† *John Gay*, the friend of Swift and Pope, and the author of several interesting works, among which the "Fables" are particularly admired. He died in 1732.

‡ *Thomas Augustine Arne*, was one of the best of English composers. He was born at London in 1710, and died in 1778. The celebrated national air, "Rule Britannia," was composed by him.

§ *Charles Burney*, noted for his literary and musical talents, was the father of the celebrated *Frances Burney*, who wrote "Evelina," and some other popular works of fiction. Dr. Burney died in 1815, at the age of eighty-nine.

|| *Sir Humphrey Davy* was born in Cornwall in 1778. He devoted himself to the study of chemistry during the greater part of his life. His lectures in the Royal Institute of London attracted crowded and brilliant audiences. He was also very fond of fishing, and wrote "Salmonia, or Days of Fly-fishing." His death occurred in 1829.

¶ *Sir William Herschel*, the world-renowned astronomer, was born at Hanover, in 1738, and was by profession a musician. He went to England in 1757, and at first devoted himself to music. His astronomical discoveries were very numerous and valuable. He died in 1822. His sister, *Caroline Herschel*, also attained great distinction as an astronomer, as likewise did his son, *Sir John Herschel*.

74. Scientific discovery? Sir Humphrey Davy? Sir William Herschel? Medical science?

in length, completed in 1787, was the wonder of his age. Medical science was greatly enriched by the labors and publications of the celebrated John Hunter, the greatest physiologist and surgeon of his time. In 1785, he formed a museum, which, at his death, contained more than 10,000 specimens and preparations illustrative of human and comparative anatomy and its kindred branches. Edward Jenner, who had studied under him, gave to the world the discovery of vaccination in 1796. Geology commenced to be studied, a geological map of England being published in 1815.

75. The history of English literature during this long period is enriched with distinguished names in all its departments. During the first half of the century, the most conspicuous name is that of Samuel Johnson,* the author of the "English Dictionary," but principally famous for his talents as a poet, critic, and essayist. Gibbon and Hume stand pre-eminent as historians; Goldsmith, Young, Gray, Burns, and Cowper, as poets. The closing portion of George III.'s reign is illumined by the names of Byron, Shelley, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Scott, and a host of others, whose works have been the especial glory of the present century, being unsurpassed by any of the more recent works of genius that have appeared.

1820 76. George IV. succeeded his father at the age
to of fifty-eight. He was a man of considerable tal-
1830 ents and of polished manners, but perfectly heartless
and unprincipled. During the previous part of his life he
had been noted for his profligacy and extravagance. As
Prince Regent he had virtually been king for ten years
before his accession, in consequence of the insanity of
George III.; and, consequently, his accession occasioned

* Samuel Johnson was born at Litchfield in 1709, but lived principally in London. "The Lives of the Poets," and "Rasselas, an Eastern Tale," are, besides the "English Dictionary," the most noted of his writings.

75. English literature? Samuel Johnson? Other noted writers? The most prominent during the closing portion of this period?

76. What is said of George IV.? The Cato-street conspiracy?

no change in the administration of the government. Considerable excitement was caused by the "Cato-street Conspiracy,"—the design of which was to assassinate the cabinet ministers; against whom, as representing the aristocracy, the extreme radicals felt intense hatred. The plot was discovered; and its leader, one Thistlewood, with four of his associates, was executed.

77. Nothing excited more popular indignation and disgust against the king than his treatment of his unfortunate wife, Caroline of Brunswick, whom he had married in 1795. They separated soon after the marriage; and the queen for some years afterward resided on the continent. Rumors having been circulated against her character, she determined to return to England and confront her accusers, and arrived the very day a proceeding was commenced in the House of Lords to deprive her of her rights and privileges as queen, and to dissolve her marriage with the king. She was ably defended by Henry Brougham, afterward Lord Brougham (*broo'am*); and, so strongly was public opinion in her favor, that the ministers abandoned the bill before it had passed the House of Lords. A public illumination showed the joy of the people at this result; and at the next session the Commons voted the queen an annuity of £50,000. In the following year she was repelled with insult from the door of Westminster Abbey, whither she had gone to see the coronation of the king; and in nineteen days afterward expired (1821).

78. The same year the king visited Ireland, where he was welcomed as the first British king who had paid a visit of peace to that afflicted isle. Shortly after his return he made an excursion to Hanover, the country of his forefathers; and the next year spent a short time in Scotland. During his visit to the latter country, one of his chief min-

77. Queen Caroline? What proceedings were instituted against her? By whom was she defended? Result of the trial? Her death?

78. Visit of the king to Ireland? To Hanover? To Scotland? What led to the appointment of George Canning as Foreign Secretary?

isters, the Marquis of Londonderry (more famous as Lord Castlereagh), committed suicide. He was succeeded as foreign secretary by George Canning, one of the most distinguished parliamentary orators and statesmen of the time (1822).

79. Two years later the government declared war against Burmah, being provoked by the outrages committed by that power on the British colonies beyond the Ganges (1824). During the first campaign, Rangoon and the forts at the mouth of the Irrawaddy river were captured by Sir Archibald Campbell; and, in the next, the province of Aracan was seized by a force under General Morrison. The war was closed by a treaty, by which Aracan and the coasts of Tenasserim were given up to the British (1826). Previous to this, much attention was given to Spain, where a struggle between the people and the king aroused the sympathies of the people in favor of the former. The government, however, preserved a strict neutrality; but the Spanish colonies in South America having revolted, their independence was acknowledged by Great Britain.

80. About the same time Greece revolted (1824); and after having struggled for several years to throw off the Turkish yoke, finally secured the aid of England, France, and Russia, whose combined fleets defeated and destroyed the Turkish and Egyptian fleet in the battle of Navarino (*nah-vah-re'no*) (1827). By this event the independence of Greece was achieved, after which it was erected into a separate kingdom, and the crown was conferred upon Prince Otho of Bavaria. During this contest, Lord Byron went to Greece to render aid to the oppressed inhabitants; but he did not live to see the triumph of the cause, dying at Missolon'ghi, of a fever brought on by constant toil and exposure (1824).

79. War against Burmah? What places were taken? What treaty terminated it? Affairs in Spain? The Spanish colonies?

80. Revolt of Greece? Battle of Navarino? Result? What followed? Lord Byron?

81. The question of Catholic emancipation, so frequently agitated, was a subject of excited discussion during most of this reign. In 1822, Canning proposed that Catholic peers should sit in parliament, and carried a bill to that effect through the House of Commons; but it was rejected by the Lords. The next year the Catholic Association, under the guidance of Daniel O'Connell, began to exercise a powerful influence. This association included among its members not only O'Connell, so celebrated for his eloquence and patriotism, but many other eminent men, among them Richard Sheil, a distinguished orator and lawyer. Subsequently, O'Connell, through the influence of the association, was elected a member of Parliament (1828), and the next year took his seat; a bill for the emancipation of Catholics* having triumphantly passed both Houses (1829). The subject of parliamentary reform also excited much attention at this time. George IV. died a short time afterward (June 26, 1830).

1830 82. **William IV.**—The previous king having left
to no heir, was succeeded by his brother, the Duke of
1837 Clarence, under the above title. He was often styled the "Sailor king," having served previously in the navy. The agitation of the question of parliamentary reform was continued; and the Duke of Wellington became very unpopular in consequence of his decided opposition to the measure. A change in the ministry soon took place; and a new cabinet being formed under the premiership of Earl Grey, a bill was introduced by Lord John Russell, proposing very extensive reforms. It was finally passed by the Commons, but rejected by the Lords; whereupon fearful riots occurred in many parts of the kingdom; and, at last,

* By this bill the Oath of Supremacy was changed; and Catholics were no longer to be excluded from the right to hold any offices except those of regent, lord chancellor of England and of Ireland, and viceroy of Ireland.

81. Catholic emancipation? Proposition of Canning? The Catholic Association and its leaders? Result of the agitation? Death of George IV.?

82. Successor of George IV.? What is said of William IV.? Parliamentary reform? How and when carried?

the government was obliged to yield to the demands of the people, and accept the bill (1832).

83. Three important changes were effected by this measure:—1. The right of sending members to Parliament was withdrawn from small districts, called “rotten boroughs,” in which the representation had become obsolete; 2. Several cities, which during the previous century had grown into wealth and importance, received, for the first time, the right of representation in Parliament; 3. The franchise, or right to vote, was extended more widely among the middle classes; being given, in towns, to the owners or tenants of houses paying a rent of £10 or upward. For county members all were entitled to vote who owned land worth £10 a year in rent, or who paid a yearly rent of at least £50. This constituted, without doubt, the greatest revolution which the government had experienced since 1689.

84. The same year (1832) was marked by great disturbances in Ireland, occasioned by the opposition of the people to the Protestant church establishment in that country, and to the payment of tithes in support of it, which were often wrung from the poor peasants, although on the verge of ruin and starvation. Daniel O’Connell also agitated the question of repealing the Union of 1801, and organized political associations to carry the measure (1833). The “Irish Coercion Bill,” authorizing the Lord-lieutenant to place disturbed districts under martial law was passed; but after the expiration of a year was considerably modified. This was carried by a ministry of which Lord Melbourne was the head (1834).

85. The year 1834 is particularly memorable for the abolition of slavery throughout all the British colonies. The sum of £20,000,000 was awarded by Parliament to

83. What changes were effected by this measure? What is said of its character?

84. Cause of disturbances in Ireland? Daniel O’Connell? The Irish Coercion Bill?

85. For what is the year 1834 memorable? How were the planters compensated? How many slaves were set free? What is said of William Wilberforce? Close of this reign? For what was it marked?

the planters as a compensation for the loss of the slaves emancipated; and thus nearly three-fourths of a million of human beings were set free. This measure had been advocated since 1789 by William Wilberforce, who lived just long enough to see the triumph of his life's work, dying in 1833, the year in which the bill passed, though it was not to take effect till the 1st of August of the following year. William IV.'s reign was terminated by his death in 1837; but, brief as it was, it was replete with beneficent measures, which have made it dear to the memory of the English people.

1837 **86. Victoria**, daughter of the Duke of Kent, and niece of William IV., succeeded the latter on the throne, which she has continued to occupy up to the present time. The connection between Great Britain and Hanover, which had lasted 123 years, was dissolved on her accession, since the laws of the latter country exclude females from the throne. Her uncle, the Duke of Cumberland, eldest surviving son of George III., accordingly succeeded William IV. as King of Hanover. Queen Victoria was eighteen years of age at her accession, of pleasing, simple manners, and possessing a character well formed to habits of truthfulness, and a strict adherence to principle. No sovereign ever ascended the throne with a more solemn sense of the responsibility attending so lofty a position, or impressed with a more earnest devotion to the interests of her subjects.

87. In the first year of this reign, an insurrection broke out in Lower Canada, on account of the discontent of the people toward the government; but it was soon put down, and tranquillity restored. Upper and Lower Canada were afterward united into one province in order to give greater strength to the government (1840). At home everything

86. Who succeeded William IV.? What union was dissolved, and why? Who became King of Hanover? Age and character of Victoria?

87. Insurrection in Canada? The result? Disturbances at home? What was demanded?

was in a disturbed state in consequence of the discontent of the working-classes, whose sufferings from the scarcity of work, the high price of food, and the lowness of wages were extreme. Riots and insurrections against the government were the consequence, the people showing a determination to redress their grievances by resorting to physical force. A repeal of the Corn Laws was most vehemently demanded.

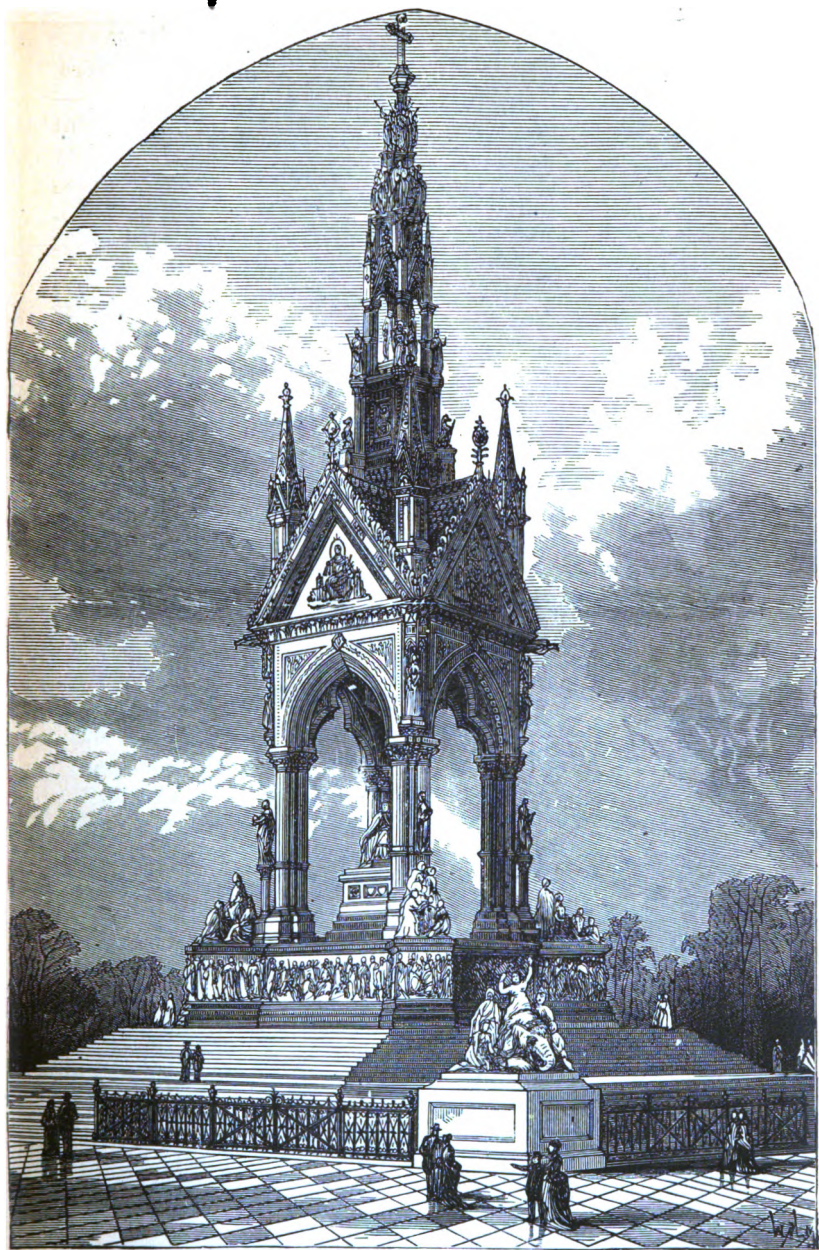
88. In connection with this agitation, a political association, called "Chartists," was formed, their object being to obtain a new Charter of government, embodying universal suffrage, vote by ballot, the abolition of the property qualification for members of Parliament, equal electoral districts, and the annual assembling of Parliament. Great mass meetings were held, at one of which as many as 200,000 persons were computed to have been present. This charter, signed by more than a million of citizens, was presented to Parliament (1839). The demands of the Chartists being refused, riots ensued, which, however, were soon put down.

89. In 1840, Queen Victoria was married to Prince Albert of Saxe-Co'burg-Go'tha (one of the German States). He was a man of refined tastes, and most benevolent and enlightened views; and, subsequently, through his efforts, many essential benefits were conferred upon the country. Parliament voted the Prince-consort an annuity of £30,000 for life, and by a bill of naturalization conferred upon him the rights and privileges of a British citizen. A short time previous to this, the Anti-corn-law League was formed at Manchester, through the influence of Richard Cobden* and others; the design being to procure the

* *Richard Cobden*, one of the most eminent of the English liberal politicians, was born in 1804. He spent the first part of his life in mercantile pursuits; and subsequently, represented various constituencies in the House of Commons, where he distinguished himself by his eloquence and clearness of thought. He twice visited the United States. He has been very aptly styled the "Apostle of Free Trade."

88. The Chartists? Their demands? Mass meetings? Presentation of the Charter? The result?

89. Marriage of Queen Victoria? Prince Albert? Anti-corn-law League? Its design? Repeal of the Corn Laws?



MEMORIAL MONUMENT.--In memory of Prince Albert.

abolition not only of these obnoxious and oppressive laws, but of all others that were in conflict with the principles of free trade. It was not, however, until 1846 that the Corn Laws were repealed by Parliament.

90. An insurrection in Cabul (*kah-bool'*) expelled the English from Af-ghan-is-tan'; and the retreating army, consisting of 17,000 men, nearly all perished among the mountain passes, from cold, famine, and the attacks of their enemies (1841). The next year, under Lord Ellenborough,* Cabul was retaken and its fortifications destroyed; but Afghanistan was abandoned. The reduction of Scinde (*sind*), a district on the lower Indus, by Sir Charles Na'pier,† was the next event of importance (1843), which was soon followed by a war with the Sikhs (*siks*) of the Pun-jab', who, after several severe conflicts, were obliged to yield to the skill and valor of the British. The conquest of these districts gave the British government control of the entire peninsula of Hindostan (1849).

91. During the same period a war was waged with China, being brought on by the unjustifiable conduct of the British traders in opium, who insisted upon importing that drug into the empire, in violation of her laws. The Chinese authorities having seized and destroyed the opium, and imprisoned Captain Elliot, the trade superintendent, the English shipping retaliated, and war ensued (1840). The island of Hong Kong was captured, and an army sent from India took Canton. Further north, Amoy was taken by Sir Henry Pottinger; and, the British forces having

* Then Governor-general of India. He had held previously prominent positions in the Cabinet under the Wellington and Peel administrations. After his return from India he continued to occupy a distinguished place in the government, and attained a very high distinction for his force and eloquence as a debater.

† Sir Charles James Napier was previously distinguished for his exploits in the Peninsular war. His subsequent career in India was marked by great ability both in the civil and military service. He returned to England in 1851, and died two years afterward. The history of the conquest of Scinde was written by his brother Sir William Napier, the author of the "History of the Peninsular War," considered the greatest military history in the English language.

90. The Afghan war? What was done by Lord Ellenborough? By Sir Charles Napier? Where is Scinde? (See map of British India). War with the Sikhs? Result of these wars?

91. Cause of the Chinese war? What was done by the English? What treaty was made?

marched to the walls of Nankin, the Chinese accepted the offered terms of peace. In accordance with the treaty, Hong Kong was ceded to the British; and five ports, including Canton, were opened to foreign trade. The Chinese government also paid \$21,000,000 as an indemnity for the expenses of the war (1842).

92. War was carried on at the same time in the Levant; the object being to preserve the Empire of Turkey from the hostile encroachments of Mehemet Ali (*ma'he-met ah'le*), the pasha of Egypt, which, it was thought, were secretly abetted by Russia and France. Having taken possession of Syria, and refusing to withdraw on the demand of Turkey, supported by Austria and Great Britain, a fleet was sent to enforce obedience, and the inhabitants of Syria were encouraged in an insurrection against him (1840). After Acre and some of the other Syrian ports had been taken by Commodore Napier,* and Alexandria threatened, the pasha agreed to withdraw his troops; and a treaty was shortly concluded with him by which Egypt was virtually yielded to him as an independent monarchy, he being made hereditary viceroy (1841).

93. At this time, the influence wielded by O'Connell in Ireland was enormous, the object of his efforts being to obtain a repeal of the Union. Monster meetings were held at Tara and other places, and immense sums of money were collected from the people to aid the cause. In consequence of some seditious expressions alleged to have been used at one of these meetings, O'Connell was arrested, and condemned on a charge of conspiracy and sedition, by the Court of Queen's Bench in Dublin. The judgment was afterward reversed by the House of Lords, but the agitation was crushed for the time. O'Connell died in 1847, at

* Sir Charles Napier, cousin to Sir Charles James Napier, the hero of Seindo, was born in 1786, and died in 1860, after a long life of active service.

92. War in Syria? How was it terminated? What did Egypt become?

93. Agitation in Ireland by O'Connell? Prosecution of O'Connell? His death?

Genoa, while on a journey to Rome, whither he was going for the benefit of his health.

94. The failure of the potato crop in Ireland led to increased distress in that unhappy country, vast numbers of the people dying of famine, notwithstanding the aid which was generously sent by England and the United States (1847). This was followed by a brief and abortive insurrection excited by the more violent members of the Repeal Association, who had styled themselves the "Young Ireland Party." Among them were William Smith O'Brien, Thomas Francis Meagher, and John Mitchell, the editor of the "United Irishmen." The leaders were transported, but some of them subsequently succeeded in making their escape to the United States.

95. During the same year, the Chartists, encouraged by the successful revolution in France, by which Louis Philippe had been driven from his throne (1848), renewed their agitation, and under the pretext of presenting a petition to Parliament, assembled in London to the number of 20,000. Great alarm and excitement prevailed; but, under the skilful dispositions of the Duke of Wellington, the rioters were promptly dispersed. The repeal of the Navigation Laws, which in various forms had existed for two centuries, indicated a still further advance in the principles of free trade (1849). Sir Robert Peel,* under whose energetic and enlightened administration these beneficent measures had been adopted, died shortly afterward from a fall from his horse (1850).

96. The Great Exhibition, or "World's Fair," for displaying the products of the manufacturing industry of all nations, was designed to encourage the same principles of

* Sir Robert Peel, one of the most eminent of British statesmen, was born in England in 1786.

94. Famine in Ireland? Insurrection under O'Brien and others?

95. Renewal of the Chartists' agitation? How terminated? What repeal took place? Death of Sir Robert Peel?

96. The World's Fair? Its object? Where held? By whom conceived and encouraged?

free trade. It was held in the Crystal Palace, at Hyde Park, a building designed by Sir Joseph Paxton, and of immense extent and great architectural beauty (1851). The first idea of this enterprise was conceived by Prince Albert, who took a leading part in its consummation; and it had also received considerable support from Sir Robert Peel.

97. A war of two years with the Caffres of South Africa (1851-3) and a second Burmese war (1852) were the means of extending the conquests of Great Britain in those regions. By the war with the Burmese the British gained the province of Pegu. This was soon followed by a war of much greater magnitude and importance, brought on by the ambitious designs of the Czar Nicholas upon the Ottoman Empire. On the ground that all members of the Greek church should be under his government, he invaded the Danubian principalities of Wallachia and Moldavia, with the design of annexing them to his own dominions (1853).

98. Great Britain having protested in vain against these encroachments on the part of Russia, entered into an alliance with France, and declared war against the Czar (1854). A fleet under Admiral Sir Charles Napier was sent to the Baltic, and destroyed the batteries of Bomarsund,* but failed to attack the great fortress of Cronstadt, at the entrance to the Russian capital. French and English fleets proceeded to the Black Sea and blockaded the harbor of Sebastopol;† and a French army under Marshal St. Arnaud (*ar'no*),‡ joined with an English force under Lord Raglan,§ entered the Crimea. The allied armies were opposed at the Alma || river by a Russian force under Prince Menschikoff,

* On the island of Åland, in the Baltic Sea.

† Sebastopol, a strongly fortified seaport in the Crimea—a peninsula in the southern part of Russia.

‡ Previously distinguished in the war in Algiers. He was born at Paris in 1801.

§ Served with distinction in the Peninsular War, under Wellington, also in the battle of Waterloo, where he lost his sword-arm. He was born in 1788, and was descended from one of the noblest families in England.

|| The *Alma* is a small river in the Crimea; *Baluk'ava*, a town on the Black Sea, southwest from Sebastopol; *Inkermann*, a seaport near Balaklava.

97. What wars followed? What was gained by Great Britain? Where is Pegu? (See map of British India). What caused another war? Encroachments of the Czar Nicholas?

98. What alliance was formed? Expedition to the Baltic? To the Black Sea? Battle of Alma?

which they routed with considerable loss September 20, (1854).

99. Unable directly to march on Sebastopol, the allies next proceeded to the harbor of Balaklava, situated a little to the south of it, in order that they might obtain supplies from their ships. In a few weeks they advanced and opened fire upon the place, which, in the meanwhile, had been strengthened by almost impregnable fortifications. An attack by the Russians on the British lines at Balaklava was repulsed after a severe battle (October 25), chiefly memorable for the brilliant but useless charge made by the light cavalry brigade under the Earl of Cardigan. Mistaking the order of Lord Raglan, this body, consisting of 600 men, made an attack upon the Russian artillery over a plain a mile and a half in length, and returned leaving more than two-thirds of their number dead on the field.

100. Another attack by the Russians at Inkermann was repulsed with terrific loss (November 5), after which the Russians kept themselves, with occasional sorties, within the defences of the city. The sufferings of the English troops during the ensuing winter were of the most heart-rending character, being ill supplied with food and the means of shelter from the inclemency of the weather, although several ships laden with stores were lying in the harbor of Balaklava. This caused a vote of censure on the government by the House of Commons, and a change of administration, Lord Palmerston becoming premier.

101. Effectual means of relieving the army were at once taken. A railway was constructed from Balaklava to the camp; and although constantly exposed to the fire of the enemy's batteries, supplies were successfully transported to the army. A submarine telegraph having been laid under

99. Commencement of the siege of Sebastopol? Battle of Balaklava? Charge of the Light Brigade?

100. Battle of Inkermann? Its result? Sufferings of the British troops? Change in the administration?

101. How was the army relieved? Submarine telegraph? Death of the Czar? Change of English and French generals?

the Black Sea to Varna, telegrams from the seat of war communicated to the government at London the intelligence of events an hour or two after their occurrence. Notwithstanding the death of the Czar and the accession of his son Alexander (March 2, 1855), the war was continued. Twice were the English and French generals changed. Canrobert (*can-ro-bare'*), assumed the command on the death of St. Arnaud, but was superseded by General Pelissier (*pa-lis'se-a*) (May, 1855). On the death of Raglan, the command of the British troops devolved upon General Simpson, who was soon succeeded by Sir William Codrington.

102. The French having succeeded in storming an important outwork called the "Mamelon," a terrific bombardment was kept up for several days, after which an assault was made, resulting in the capture of the fort called the Malakoff (September 8). The English also succeeded in storming a powerful fortress called the Redan, but were unable to hold it under the dreadful fire of the Russian guns. Sebastopol was, however, no longer tenable; and was therefore abandoned by the Russians during the night. The allies immediately took possession, and caused all the fortresses and dockyards to be destroyed. Thus terminated, after a duration of eleven months, one of the most extraordinary sieges described in history.

103. The fall of Sebastopol was soon followed by negotiations for peace, which was concluded by a treaty at the commencement of the next year (1856). Russia resigned her claims to the Danubian principalities; the freedom of the Danube and the Black Sea was guaranteed; and the Christian subjects of Turkey were placed under the protection of the contracting Powers. It was during this war that Florence Nightingale, so illustrious for her self-sacri-

102. What is said of the storming of the Mamelon? Of the Malakoff and Redan? What followed these events? Destruction of Sebastopol? What is said of the siege and its duration?

103. When was peace concluded? The terms of the treaty? Florence Nightingale?

ficing deeds of humanity, took charge of the hospital at Scutari, and devoted herself, with her band of nurses, to the relief of the sick and wounded.* Her ministrations were like those of an angel to the suffering soldiers, all of whom were comforted by her presence and cheered by her gentle words of sympathy or her smiles of encouragement.

104. The next year (1857) is remarkable for the Indian mutiny, occasioned by the introduction of Enfield rifles, for which it was necessary to use greased cartridges. The native soldiers being forbidden by their religion to taste animal food, revolted, because in loading the rifles they were compelled to bite off the ends of the cartridges. A strong feeling of alarm and discontent had also been excited in the minds of the native chiefs by the dethronement of the King of Oude† (*owd*) by Lord Dalhousie, the Governor-General (1856), to which was added a feeling of independence on the part of the Sepoys, the result of the injudicious and inefficient management of the East India Company.

105. The first outbreak occurred at Mee'rut, where a number of the Sepoys having been imprisoned for refusing to use the cartridges, their comrades broke open the gaol and released them, together with a large number of other prisoners. A massacre of the Europeans was immediately commenced (March 10, 1857); and the insurgents then marched on Delhi (*del'le*) and captured it, with all its immense stores of fire-arms and ammunition. This city was retaken by the British troops after a siege of two months, by means of the most desperate fighting, and with great loss of life (September). Cawnpore and Lucknow were the scenes of other insurrections. At the former place

* Florence Nightingale was born of English parents at Florence in 1823. Although highly educated and brilliantly accomplished, she early exhibited an intense devotion to the alleviation of suffering. In 1844, she commenced to give her attention to the condition of hospitals, which she visited and inspected in various parts of Europe, and studied under the Sisters of Charity in Paris. In 1851 she went into training as a nurse in an institution on the Rhine. All this specially fitted her for the great work which she performed in the Crimea, and by means of which she sacrificed her own health. Her "Notes on Nursing" was published in 1858.

† Situated in the northern part of Hindostan. Its capital is Lucknow.

104. What caused the Indian Mutiny? Discontent among the native chiefs?

105. Where did the revolt commence? What followed? Recapture of Delhi? What occurred at Cawnpore and Lucknow?

the English were massacred with frightful atrocity by the Sepoys under Nena Sahib, (*sah'eeb*), who was afterward defeated by General Havelock* and Sir Colin Campbell.†

106. These two officers displayed the greatest skill and courage in their operations against the rebellion, which was finally crushed after a two years' struggle (1859). The dreadful outrages on men, women, and children perpetrated during this war by the native soldiers, and the horrible punishments afterward inflicted upon the latter by the British, scarcely find a parallel in history. This insurrection having demonstrated the inability of the East India Company to govern so large a population, its possessions were transferred to the crown, and the Queen was formally proclaimed Sovereign of India, its affairs being managed by a special member of the Cabinet (the Indian Secretary), assisted by a council, and the immediate government vested in a Viceroy, with the powers formerly possessed by the Governor-General (September 1, 1858). Thus, after an existence of more than two hundred and fifty years, the East India Company, which had founded and governed this mighty empire, ceased to exist.

107. During the Indian war hostilities were resumed against the Chinese in consequence of their seizure of a British smuggling vessel. The English governor of Hong Kong, regarding this as a national affront, ordered the bombardment of Canton, and thus brought on another Chinese war. The French took part in it with the English; and their combined forces took Canton, stormed the de-

* Previously distinguished in the Afghan and Sikh wars. He died of dysentery before the Indian war ended (November, 1857).

† Sir Colin Campbell, afterward Lord Clyde, one of the most distinguished British generals of modern times, was born at Glasgow in 1792. He served in the Peninsular war, and took part in the expedition to the United States in 1814. He also served in the Chinese, Afghan, and Crimean wars, taking a prominent part in the battles of the Alma and Balaklava. He received his title in 1868, as a reward for his exploits in India.

106. What is said of Havelock and Sir Colin Campbell? The atrocities committed? The dissolution of the East India Company? Subsequent government of India?

107. What caused a renewal of the war with China? What was done by the English and French forces? Treaty of peace? Difficulties with Persia?

fences of Peking, and having reached that city took and pillaged the Emperor's summer palace. The Chinese then submitted to the terms of peace dictated by these European conquerors, throwing open the country to the merchants and missionaries of Europe (1860). Difficulties with Persia about the same time were settled in a similar manner, the British ships capturing its chief port, Bushire (*boo-sheer*'),* and other towns, thus compelling the Shah to sue for peace.

108. By the sagacity and skill of Lord Elgin, the British minister in China, communications were opened with Japan, affording to British enterprise opportunities for a very valuable commerce with that country. The attempt to establish friendly relations with Abyssinia was not so successful. One of the native chiefs having made quite extensive conquests, assumed the title of King Theodore; and, taking offence at the English, imprisoned the consul and several other persons, subjecting them to very great indignities and sufferings. Every attempt to procure their release by negotiation having failed, an expedition under Sir Robert Napier was sent to accomplish their rescue by force. After a difficult march of four hundred miles from the sea-coast, Magdala, the stronghold of Theodore, was reached and soon stormed. Theodore having perished by his own hand, and the captives having been released, the British retired from the country (1868). [*See Note 11.*]

109. Another measure of parliamentary reform was carried in 1867, the effect of which was to extend the elective franchise, and to increase the number of representatives for Scotland and Ireland by equalizing the election districts. The most important measure which has been adopted since then is the abolition of the established church in Ireland, a very tardy act of justice to that long-suffering and much-

* *Bushire* is an important seaport, situated on the Persian Gulf.

108. Commercial intercourse with Japan? Difficulties with Abyssinia? War with Theodore? Its result?

109. Parliamentary reform? Disestablishment of the Irish Church.

oppressed country. This was carried after a very violent struggle in both houses. Its effect was to free the Irish people from the support of a church to which they do not belong, and which is opposed to their own religious faith.

110. The greatest domestic affliction which the Queen has suffered was the loss of Prince Albert, who died in 1861. His public spirit, beneficent character, and ardent zeal in all enterprises for the benefit of the country, and the enthusiastic interest which he took in both science and art, made him the idol of the people, and his death was deplored as a national loss. He left four sons and five daughters. The eldest of the latter was married in 1858, to Frederic William, Crown Prince of Prussia; and Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, was married, in 1863, to Princess Alexandra of Denmark. Several other foreign alliances by marriage have also been made.

111. The principal events since 1870 have been the establishment of a general system of popular education; the settlement of the Alabama claims on the part of the United States (1872); the Ballot Act of 1872, by which all elections for members of Parliament must be by secret ballot; the Ashantee war, in which Coomassie was taken and the king compelled to submit to the British claims (1874); the Afghan war of 1878, in which the British made a successful invasion of the country, occupying the principal cities, and compelling full submission to their terms, the cession of Cyprus to England, by Turkey (1878); and the war with the Zulus (*zoo'loos*) a South African tribe. The Zulu war was brought to a close by the capture of the king of the tribe in 1879. [*See Note 12, end of the Section.*]

110. Death of Prince Albert? His character? His children?

111. Principal events since 1870. Common school system? The Ashantee war? The Afghan war? Cession of Cyprus? Zulu war?

STATE OF SOCIETY SINCE THE ACCESSION OF GEORGE IV

111. During this period, which comprehends the last half century (from 1820 to 1870), the political changes which have occurred indicate a marked progress in liberal government, and the spread of enlightened views as to the rights and privileges of the middle and lower orders of the people. Sounder and more judicious principles of government have prevailed, as are indicated by the repeal of the corn and navigation laws, the measures of parliamentary reform adopted, and the establishment of a free trade policy.*

112. The severity of criminal law has been greatly mitigated, in pursuance of a policy advocated during the first part of the century by Romilly, Mackintosh, and others. Petty theft, until 1808, was punished by death, and the execution of scores of criminals together was a frequent spectacle in London. In 1837 a bill was passed abolishing the death-penalty for at least two-thirds of the crimes to which it had been assigned; and since that time it has been further restricted, and the whole character of criminal legislation has been greatly ameliorated.

113. The progress of pure religious sentiment has been strikingly manifested by the establishment of very many societies for the propagation of Christianity, the diffusion of religious knowledge, and the philanthropic aid as well as instruction of the ignorant, the destitute, and the suffering in all parts of the kingdom; while the foreign missionary enterprises have been very numerous and active. Much has also been done to promote the cause of general educa-

*The emancipation of the Catholics from the political disabilities under which they suffered so long, and the admission of Jews to Parliament (1858), are additional indications of the progress of enlightened sentiments, and the extinction of those prejudices, which are the offspring of ignorance and bigotry.

111. Political changes during the last half-century? What indications of a sounder and more enlightened policy?

112. Changes in criminal law? The death-penalty?

113. How has the progress of religious sentiment been indicated? The cause of education? What societies have been founded with this aim?

tion, by improvements in the national schools, and by the establishment of societies for the spread of knowledge among the people. Of the latter the London Mechanics' Institute, founded in 1823; the Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge, instituted in 1826; and the University of London, founded in 1828, are examples.

114. The material progress made by the nation during this period has been truly wonderful. The achievements in science and art perhaps surpass those of all the preceding centuries combined, and bring to the poorest classes comforts and conveniences which could not previously have been enjoyed by kings and nobles. The country has been crossed in every direction by railroads of the very best construction; ocean steam-vessels have revolutionized commerce and navigation; the electric telegraph has brought every part of the kingdom into instant communication with all other parts of the civilized world; while the building of iron-clad war-steamers has rendered obsolete all former achievements in naval architecture, and changed entirely the character of maritime warfare.

115. The improvements in printing, including the general use of stereotype and electrotype plates, and the steam printing-press, have greatly facilitated the diffusion of knowledge, and augmented the number of journals, periodicals, and books of all kinds circulated among the people. The literature of the period is enriched by the productions of Ten'ny-son, the poet-laureate; Thack'e-ray, Dickens, and Bulwer, among novelists; and Ma-cau'lay, Carlyle, Buckle, De Quincey, and many others, historians, essayists, etc., who, in every department of prose and poetry, have shed lustre upon the language and literature of their country.

114. Material progress of the country? Science and art. What improvements have been effected?

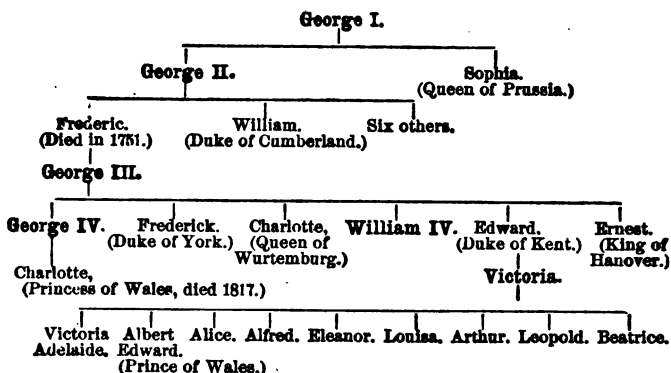
115. Improvements in printing? Their effect? The literature of the period? Some of the most prominent writers?

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

- 1714. **George I.** Reigned 13 years.
- 1715. Invasion of Scotland by the Pretender.
- 1720. The South Sea bubble.
- 1721. Commencement of Sir Robert Walpole's administration.
- 1727. **George II.** Reigned 33 years.
- 1743. Battle of Dettingen.
- 1745. Battle of Fontenoy.
- “ Invasion of Scotland by Charles Edward.
- 1746. Battle of Culloden.
- 1748. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.
- 1759. Capture of Quebec, and death of General Wolfe.
- 1760. **George III.** Reigned 60 years.
- 1775. War of the American Revolution.
- 1783. The American colonies acknowledged free and independent.
- 1788. Trial of Warren Hastings commenced.
- 1798. Battle of the Nile.
- 1801. Legislative Union of Great Britain and Ireland.
- 1802. Peace of Amiens.
- 1805. Battle of Trafalgar. Death of Lord Nelson.
- 1809. Battle of Corunna. Death of Sir John Moore.
- 1814. Treaty of Ghent.
- 1815. Battle of Waterloo.
- 1820. **George IV.** Reigned 10 years.
- 1827. Battle of Navarino. Greece made an independent kingdom.
- 1830. **William IV.** Reigned 7 years.
- 1834. Slavery abolished in all the British colonies.
- 1837. **Victoria.**
- 1841. Afghan war. Cabul taken. Chinese war.
- 1846. Conquest of Scinde by Sir Charles Napier.
- “ Corn-laws repealed.
- 1849. Repeal of the navigation laws.
- 1854. Battles of the Alma, Balaklava, and Inkermann.
- 1855. Capture of Sebastopol. End of the Crimean war.
- 1857. Indian Mutiny. Delhi taken. Chinese war.
- 1858. Abolition of the East India Company.
- 1861. Death of Prince Albert.
- 1863. Expedition to Abyssinia.
- 1869. Disestablishment of the Irish Church.
- 1878. Cession of Cyprus to England.
- 1879. Zulu war closed.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK



REVIEW QUESTIONS.

- | | PAGE |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. How many persons named George have been kings of England?..... | 219-240 |
| 2. Which of them were not born in England?..... | 219-221-227 |
| 3. Who was George I., and when did he become king?..... | 219 |
| 4. What efforts was he compelled to make in order to retain the throne?..... | 219 |
| 5. Give an account of his troubles with Sweden and Spain..... | 220 |
| 6. Give an account of the project known as the South Sea Scheme..... | 220 |
| 7. State what you further can in relation to George I..... | 221 |
| 8. State what you can of Sir Robert Walpole..... | 220-221-222 |
| 9. Name, in order, the principal events in the reign of George II..... | 221-230 |
| 10. Give an account of his contest with Spain..... | 222 |
| 11. State how England became involved in the War of the Austrian Succession..... | 222-223 |
| 12. Name the principal events of the war in which England was a party..... | 223-224 |
| 13. Give an account of the danger that threatened George II. at home..... | 223-224 |
| 14. Of the contest between the English and French in North America..... | 223-225 |
| 15. Of the events of the famous "Seven Years' War"..... | 225-226-231 |
| 16. Give an account of the conquests made by the English in India..... | 227-228-229 |
| 17. What can you state of the death and character of George II?..... | 226-227 |
| 18. Of Sir William Pitt, Earl of Chatham?..... | 226-230-232-233-234-235 |
| 19. Name, in order, the principal events in the reign of George III..... | 230-249 |
| 20. What train of events led to the war with the American colonies?..... | 231-232-233 |
| 21. Name, in order, the principal events of that war..... | 232-234-235 |
| 22. How did France become involved in the war?..... | 235 |
| 23. What events of the war were the direct consequences to France?..... | 235-236 |
| 24. With what other nations was England at war at the same time?..... | 235 |
| 25. What were the consequences to Spain and Holland?..... | 235 |
| 26. State what you can of Warren Hastings and his trial..... | 235-236 |

	PAGE
27. How did England become involved in the French Revolution ?.....	237
28. In what events of the war that followed was England a party ?	237-238-239-240
29. Give an account of the war against the league of Russia, Sweden, and Denmark.....	240
30. Of Ireland and the Irish during the reign of George III. 238-239-note, p. 239-240-241	
31. Of Napoleon's operations in Egypt and Syria	237-238
32. Of affairs on land and water while Napoleon was First Consul. 238-239-240-241	
33. When did Napoleon become Emperor of France, and when King of Italy ?	241
34. What were the immediate consequences of his assumption of power ?....	241
35. What successes did Napoleon soon gain in Austria, Russia, and Prussia ?	241-243
36. What train of events led to the "Peninsular War ?".....	241-242-243
37. Name, in order, the principal events of that war.....	243-244-245
38. In which of them were the French successful ?.....	243-244
39. In which of them were the English successful ?.....	243-244-245
40. Name the distinguished officers, French and English, of the war... 243-244-245	
41. What successes, meanwhile, had Napoleon gained over Austria ?.....	244
42. Why did Napoleon consent to retire to the island of Elba ?.....	245
43. Give the further account of Napoleon.....	246-247
44. Give an account of England's second war with the United States.....	245-246
45. What consequences to England followed the establishment of peace in Europe ?.....	248
46. What can you state of the death and character of George III. ?.....	248-249
47. What wars occurred during his reign ?.....	250-248
48. Name, in order, the principal events of his reign.....	250-275
49. Who were the first three Brunswick kings ?.....	219-221-230
50. What political advancement did the people make during their reign ?... 249-250	
51. What advancement in religious matters did they make ?.....	250-251
52. What advancement did they make in commerce and navigation ?.....	253
53. What, in the methods and implements of agriculture ?.....	253
54. What, in the industrial arts ?.....	253
55. What, in the manufacture of iron ?.....	253-254
56. What, in the fine arts ?.....	254-255
57. What progress was made in scientific discovery ?.....	255-256
58. What was accomplished respecting literature ?.....	256
59. Name the principal events in the reign of George IV. ?.....	256-259
60. What persons named William have been kings of England ?.....	259
61. What were the principal events in the reign of William IV. ?.....	259-261
62. By whom was William IV. succeeded on the throne ?.....	261
63. Name, in order, the principal events of Victoria's reign.....	275
64. Give an account of the Insurrection in Canada.....	261
65. Who were the "Chartists," and what did they undertake ?.....	262-263
66. Give an account of the war in Hindostan.....	263
67. Give an account of the two wars with China.....	263-264-270-271
68. Give an account of the war in the Levant.....	264
69. Give an account of Daniel O'Connell.....	250-260-264-265
70. Of the war on the part of England and France against Russia.....	266-267-268
71. Of the war growing out of the Indian mutiny in 1857.....	269-270
72. Of the troubles with King Theodore of Abyssinia.....	271
73. State what you can of Prince Albert.....	262-273

NOTES.

1. Battle of Culloden (p. 224, ¶ 11).—"This never-to-be-forgotten battle, which struck the death-blow to the cause of the Stuarts, was fought on the 16th of April, 1746. After many gallant charges, the Highlanders were overpowered by the superior discipline of the king's troops, under the command of the Duke of Cumberland, and totally defeated. Twelve hundred are said to have been slain or wounded on the field or in the pursuit. The road as far as Inverness was strewn with dead bodies, and a great number of people, who from motives of curiosity had come to see the battle, were sacrificed to the indiscriminating vengeance of the victors. Provoked by former disgraces, the soldiers were actuated by the most savage thirst for vengeance. Not contented with the blood which was profusely shed in the heat of action, they traversed the field after the battle, and massacred those miserable wretches who lay maimed and expiring. Detachments were sent off on all hands to hunt down the fugitives, and lay waste the country with fire and sword. The castles of Glengary and Lochiel were plundered and burned; every house, hut, or habitation met with the same fate, without distinction. All the cattle and provisions were carried off; the men were either shot on the mountains like wild beasts, or put to death in cold blood without form or trial; the women, after having seen their husbands and fathers murdered, were subjected to brutal violence, and turned out naked with their children to starve on the barren heaths. One whole family was enclosed in a barn and consumed to ashes. These ministers of vengeance were so alert in the execution of their office, that in a few days there was neither house, cottage, nor beast to be seen in the compass of fifty miles; all was ruin, silence, and desolation."—*Hume's History of England*.

2. Accession of George III. (p. 227, ¶ 16).—"It is related that, on the morning of the 25th of October, George, Prince of Wales, taking an early ride in the neighborhood of Kew, where he was residing, a messenger came to him, bearing a note from a German valet-de-chambre who was about the person of George II., which note bore a private mark, as previously agreed, that declared the king was dead. The prince, suddenly become George III., showed no surprise or emotion; dropped no word to indicate what had happened; but, saying his horse was lame, turned back to Kew; and, dismounting, thus addressed his groom: 'I have said this horse is lame; I forbid you to say to the contrary.' This is Walpole's relation, and this his comment: 'The first moment of the new reign afforded a symptom of the prince's character; of that cool dissimulation in which he had been so well initiated by his mother, and which comprehended almost the whole of what she had taught him.'"—*Knight's History of England*.

3. Pitt's Resignation of Office (p. 230, ¶ 21).—"On Monday, the fifth day of October (1761), William Pitt, now venerable from years and glory, the greatest minister of his century, one of the few very great men of his age, among orators the only peer of Demosthenes, the man without title or fortune, who, finding England in an abyss of weakness and disgrace, conquered Canada and the Ohio valley and Guadaloupe, and sustained Prussia from annihilation, humbled France, gained the dominion of the seas, won supremacy in Hindostan, and at home vanquished faction, stood in the presence of the young and inexperienced king. He received the seals with ease and firmness, without requesting that Pitt should resume

his office; yet he manifested concern for the loss of so valuable a minister, approved his past services, and made him an unlimited offer of rewards. * * * Thus he retired, having destroyed the balance of the European colonial system by the ascendancy of England, confirmed the implacable hostility of France and Spain to his country, and impaired his own popularity by accepting a pension and surrendering his family as hostages to the aristocracy."—*Bancroft's History of the United States*.

4. **Appearance of Warren Hastings** (p. 236, ¶ 85).—"Hastings advanced to the bar, and bent his knee. The culprit was, indeed, not unworthy of that great presence. He had ruled an extensive and populous country, had made laws and treaties, had sent forth armies, had set up and pulled down princes. And in his high place he had so borne himself, that all had feared him, that most had loved him, and that hatred itself could deny him no title to glory, except virtue. He looked like a great man, and not like a bad man. A person small and emaciated, yet deriving dignity from a carriage which, while it indicated deference to the court, indicated, also, habitual self-possession and self-respect; a high and intellectual forehead; a brow pensive but not gloomy; a mouth of inflexible decision; a face pale and worn, but serene, on which was written, as legibly as under the great picture in the council-chamber at Calcutta, *Mens æqua in arduis*. [A mind serene in difficulties.] Such was the aspect with which the great proconsul presented himself to his judges. His counsel accompanied him; men, all of whom were afterward raised by their talents and learning to the highest posts in their profession."—*Macaulay—Miscellaneous Essays*.

5. **Death of William Pitt** (p. 242, ¶ 48).—"Austerlitz," Wilberforce wrote in his diary, 'killed Pitt.' Though he was still but forty-seven, the hollow voice and wasted frame of the great minister had long told that death was near; and the blow to his hopes proved fatal. 'Roll up that map,' he said, pointing to a map of Europe which hung upon the wall; 'it will not be wanted these ten years.' Once only he rallied from stupor; and those who bent over him caught a faint murmur of 'My country! How I leave my country!' On the 23d of January, 1806, he breathed his last; and was laid in Westminster Abbey, in the grave of Chatham. 'What grave,' exclaimed Lord Wellesley, 'contains such a father and such a son? What sepulchre embosoms the remains of so much human excellence and glory?'—*Green's Short History of the English People*.

6. **Death of George III.** (p. 249, ¶ 63).—"His bodily health had continued good till within two or three months of his dissolution; but he had not enjoyed a lucid interval since the beginning of the regency, in 1811. His Majesty's recollection of past events was exact, and occasional sketches of the persons and characters of his early ministers often formed the subject of his lonely soliloquies at Windsor. He had long been totally blind, and almost deaf; and from the aversion he had to any of his attendants rendering him personal assistance, his beard had been suffered to grow to an almost patriarchal length. Before his deafness he frequently amused himself at the harpsichord, and seldom played anything but the music of his favorite, Handel. His dissolution took place on the 29th of January, 1820, in the eighty-second year of his age."—*Wade's Chronology*.

7. **Person and Character of George III.** (p. 249, ¶ 63).—"He was tall, well-formed, his features were bold, and his presence commanding. His first entrance into public life, being then but in his twenty-third year, made a great impression; he had a great advantage over his predecessors in greater affability of manner, and in being acquainted with the language, habits, and institutions of the

English. 'Born and educated in this country,' said his Majesty in his opening speech to the parliament, 'I glory in the name of Briton, and I hold the civil and religious rights of my people equally dear with the most valuable prerogatives of my crown.' And never, throughout the course of a long and arduous reign of nearly sixty years, did his actions as a man or a prince contradict the boast. Profoundly yet unaffectedly religious, pure in his own morals, and careful to set an example to those around him, George III. was the best husband and father in his own dominions; while as a king, no man knew better than he the principles of the British constitution; and whether he be regarded in his public or in his private capacity, whether he be tried as a prince or as a man, a more upright character never moved in any circle of society."—*Gleig's Memoirs of Warren Hastings*.

8. **Richard Arkwright** (p. 253, ¶ 70).—"Few lives present nobler lessons of endurance and upward striving by dint of brain than that of Richard Arkwright. The family of a Preston operative received its thirteenth blessing in 1732, in the person of a little boy christened Richard, who, so far as we know, never went to school, and blossomed by-and-by into a 'subterraneous' barber, shaving people in a dingy cellar for pence and halfpence. Sick of this, he took to dealing in human hair, which he dyed and dressed for the wigmakers. The scanty leisure of his married life was devoted to mechanical experiments, especially to the means of securing perpetual motion. An inward glance at his own brainwork would have shown him something more like the solution of this problem than any machine he could invent. The want of cotton weft—that is, yarn to be woven into cloth—pressed heavily on all the weavers of the country side, who were often obliged to spend precious time gathering weft from house to house, as the groaning Hebrews gathered stubble for their bricks. Arkwright thought of this, as he tramped in search of hair, and shaped out a thought, which a working clockmaker, called Kay, enabled him to put into the form of a model. The hair business fell off; and his angry wife broke the models that pinched their meals. His wife then left him, his clothes went to rags, his money melted into a few halfpence, before the proud day came when the completed model of the spinning-machine stood before him. * * * A man of great tenacity and strength of brain was this inventor, who at fifty gave two hours of his day to the drudgery of grammar and penmanship—branches which the sordid life of his childhood had prevented him from acquiring."—*Collier's History of England*.

9. **James Brindley** (p. 254, ¶ 72).—"A Derbyshire millwright, named James Brindley, born in 1716, having distinguished himself greatly in the improvement of mill machinery, received an introduction to that shy savant known as Francis, third Duke of Bridgewater. His Grace was very anxious to supply Manchester with coal from his pits at Worsley. Would Brindley construct a road of water for the purpose? Purse and brain thus uniting, achieved that great canal of twenty-seven miles, which bears the name of the nobleman whose munificence called it into being. Leaping other streams by means of a far-stretching aqueduct, flowing in tunneled caverns deep under ground, the watery road—the first of its kind in Britain since Romap days—remains a remarkable memorial of genius and scientific skill. Begun in 1758, the work occupied about five years, during which Brindley directed nearly all the operations."—*Collier's History of England*.

10. **George Stephenson** (p. 254, ¶ 72).—"The cabin of a poor colliery fireman at Wylan in Northumberland was gladdened on the 9th of June, 1781, by the cry of a new-born child, who by-and-by, growing old enough to herd cows, spent hot afternoons in the fields of Dewley Burn, playing at the manufacture of engines with

mud and the stiff green tubes of hemlock. A toy windmill, made at the same time, also pointed with extraordinary clearness to the future destiny of the young mechanician. The second stage of his life, from fourteen to twenty-one, presents the picture of a steady, earnest youth, following in his father's steps, earning sufficient weekly shillings as a fireman and plugman, and displaying the thoroughness of his natural bent by the ceaseless delight he enjoyed in taking to pieces and polishing with loving care the bars and cylinders he had in charge. Conscious of the need of instruction, he attended a night-school for the purpose of learning to read and write, and then plunged into the mysteries of arithmetic, which he soon mastered by working questions in the engine-room. His life then intertwined with that of a pretty farm-servant, Fanny Henderson, who sent him her shoes to mend—he had taken to that mode of eking out his earnings—and whom he married in 1802. The study of mathematics, the repairing of clocks, and the fascinating search after the grand mystery of machines—how to secure perpetual motion—gave zest and unceasing occupation to the evenings of two bright years, during which his famous son Robert was born at Killingworth. The death of his wife, the distress of his father, and a host of other troubles, which thickened round him now, would have driven some men to the drinking-shop and ruin. But George, who was made of other metal, was reserved for nobler work.”—*Collier's History of England*.

11. The Abyssinian Expedition (p. 271, ¶ 108).—“Of late years the whole of Abyssinia had become subject to a warlike and cruel ruler, Lij Kara, otherwise called the Emperor Theodorus. Although a man of violent and ungovernable temper, he was yet, by his talent and ambition, far in advance of his countrymen. The aim of his life, it is said, was to revive the ancient Ethiopian empire, and to establish Christianity in the whole of his dominions. He desired to obtain the aid of Great Britain against his enemies, the Turks and Egyptians; and to this end he favored our consuls, and addressed a letter to the queen. For a space of several months no reply was made to it. In the meantime Theodorus, irritated by the apparent neglect of his communication, and led to believe that the English were favoring the Egyptians, imprisoned Captain Cameron, her Majesty's consul in Abyssinia, with several other Europeans. He subsequently detained Mr. Rassam, who, with two companions, Lieut. Prideaux and Dr. Blanc, had been charged by Earl Russell with the mission of obtaining Consul Cameron's release. The steps taken by these gentlemen having proved fruitless, the so-called Abyssinian Expedition was organized. The forces were placed under the command of Sir Robert Napier, afterwards Lord Napier of Magdala; and in April, 1868, the campaign was terminated with entire success, by the taking of the fortress of Magdala, the death of Theodorus, and the consequent release of the whole of his European captives.”—*Selby's Events to be Remembered*.

12. Character of Prince Albert (p. 272, ¶ 110).—“Upon his after education were founded those services to the country which rendered Albert one of the most beloved princes that ever graced the royal family of England. With a delicacy and tact which it is difficult to describe, the prince became the judicious patron of arts and learning and national commerce; yet this was not merely courtly favor, for to his working hand and far-seeing eye we owe the great Exhibition of 1851, and the International of 1862; the foundation of schools of science and art throughout the country; and the advancement of Great Britain in the industrial arts, as well as in the arts of design, within a few years, with a success exceeding half a century of former growth.”—*Selby's Events to be Remembered*.

TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?

What led to it?

What resulted therefrom?

Battle of the Spurs.....	130
Meeting of Henry VIII. and Francis.....	132
English Reformation.....	135
Suppression of the Monasteries.....	136
Printing of the Bible.....	138
Popular Insurrection.....	140
Persecution of the Protestants.....	143
Rise of the Puritans.....	146, 164
Defeat of the "Invincible Armada".....	147
Settlement of Virginia.....	161
Establishment of East India Co.	161
Translation of the Bible.....	164
Scottish Covenant.....	168
Great Civil War.....	173
Execution of Charles I.....	178
Rebellion in Ireland.....	179
The Restoration.....	185
Defeat of the Dutch Fleet.....	187, 188
Great Plague.....	188
Great Fire.....	188
The Cabal.....	189
Popish Plot.....	191
Habeas Corpus Act.....	192
Rye House Plot.....	192
Revolution of 1688.....	196, 197, 198
Massacre of Glencoe.....	200
Battle of the Boyne.....	202
Treaty of Ryswick.....	203
Union of England and Scotland.....	207
South Sea Scheme.....	220
Seven Years' War.....	225, 231
Passage of Stamp Act.....	231
American Revolution.....	232, 233
Legislative Union of England and Ireland.....	239
Treaty of Amiens.....	240
Peninsular War.....	243
Battle of Waterloo.....	247
War against Burmah.....	258

Emancipation of the Slaves.....	261
War with Afghanistan.....	263
War with China.....	263, 270
Caffre War.....	266
Crimean War.....	266, 267, 268
Indian Mutiny.....	269
Dissolution of East India Company.....	270
Abyssinian War.....	271

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?

With what events connected?

Other incidents of their lives?

Earl of Warwick.....	126
Lambert Simnel.....	127
Perkin Warbeck.....	127
John Cabot.....	129
Catharine of Aragon.....	130, 133
Cardinal Wolsey.....	133
Anne Boleyn.....	133, 136
Thomas Cranmer.....	135
Sir Thomas More.....	135
Bishop Fisher.....	135
Mary Queen of Scots.....	137, 148
Catharine Parr.....	138
Anne Ascue.....	138
Henry Howard.....	138
Sir Thomas Wyatt.....	139
Duke of Somerset.....	139, 140, 141
Lady Jane Grey.....	141, 142
Roger Ascham.....	142
Cecil, Lord Burleigh.....	145, 146
Sir Walter Raleigh.....	147, 160, 162
Sir Francis Drake.....	147
John Knox.....	148
Lord Danley.....	149
Rizzio.....	149
Earl of Bothwell.....	149
Earl of Leicester.....	150
Sir Philip Sidney.....	151, 153
Earl of Essex.....	151
Lord Bacon.....	153, 163
Guy Fawkes.....	161

TOPICAL REVIEW.

Robert Carr.....	162
George Villiers.....	162, 166
Henrietta Maria.....	164
Oliver Cromwell.....	166n, 174, 175, 179
Sir Thomas Wentworth.....	167, 169
Archbishop Laud.....	167, 176
John Hampden.....	171n, 172, 173
John Pym.....	171n
Prince Rupert.....	173, 174
Lord Falkland.....	173
Sir Henry Vane.....	174, 175
Lord Fairfax.....	174
Sir Thomas Fairfax.....	175
Admiral Blake.....	180, 182
Richard Cromwell.....	184
General Monk.....	180, 184, 185
Sir Edward Hyde.....	185, 189, 214
Sir William Temple.....	189
William of Orange.....	190
Titus Oates.....	191
Duke of Monmouth.....	193, 194
Lord William Russell.....	192
Algernon Sidney.....	192
John Milton.....	193
Judge Jeffries.....	195
Duke of Marlborough.....	205
James the Pretender.....	219
Sir Robert Walpole.....	221, 223
General Oglethorpe.....	222
Charles Edward.....	224
William Pitt, Earl of Chatham.....	226, 230
Robert Clive.....	238
Warren Hastings.....	235
William Pitt, the Younger.....	236
Lord Nelson.....	237, 240, 241
Duke of Wellington.....	243, 243, 245, 246
William Cobbett.....	243n
Lord Brougham.....	257
Lord Byron.....	258
Daniel O'Connell.....	259, 260
William Wilberforce.....	261
Prince Albert.....	262, 272
Sir Charles Napier.....	263, 266
Sir Colin Campbell.....	270

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where are they situated ?

With what events connected ?

Flodden Field.....	131
Solway Moss.....	137
Archangel.....	145, 154
Fotheringay.....	148n
Lochlevin.....	149n
Zutphen.....	150
Worcester.....	173, 180
Edge Hill.....	173
Newbury.....	173, 175
Naseby.....	176
Dunkirk.....	183, 187
Sedge Moor.....	195
Cape La Hogue.....	203
Gibraltar.....	205
Dettingen.....	223
Preston Pans.....	224
Culloden.....	224
Calcutta.....	228
Plassey.....	229
Trafalgar.....	237
Corunna.....	243
New Orleans.....	246
Hong Kong.....	263
Sebastopol.....	266
Delhi.....	269

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL.

History connected with it ?

Court of Star Chamber.....	153, 167
Tonnage and Poundage.....	165
Ship Money.....	165
Petition of Right.....	166
Bill of Attainder.....	169
The Mail.....	212
The Newspaper.....	312
Cotton Manufacture.....	212
Carpets.....	213
Glass Making.....	213
Prince Rupert's Drop.....	213
Mezzotint.....	213
Poet Laureate.....	214

APPENDIX.

I. THE BRITISH CONSTITUTION.

1. THE Constitution of Great Britain, unlike our Federal and State Constitutions, is composed of the whole body of public law, including all the various political principles established at different times by legislative enactment, and expressing the general will of the nation. No part of English history is more interesting or instructive than that which exhibits the development of this political system, as the great mass of the people gradually emerged from a condition of ignorance and servitude to one of enlightenment and freedom. By revolution after revolution, each branch of government received its proper limitation, and the sovereign power virtually passed from the hands of the sceptered monarch to the voice of the people, as expressed by their representatives in Parliament.

2. Parliament consists of two branches—the *House of Lords* and the *House of Commons*. In the former are represented the interests of the nobility or aristocracy, and those of the Church, which is established by law. Hence there are *Lords spiritual* and *Lords temporal* in this, called the “Upper House;” the former consisting of twenty-six prelates of the Church of England and four of the Irish Church. The number of Lords temporal is not permanently fixed, the sovereign having the power to increase it by conferring new titles. Of these there are five ranks: dukes, marquises, earls, viscounts, and barons, all of whom, collectively, are styled *Lords*, or *Peers of the Realm*.

3. The House of Lords is an hereditary body, as far as regards the English peers: the Irish peers serve for life,

and the Scottish peers sit only during one Parliament. The latter are sixteen in number; of the Irish peers there are twenty-eight. Both of these are respectively elected by the peerage of the country which they represent. The House of Lords can alone originate any bills that affect the rights or privileges of the nobility, and no amendments or alterations can be made in them by the Commons. This House is also the highest judicial tribunal in the kingdom. Peers can be tried only therein, as well as officers of State when impeached by the Lower House. It is also the last court of appeal from all other tribunals of inferior jurisdiction. The number of members of this House generally exceeds, in the aggregate, four hundred.

4. The House of Commons includes the representatives of counties, cities, boroughs, and some of the universities, the whole number amounting to six hundred and fifty-eight, nearly five-eighths of whom are returned by England and Wales. The principal element of power possessed by the Commons is the exclusive right to vote supplies for the carrying on of the government. All money-bills must, therefore, originate in this House, and may be rejected, but cannot be altered, by the Lords. No Parliament can sit longer than seven years; and a new Parliament must be summoned by the sovereign within six months after his accession, and within three years from the dissolution of any Parliament.

5. The executive power is exercised by the sovereign, but only through ministers, who are responsible to the people for every act performed by royal authority. Hence arises the maxim, "The King can do no wrong," his ministers alone being answerable. The chief of these constitute the *Cabinet*, which is composed of the following officers—the First Lord of the Treasury, or *Premier*; the Lord Chancellor; the Lord Privy Seal; the President of the Council; the Home Secretary; the Foreign Secretary; the Colonial Secretary; the Indian Secretary; the War Secretary; the

Chancellor of the Exchequer; the First Lord of the Admiralty; the President of the Board of Trade; the President of the Poor Law Board; the Postmaster-General; the Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster; the Chief Secretary for Ireland.

6. When the ministry fail to carry any important measure through Parliament, they usually resign; but the sovereign may dissolve the Parliament, and cause writs to be issued for the calling of a new one; and if this refuse to sanction the measures of the government, a new ministry must be formed. Thus the executive is entirely dependent upon the will of the nation as declared by its representatives. Parliament may also be prorogued by the authority of the sovereign to any appointed time; and the effect of such prorogation is to quash all proceedings pending at the time, except impeachments in the Commons, and judicial appeals in the Lords. Either House may adjourn separately by its own authority; but during such adjournment it may be called together by the sovereign.

7. The *Privy Council* is another very important body in connection with the executive. It consists of a large number of dignitaries, both civil and ecclesiastical, appointed by the sovereign, all of whom must be natural-born subjects of Great Britain. The Cabinet Ministers form, as it were, a Committee of the Privy Council, the president of which is the fourth great officer of state. Meetings are held once in two or three weeks, but none of the members attend except such as are specially summoned by the sovereign, the meetings usually consisting of the Cabinet Ministers, the great officers of the queen's household, and the Archbishop of Canterbury. On extraordinary occasions, however, all the members are summoned.

8. No act of parliament can become a law without the formal assent of the sovereign; but the refusal to give such assent has become obsolete, not having been exercised since 1707—during the reign of Queen Anne. Indeed, the

necessity for it does not now exist, being removed by the fact that the sovereign rules through his ministers, and that these only continue in office as long as they can command the support of Parliament.

9. The duties of the sovereign, as prescribed in the coronation oath, are, first, to rule according to law; secondly, to execute judgment in mercy; and thirdly, to maintain the established religion. The royal prerogatives are, the power of making war and peace (the former restrained by the necessity of obtaining supplies from Parliament), the right to send and receive ambassadors, the power of conferring honors and titles, of appointing judges and subordinate magistrates, of giving and revoking commissions in the army and navy, of pardoning offences, of giving or withholding his assent to acts of parliament, and, as head of the national church, the right to nominate to vacant bishoprics and other ecclesiastical preferments.

10. The laws of Great Britain consist of the *Common Law* and the *Statute Law*. The former is based upon custom and precedent, as established by previous decisions of the courts; the latter consists of the various acts of parliament passed from time to time. In addition to this, there is the law of Equity, which is applied, by the sovereign, through the Lord Chancellor, in all cases where injustice would follow the operation of the Common law. The Courts of Chancery, or Equity, of Queen's (or King's) Bench, of Common Pleas, and of Exchequer, are the principal law courts in England and Ireland; in Scotland they are the Court of Session and the High Court of Justiciary.

II. GENERAL VIEW OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

[SEE MAP OF ENGLAND AND HER DEPENDENCIES—*Frontispiece.*]

The term *British Empire* is applied to the Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, with all its colonies and dependencies. These embrace the following :—

EUROPEAN.

1. **The Channel Islands**, a group lying off the northwest coast of France, and formerly belonging to the Duchy of Normandy, and therefore attached to the English throne since the conquest. King John lost all Normandy except these islands.

2. **Gibraltar**, a rocky promontory 1500 feet high, forming the southern extremity of Spain, about three miles in length, with an average breadth of three-quarters of a mile. Its classical name was *Calpe*; its present name is derived from the Arabic word *Gibel*, a mountain, and *Tarik*, the Saracen general by whom Spain was invaded in the eighth century. It was taken by the British, under Sir George Rooke, in 1704, and ceded to England by the treaty of Utrecht. It is one of the most valuable military and naval stations possessed by Great Britain, being the *Key of the Mediterranean Sea*.

3. **Heligoland** (*Holy Land*), a rocky islet situated off the estuary of the Elbe river. It derives its name from the religious rites of which it was the scene under the Saxons. It was occupied by Great Britain in 1807, and ceded formally to it in 1814. It contains a lighthouse and a small village, the inhabitants of which are occupied as pilots or engaged in the lobster and haddock fisheries.

4. **Man**, an island in the Irish Sea, originally peopled by the Manx, a Celtic tribe, the language of whom is still in common use in the island. It was held as a feudal sovereignty by the Earls of Derby, and subsequently by the Duke of Athol; from whom it was purchased in 1795, but the interests of the family in it were not entirely extinguished till 1829. It has its own separate constitution and legislature, the latter consisting of the representatives of the people, and called the "House of Keys."

5. **Malta**, an island about seventeen miles in length and nine in breadth, situated in the Mediterranean Sea, nearly sixty miles south of Sicily. On account of its position and the enormous strength of

its fortifications, it is of immense value as a naval station ; and is consequently one of the most important of the British dependencies. Near the northwest coast is a small island called **Gozo**, which also belongs to Great Britain. In 1530, these islands were given by the Emperor Charles V. to the Knights of St. John, whose stronghold at Rhodes had been captured by the Turks a short time previously. Malta sustained several tremendous assaults from the Turks while in the possession of the Knights, from whom it was taken by Napoleon in 1798. The Maltese, with the aid of the British, retook it soon afterward ; and, by the Congress of Vienna (in 1815), it was confirmed as a British dependency. The population of these islands is about 150,000.

6. **Cyprus**, a large island in the Levant, south of Asia Minor, having an area of 3,708 square miles, and a population of 135,000. This island was taken from the Venetians by the Turks in 1571, and held by the latter until 1878, when it was ceded to the British.

ASIATIC.

1. **India**, including Hindostan and several provinces on the eastern shore of the Bay of Bengal. Its extent from the great mountain barrier on the north to Cape Comorin, its southern extremity, is about 1,800 miles ; and from the western boundary of Scinde to Pegu, about 1,900 miles. Its area is about 1,000,000 square miles, with a coast line of nearly 4,500 miles ; and it contains a population of about 156 millions. The various countries and provinces are placed under local governors, lieutenant-governors, and commissioners, all of whom are subject to the viceroy, appointed by and responsible to the crown. The administration is under the direction of the Indian Secretary. The history of this, the most splendid of the British dependencies, has been given in connection with the text.

2. **Ceylon**, a considerable island to the south of Hindostan, including an area of about 25,000 square miles, also belongs to Great Britain, by whom it was taken from the Dutch in 1796. It was formally ceded to the British by the treaty of Amiens (1802). The native kingdom of Kandy did not, however, submit to their sway until 1815.

3. **Malacca**, a maritime settlement on the southwest coast of the Malay Peninsula, forty miles by twenty-five, with a population of about 80,000. It was taken from the Portuguese by the Dutch in 1642 ; but, in 1795, it fell into the hands of the British, to whom it was formally ceded in 1824.

4. **Singapore**, an island, twenty-five miles by fourteen, with a city

of the same name on its southern shore. The total population, consisting of Chinese, Malays, various Indian races, and Europeans, is about 100,000. In 1818, as found by Sir Stamford Raffles, it was covered with primeval forests, uninhabited except by a few fishermen and pirates who found shelter in its secluded rivers and bays. It was then claimed by the Sultan of Lahore, from whom it was purchased by the British in 1824. Its commanding position, in the centre of the highway leading from British India to China, makes it an exceedingly valuable possession, being the entrepot of the vast trade with those countries.

5. **Prince of Wales Island**, sometimes called *Penang*, or *Pu'lo Penang*, situated at the mouth of the Strait of Malacca, near the west coast of the Malay Peninsula. It has an area of 106 square miles, and a population of about 60,000. Toward the end of the last century, Captain Light married the King of Quenda's daughter, and received this island as a wedding-present, which he afterward transferred to the East India Company.

6. **Province of Wellesley**, a strip of country 35 miles in length by 4 to 11 miles in width, situated on the western shore of the Peninsula of Malacca, directly opposite Prince of Wales Island, ceded to the East India Company in 1802. Its population is about 70,000. Malacca, Singapore, Prince of Wales Island, and Wellesley constitute the *Straits Settlements*; the capital of the whole of which is Georgetown, on Prince of Wales Island.

7. **Labuan**, an island situated 30 miles off the northwest coast of Borneo, has an area of 45 square miles, and a population of about 5,000. It became the property of the British in 1846, by grant of the Sultan of Borneo, through the influence of Sir James Brooke, who had obtained control of the kingdom of Sarawak, on the neighboring coast of Borneo. This kingdom, formerly a dependency of England, is now independent, being under the government of Charles Brooke, son of the former ruler. It is, however, under British protection. The government establishment on Labuan is at Victoria, a town at the southeast end of the island. This island has a valuable coal deposit, and is also important as a naval station between the East Indies and China.

8. **Hong Kong**, a small island at the mouth of Canton river, about one hundred miles from the city of Canton. It is nine miles long and from two to six broad. Its capital, *Victoria*, is situated on the northern shore, and in a short time has become one of the most thriving and beautiful of the British dependencies in Asia. The

island was occupied by the British in 1841, and ceded to them by the treaty with China made at the close of the war, in 1842.

9. **Aden**, a town in the south western part of Arabia, held by means of a strong garrison and powerful fortifications, by the British, to whom it was ceded by the Sultan in 1838, and taken possession of by force of arms in 1839, the Sultan desiring to withdraw from his contract. In a commercial point of view it is a very important possession, having a position between Asia and Africa, like that of Gibraltar between Europe and Africa. The old commercial route, by way of the Red Sea, having, within the last few years, been resumed, Aden has become still more valuable as a stopping-place for steam-vessels between Bombay and Suez. Its population is about 25,000.

10. **Perim**, a small island at the entrance to the Red Sea, having a population of about 200. It was captured by the English in 1799, but in a short time afterward abandoned. It was reoccupied in 1857.

There are other minor dependencies in Asia, including the *Andaman and Nicobar Islands*, the *Laccadive Islands*, and the *Keeling Islands*.

AUSTRALIAN AND POLYNESIAN.

1. **Australia**, called by the Dutch settlers *New Holland*, contains the colonies of *New South Wales*, founded in 1788; *West Australia*, in 1829; *South Australia*, in 1834; *Victoria*, in 1851; and *Queensland*, in 1859. In 1851, gold was discovered in the island; and, in consequence, the tide of emigration set so rapidly thither, that its settlements soon reached a point of great magnitude and importance. Its present population is about 2,000,000, including about 55,000 natives. The possession of the island by Great Britain is based upon the discoveries of Captains Cook, Bass, Flinders, and others.

2. **Tasmania**, or **Van Diemen's Land**, was discovered in 1642, by a Dutch navigator named Tasman, after whom it has been named. It was named by him Van Diemen's Land in honor of the governor of Batavia. Bass, in 1798, by sailing through the strait which bears his name, discovered it to be an island. The British for some time used it, as well as New South Wales, as a penal settlement; but, in 1825, it was made an independent colony, under the name of *Tasmania*. **Norfolk Island**, situated more than a thousand miles to the east of Australia, was made a British penal settlement in 1825; but it was broken up in 1855, and the island given to the inhabitants of Pitcairn's Island, 194 in number, the descendants of the mutineers of the ship *Bounty*. The island is under British control.

3. **New Zealand**.—This colony consists of three islands, two large

and one much smaller, with a number of islets near the coasts. The group is situated in the South Pacific Ocean, about 1,200 miles south-east of Australia, and contains about 150,000 square miles. It was discovered in 1642 by Tasman, and was visited several times by Captain Cook, who explored the coasts in 1770. It was at first frequented by English and American whale-ships, attracted thither by the excellent shelter afforded by its numerous harbors, particularly in the Bay of Islands. Missionary enterprise began in 1814, and a British resident, or consul, was appointed in 1833. The sovereignty of the islands was formally ceded to Great Britain by the native chiefs in 1840. The unjust treatment of the Maories, or natives, brought on a series of fierce and bloody conflicts, which were not terminated until quite recently. The population in 1878 was 414,171, besides 55,000 Maories.

4. **Fiji Islands**, a group of islands in the South Pacific Ocean, having a total area of 8,034 square miles, and a population of about 120,000, including 1,539 Europeans (census of 1876). These islands were annexed to the British Empire in 1874.

Besides the above, the British dependencies in this part of the globe include *Chatham I.*, *Auckland I.*, *Lord Howe I.*, *Fanning I.*, *Starbuck I.*, and the *Caroline Is.*

AFRICAN.

1. **Cape Colony** embraces an extensive region, the area of which is estimated to contain about 200,000 square miles. It derives its name from the Cape of Good Hope, at which the capital, *Cape Town*, is situated. It was for many years a dependency of the Dutch, by whom it was first settled in 1652. In 1795, it was taken by the British, but restored by the treaty of Amiens (1802). In 1806 it was again captured by the British, and since then has remained in their possession. Fierce wars have been waged with the *Kaffirs*, or *Caffres*, a native tribe of great courage and ferocity. From these was wrested, in 1847, a region called **Caffraria**,—which was recently annexed to Cape Colony. The population of the latter is about 750,000.

2. **Natal**, which was so called by the Portuguese because it was discovered on Christmas day (1498). It became a British colony in 1843. Its capital, *Port Natal*, contains the only good harbor on that coast. It is situated about 850 miles from Cape Town.

The other portions of South Africa belonging to the British are *Basuto Land*, *West Griqua Land*, and the *Transkei District*, *Transvaal*, *Namaqua Land*, and *Damara Land*, including in all over 350,000 square miles.

3. **Mauritius**, an island about five hundred miles east of Madagascar, and containing more than seven hundred square miles, affords another important station for British vessels. It was discovered in 1505 by the Portuguese, but received its name from the Dutch, in honor of Prince Maurice, who in 1644 formed a settlement upon it. In 1721 it was colonized by the French, by whom it was named "Isle of France." It was taken from them in 1810 by General Abercrombie, and has since then been occupied by the British.

4. **Amirante and Seychelle Islands**, two groups of islets north of Madagascar Island, are dependencies of Mauritius, obtained at the time of the occupation of that island.

5. **Sierra Leone** consists of a district about twenty-five miles in length by twelve miles in breadth. The colony was established in 1787, for the purpose of providing a home for negroes rescued from the slave-traders.

6. **Gambia** is a colony consisting of the island of St. Mary and town of Bathurst, at the mouth of the Gambia River. It has a flourishing trade.

7. **Gold Coast**, a portion of the coast of Guinea, formerly belonging to the Dutch, but ceded to Great Britain in 1872. It includes an area of about 16,600 square miles.

8. **Lagos**, a town and island near the coast of Guinea, at the entrance of the Bight of Benin, formerly notorious for its slave traffic. It was captured by the British in 1851, but not occupied till 1861. Its population is about 60,000.

9. **St. Helena**, a rocky islet in the South Atlantic, was discovered by the Portuguese in 1502; but afterward was occupied by the Dutch, from whom it was taken by the English in 1651. Its position in the direct line of the great ocean thoroughfare from Europe to the East has made it important as a stopping-place for vessels performing that long voyage. Its chief celebrity is derived from the exile of the Emperor Napoleon, who lived there from 1816 till his death in 1821. **Ascension**, another small solitary islet, situated in the Atlantic, about eight hundred miles to the north of St. Helena, has been occupied by the British since 1815. It was discovered by the Portuguese in 1501, on Ascension-day, from which circumstance it received its name. **Tristan d'Acunha**, a group of islands to the south of St. Helena, is also claimed by Great Britain, by whom a garrison was kept there during the banishment of Napoleon.

NORTH AMERICAN.

1. **Canada.**—This name was first applied to the region watered by the St. Lawrence, a river discovered by Cartier, in 1535. It is an Indian word, meaning "a collection of huts." The province was ceded by the French to Great Britain by the treaty of Paris, in 1763. It was afterward divided into the two provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, subsequently called Canada West and Canada East. These divisions are now designated, respectively, *Ontario* and *Quebec*, and constitute a part of the Dominion of Canada, which comprises, besides these, the other British provinces, except Newfoundland.

2. **Nova Scotia** was colonized first by the French, under the name of *Acadia*, but ceded to the English by the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713. *Cape Breton Island* became a British possession by the capture of Louisburg, in 1758, during the French and Indian war.

3. **New Brunswick** formed a part of Acadia, and was ceded to Great Britain by the treaty of Utrecht.

4. **Prince Edward's Island**, formerly known as St. John's Island, was taken after the fall of Louisburg, in 1758.

5. **Newfoundland**, discovered by the Cabots, in 1497, was formally taken possession of by Sir Humphrey Gilbert in 1583. Its valuable fisheries led to rival claims to it on the part of the French and English. These were settled by the treaty of Utrecht, the island being wholly surrendered to the English.

6. **British Columbia and Vancouver's Island.**—These regions formerly constituted a portion of the Hudson's Bay Company Territory (now Northwest Territory), a vast region embracing a large part of British America, chiefly valuable for the trade in furs. After the discovery of gold in the vicinity of the Frazer River, the region soon became quite populous, and was organized as a separate province (1865).

7. **Honduras, or Belize**, forms the southeastern part of the peninsula of Yucatan, and has an area of about 20,000 square miles. The claim of Great Britain to this region was formally sanctioned by Spain in 1783.

8. The **Bermudas**, a group of islands in the Atlantic Ocean, were named after *Bermudez*, a Spaniard, by whom they were discovered in 1527. The wreck, upon these islands, of a part of the expedition sent to Virginia in 1609, under Sir George Somers, led to their colonization. They are, on this account, sometimes called the *Somers Islands*. The group is said to contain about three hundred and sixty islets, separated by very narrow channels, and hence occupy-

ing but a small space in the ocean, estimated at about one hundred square miles. Five only of these islands are of any considerable size.

WEST INDIAN.

1. **Jamaica**, discovered by Columbus in 1494, was colonized by the Spaniards in 1509, and held by them till its conquest by Admirals Penn and Venables in 1655; since which time it has been under the government of Great Britain.

2. **Trinidad**, a considerable island (fifty miles by thirty), near the northern coast of South America, opposite one of the mouths of the Orinoco river, was discovered by Columbus in 1498, and colonized by the Spaniards in 1588. It was taken by the British in 1797.

3. Besides these two large islands, the British possess several other smaller ones belonging to the West Indies, as follows: *Barbadoes, St. Vincent, Tobago, Grenada, St. Lucia, Dominica, Montserrat, Antigua, St. Kitts, Nevis, Anguilla*, and the *Virgin Islands*. The *Bahama Islands* have been occupied by them since 1629.

SOUTH AMERICAN.

1. **British Guiana** was colonized at first by the Dutch, but fell into the possession of the British in 1781, being taken by Sir George Rodney. It was, however, restored in 1783, but again captured in 1796, and again restored by the treaty of Amiens in 1802. The next year, on the breaking out of the war, it was once more captured, and since then has remained a British dependency.

2. The **Falkland Islands** were discovered by Davis in 1592, but did not receive their present name till 1690, when they were visited by Captain Strong, an English navigator. Settlements were afterward made on them by the French and Spaniards as well as the English; but since 1771 they have formed a part of the British Empire. No permanent settlement was made till 1831, and their population at the present time is only about seven hundred. They constitute, with *Staten Island*, near the southern extremity of South America, the most southerly of the organized colonies of Great Britain.

Great Britain also possesses the islands of *St. Paul* and *New Amsterdam*, in the Indian Ocean.

The whole extent of this vast empire embraces a little over eight millions of square miles, and contains a population of nearly two hundred and forty millions.

INDEX.

A.	PAGE
Ab-er-crom'bie, Sir Ralph	239
A'bra-ham, Plains of	225
Ab-ya-sin'i-a	271
A-ca'di-a	285
Acre (<i>a'ker</i>)	77, 238
Act of Security	206
Act of Supremacy	145
Act of Uniformity	146, 186
Act of Union	207
Ad'ams, John	234
Ad'ding-ton, Henry	241
Ad'di-som	208
A'den	234
A'dri-an, Emperor	18
A'dri-an VI., Pope	182, 183
Aetius (<i>a-e'she-us</i>)	19
Af-ghan-is-tan	263
Age of Reason, Paine's	250
Ag'in-court (<i>aj-</i>), Battle of	110
A-gric'o-la, Julius	17, 18
Agriculture	103, 121, 156, 252
Aix-la-Chapelle (<i>akes-lah-sha-pel'</i>)	
Treaty of	225, 228
Albany, Duke of	224 (note)
Al-be-marie', Duke of	185, 188
Al-be-ro'ni, Cardinal	230
Al'bert, Prince	262, 266, 271, 272
Al'bi-on	10, 13
Alcuin (<i>al'kwin</i>)	26
Al-ex-an'der, Czar of Russia	263
Alexander III., of Scotland	87
Al-ex-an'dri-a	237, 239
Al'fred	9, 30, 31
Alice Lisle (<i>lisle</i>)	195
Al'ma, Battle of	266
American Colonies	209, 210, 223, 231
American Revolution	233, 250
American Settlements	181
Am'i-ens, Treaty of	240, 241
Am-i-ran'te	235
A-moy'	263
Analogy of Religion, Butler's	229
An'gles	22, 25
An'gle-sey	16
Anglo-Saxon Language	8
Anglo-Saxons	49, 50, 51
Anjon (<i>ahn'jon</i>)	65
An'laf	38
Anne As'cue	138
Anne Boleyn (<i>du'en</i>)	133, 134, 135, 136
Anne of Cleves	137
Anne, Wife of Richard III.	111, 119
Anne, Queen	193, 197, 205
An'selm	60, 61
An'won, Commodore	222
An-to-ni'nus	18
Ant'werp	154
A'que-So'lia	8
Ar-a-bel'la Stuart	160

	PAGE
Ar'a-can	266
Ar-ca'di-a	159
Arch-an'gel	145, 154
Architecture	76, 123
Ar'cot	228
Ar-gyle	186, 194, 219
Ark'wright, Sir Richard	253
Aries (<i>ari</i>)	21
Ar'ling-ton, Lord	211 (note)
Ar-ma'da, Spanish	147, 156
Ar-mor'i-ca	24
Arne, Dr. Thomas Augustino	255
Arthur, King	24
Arthur, Prince	79, 80, 129
Arts	76, 253, 274
As'ca-lon	77, 78
As'pern, Battle of	244
Ascension Island	
As-tra-chan' (<i>-kan</i>)	155
Astrology	104
Astronomy	104
Ath'el-stan	35
Attainder, Bill of	140 (note), 169
At'ti-la	20
Augustan Age of England	203
Au-gus'tus	16
Au'lius Plautius (<i>plau'she-us</i>)	16
Au-rung-zebe'	223
Aus-tra'li-a	285
Aus'tri-a	222, 223, 237, 241, 244, 247
Austrian Succession, War of	223
Ay'mer de Valence (<i>vah-lons'</i>)	90

B.

Bacon, Lord	152, 163
Bacon, Roger	90, 104
Bacon, Sir Nicholas	145
Backgammon	51
Ba-ha'ma Islands	235
Bal-ak-la'va	267
Ba'li-ol, Edward	95
Baliol, John	87, 88, 89
Ban'nock-burn, Battle of	92
Bar-ba'does	187
Bar'ba-ry Powers	183
Bar-ce-lo'na	206
Bards	15
Barebone's Parliament	182
Bar'net, Battle of	117
Bath	10
Battle of the Books, Swift's	230
Battle of the Spurs	130
Beaufort (<i>bo'furt</i>), Duke of	188
Beaumont (<i>bo'mont</i>) & Fletcher	215
Bede	26
Bed'ford, Duke of	111, 112
Beggars' Opera	255
Be'zium	244

	PAGE
Cawn'pore.....	269
Caxton, William.....	118
Cecil (<i>see</i> <i>ill</i>), Sir William.....	145
Censorship of the Press.....	212
Cer'dic.....	26
Cey-lon (<i>see</i> <i>lon</i>).....	264
Chancellor, Lord.....	262
Chancery, Court of.....	262
Channel Islands.....	263
Charles I. of England.....	165, 213
Charles II. of England.....	179, 185
Charles V. of France.....	94, 99
Charles VI. of France.....	110, 111
Charles VII. of France.....	111, 112
Charles V. of Germany.....	181
Charles VI. of Germany.....	222
Charles II. of Spain.....	204
Charles XII. of Sweden.....	220
Charles, Archduke of Austria.....	244
Charles Edward, the Pretender.....	224
Charleston.....	232
Charlotte, Queen.....	230, 249
Chartists.....	262, 265
Chat'ham, Earl of.....	226, 230, 232, 233, 234
Chaucer (<i>chaw'ser</i>).....	99, 101, 104
Chemistry.....	255
Cherbourg (<i>sher'burg</i>).....	226
Chevalier de St. George.....	207
Chev'y Chase.....	108
China.....	263, 270, 271
Chinese War.....	270
Chivalry.....	66
Christianity.....	21, 25, 74, 273
Christ Church, Oxford.....	189
Church of England.....	185
Church, Irish.....	271
Churchill, Lord.....	197
Cin'tra, Convention of.....	243
Clarence, Duke of.....	117, 118
Clar'en-don, Earl of.....	185, 189, 214
Clau'di-us.....	16
Clement VII., Pope.....	133
Clergy.....	250
Clive, Lord.....	228, 230
Clon'tarf, Battle of.....	74
Cloth.....	156, 210, 212
Cob'bett, William.....	248, 250
Cob'den, Richard.....	262
Cobham, Lord.....	110, 160, 161
Cod'ring-ton, Sir William.....	268
Coffee.....	211
Coffee Houses.....	199
Coinage.....	212
Coke, Sir Edward.....	160, 165
Cole'ridge.....	256
Colonies, American.....	209, 210, 223, 231, 234
Co-lun'bi-a, British.....	285
Co-lun'bus.....	129, 154
Commerce.....	90, 129, 154, 210, 252
Common Law.....	282
Common Prayer, Book of.....	140, 186
Commons, House of.....	85, 89, 102, 109, 165
Commonwealth, English.....	179
Com-pur-ga'tors.....	50
Con'stan-tine.....	18
Con'stan'ti-us (<i>she-us</i>).....	18
Constitution, British.....	279
Constitutions of Clarendon.....	72

	PAGE
Consuls.....	120
Coote, Sir Eyre (<i>ire</i>).....	229, 236
Cope, Sir John.....	224
Co-pen-ha'gen.....	242
Corn Laws.....	242, 263
Corn-wal'lis, Lord.....	234, 235
Corporation Act.....	136
Co-run'na, Battle of.....	242
Costume.....	103
Cotton.....	252
Cotton Manufacture.....	212, 253
Counterblaste to Tobacco.....	211
Court of High Commission.....	153
Court of Star Chamber.....	153, 167, 170
Covenant of Scotland.....	168, 174
Covenanters.....	176, 180
Cov'er-dale, Miles.....	138
Cow'ley, Abraham.....	214
Cow'per.....	256
Cranmer, Thomas.....	135, 139, 140, 142, 144
Crecy (<i>kres'se</i>), Battle of.....	95
Cri-me'a.....	266
Cri-me'an War.....	265
Criminal Law.....	272
Cromwell, Henry.....	184
Cromwell, (Minister to Henry VIII.).....	137
Cromwell, Oliver.....	166. (note), 174, 175, 176, 177, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 186
Cromwell, Richard.....	1-4
Cronstadt.....	266
Crusades.....	60, 77, 85
Cul-lo'den, Battle of.....	224
Cum'ber-land.....	42, 59
Cumberland, Duke of.....	223, 224, 226
Cum'bri-a.....	24
Curfew.....	57
Cur'ran.....	239
Customs.....	154
Cym'be-line (<i>kim</i>).....	11

D.

Dal-hou'sie, Lord.....	269
Damme (<i>dam</i>).....	81
Dam-no'ni-a.....	21
Dane'geld.....	89, 44
Dane'lagh.....	83
Danes.....	23, 30, 31, 33, 36, 38, 40, 70
Darn'ley, Lord.....	148
Davenant, Sir William.....	214
David Bruce of Scotland.....	95, 96
David of Wales.....	86
Davis.....	154
Davy, Sir Humphrey.....	255
Deal.....	11
Death Penalty.....	273
De-ca'tur, Commodore.....	245
Declaration of Right.....	198
Defender of the Faith.....	132
Defoe, Daniel.....	229
De-l'ra.....	8, 23
Del'a-ware, Lord.....	161
Delhi (<i>del'le</i>).....	228, 269
Denmark.....	188, 235, 240, 242
De Quincey.....	274
Derby, Countess of.....	181
De Ruyter (<i>ri'ter</i>).....	181, 187, 188
Der'wentwater, Earl of.....	129
Des'bor-ough.....	139

	PAGE
Det'ting-en, Battle of.....	223
De'va.....	8
DeWitt, John.....	189
Dickens.....	274
Dieskan (<i>de-es-ko'</i>).....	225
Di-o-cle'ti-an (<i>-she-an</i>).....	18, 21
Directory of France.....	237
Dod'dridge.....	251
Domes'day Book.....	58, 71
Dor'set, Marquis of.....	120
Do'ver.....	45
Drake, Sir Francis.....	147
Drama.....	123, 215
Dress.....	68, 69, 103, 187
Dru'idism.....	15
Druids.....	10, 15, 16
Dry'den.....	194
Dub'lin.....	240
Dun'bar, Battles of.....	69, 180
Dun'can, Admiral.....	237
Dun-dec', Viscount.....	200
Dun'kirk.....	183, 187
Duns'tan.....	36, 37, 38
Du'Quesne (<i>kane</i>), Fort.....	225
Dur'ham.....	96
Dutch, The.....	154, 181, 182, 188, 190, 210, 211, 228, 235
Dutch Republic.....	181

E.

East Anglia.....	8, 23, 26, 32, 41
East India Company.....	161, 236, 269, 270
East Indies.....	210, 252
E-bor'a-cum.....	8, 20
Eck'muhl, Battle of.....	244
Ed'gar.....	37
Edgar Ath'e-ling.....	46, 48, 54, 56, 62
Edgehill, Battle of.....	173
Edinburgh (<i>ed'in-bur-ro</i>).....	78, 139, 168, 179, 180, 224
E'dith.....	44
Edmund Ironside.....	40
Edmund, King of East Anglia.....	31
Edmund Mortimer.....	108
Ed'red.....	36
Ed'ric, Duke of Mercia.....	41
Education.....	122, 273
Edward I.....	86
Edward II. (of Cas'er-nar'von).....	87, 91
Edward III.....	94
Edward IV.....	115, 116
Edward V.....	118
Edward VI.....	139
Edward, the Black Prince.....	96, 97, 98
Edward the Confessor.....	44
Edward the Elder.....	34
Edward the Martyr.....	38
Edward the Outlaw.....	46
Edward, Prince.....	85
Ed'wy.....	36
Eg'bert.....	26, 28
Egypt.....	237, 239
El'ba, Island of.....	245, 246
Eleanor, Queen (of Henry II.).....	65, 75, 78
Eleanor, Queen (of Henry III.).....	83
Elections.....	198
Elective Franchise.....	260, 271
Electric Telegraph.....	274
Elfrida (<i>el'fre-dah</i>).....	37, 38

	PAGE
El'gin (<i>el'ghin</i>), Lord.....	271
El'gi-va.....	26, 37
El'i-ot, Sir John.....	163, 167
Elixir of Life.....	123
Elizabeth (Plantagenet).....	119, 126
Elizabeth, Queen.....	136, 143, 145, 155, 157
El-len-bor-ough, Lord.....	263
El'li-ot, Captain.....	263
Emma, Queen.....	39, 42, 43, 45
Emmet, Robert.....	249
Empson & Dudley.....	129, 130
England.....	7, 28, 59
English Bible.....	138, 164
English Church.....	135
English Justinian (Edward I.).....	90
English Language.....	104, 123, 157
English Literature.....	95, 104, 152, 193, 194, 214, 229, 256, 274
English Reformation.....	135, 139
English Republic.....	180
En-nis-kil'ten.....	201
Epicopacy.....	200
Equity, Laws of.....	282
E-ras'mus.....	157
Essex.....	8, 23
Essex, Countess of.....	162
Essex, Earl of.....	151, 153, 173, 175, 193
Eth'el-bald.....	30
Eth'el-bert.....	30
Ethelbert, King of Kent.....	24, 25
Eth-el-fo'da.....	35
Eth'el-red I.....	31
Ethelred II.....	38
Eth'el-wold.....	34
Eth'el-wolf.....	30
E'ton College.....	116
Eugene, Prince.....	205 (note)
Eu'stace, Count of Boulogne.....	45
Eves'ham, Battle of.....	85
Exchequer, closing of by Charles II.....	190
Eylan (<i>'flow</i>), Battle of.....	242

F.

Faerie Queen, Spencer's.....	152
Fairfax, Lord.....	174
Fairfax, Sir Thomas.....	176, 176
Falkland (<i>fawk'land</i>) Islands.....	284
Falkland, Lord.....	173
Falkirk (<i>fawk'kirk</i>), Battle of.....	89
Family Compact.....	230
Fel'ton.....	166
Feudal Castles.....	66, 123
Feudal System.....	58, 65, 118, 121, 185
Field of Cloth of Gold.....	183
Fine Arts.....	254
Fire of London.....	188
Fisher, Bishop.....	235
Fisheries.....	122
Flam'steed.....	214
Flanders.....	184, 203, 205, 206, 212, 223
Fla'vi-a Cas-sar'i-en-sis.....	7
Flod'den Field, Battle of.....	131
Flying Coach.....	212
Fontenoy (<i>fon-la-noah'</i>), Battle of.....	223
Foth'er-in-gay Castle.....	148 (note), 150
Fox, Charles.....	233, 242, 250
Fox, George.....	206

	PAGE
France ..	95, 156, 165, 190, 202, 203, 226, 234, 235, 237, 240, 241
Franchise, Elective.....	260, 271
Francis I. of France.....	131, 133
Francis II. of France.....	140
Frank'fort.....	146
Franklins.....	65
Frederick the Great.....	225
Frederick (son of George II.).....	267
Frederick William (of Prussia).....	272
French.....	228, 230
French Convention.....	237
French Revolution.....	237, 250
Fried'land, Battle of.....	242
Fro'bish-er, Martin.....	147, 148
Fuller, Thomas.....	214
Fulton, Robert.....	252 (note)
Furniture.....	123

G.

Gam'bi-a.....	287
Gam'bi-er, Admiral.....	242
Gam'di-ner, Bishop.....	139, 142, 143
Gas'coigne (<i>-koin</i>), Chief Justice.....	110
Gates, General.....	234
Gaul.....	14
Gay'is-ton.....	91
Gay, John.....	255
Gen'-e'va.....	146
Geoffrey (<i>Jeff're</i>) of Monmouth.....	10, 69
Geoffrey (son of Henry II.).....	75, 76
Geology.....	256
George I.....	219
George II.....	221
George III.....	230, 255
George IV.....	256
George, Prince of Denmark.....	193, 197
	205 (note)
George, Lake.....	225
Georgia.....	222
Georg'i-um Sidus.....	255
Germany.....	226
Ghent, Treaty of.....	246
Gibbon.....	256
Gibraltar (<i>jib'-rawl'ler</i>).....	205, 235
Gibraltar of America.....	223
Gil'das.....	27
Glass.....	103, 156, 212
Glen'coe, Massacre of.....	200
Gloucester (<i>glos'ter</i>), Duke of.....	113, 117
Gloucester, Earl of.....	84
Jod'win, Earl.....	43, 44, 45, 46
Gold Coast.....	285
Gordon, Lady Catharine.....	128
Gordon, Lord George.....	251
Gordon Riots.....	251
Go'dsman.....	256
Goths.....	19
Gow'er.....	99
Go'zo.....	284
Gra'ham of Claverhouse.....	200
Gram'pi-an Hills.....	17
Grand Alliance.....	204, 205
Grat'tan.....	239
Grave, The, by Robert Blair.....	230
Gray.....	256
Gray, Elizabeth.....	116
Great Commoner, The.....	230
Greece.....	258

	PAGE
Greenhouses.....	253
Green'land.....	211
Greenwich Hospital.....	206
Greg'o-ry, Pope.....	25
Gran'ville, George.....	231
Grey, Earl.....	259
Grey, Lady Jane.....	141, 142, 143, 157
Grey, Lord.....	160, 161
Grouchy (<i>groo'she</i>), Marshal.....	247
Guernsey (<i>ghern'ze</i>) Island.....	181
Guiana (<i>gho-ah'nah</i>).....	168
Guienne (<i>ghe-en'</i>).....	65, 88
Guilford Dudley, Lord.....	141, 142
Guinea (<i>ghin'e</i>).....	210
Guise (<i>gwes</i>), Duke of.....	144
Guise, Mary of.....	187
Gulliver's Travels.....	229
Gunpowder.....	90, 96
Gunpowder Plot.....	161
Gurth.....	48
Guth'ram.....	32
Guy Fawkes (<i>gh'fawke</i>).....	161

H.

Ha'be-as Corpus Act.....	192
Hale, Sir Matthew.....	194
Halidown Hill, Battle of.....	95
Halley.....	214
Hampden, John.....	171, 172, 173, 192, 193
Handel, George Frederick.....	255
Hanover.....	219, 220, 221, 225, 226, 257, 261
Hanse Towns.....	155
Har'di-can-ute'.....	43, 44
Har'fleur.....	110
Har'greaves, James.....	253
Harold I. (Harefoot).....	43
Harold II.....	42, 46, 48
Harold Hardrada.....	48
Harry Percy (Hotspur).....	108
Harvey.....	214
Hastings, Battle of.....	49
Hastings the Dane.....	33
Hastings, Lord.....	113
Hastings, Warren.....	235
Ha-va'na.....	231
Hav'e-lock, General.....	269
Hawke, Admiral.....	226
Haw'kins, Admiral.....	147
Heb'ri-des.....	8
Hel'i-go-land.....	283
Hen'ghist and Horsa.....	20, 22
Henrietta Maria.....	164, 165
Henry I.....	61
Henry II.....	64, 71
Henry III.....	83
Henry IV.....	108
Henry V.....	109
Henry VI.....	111, 115, 116
Henry VII.....	126
Henry VIII.....	130, 157
Henry IV., of France.....	151
Henry V., of Germany.....	63
Henry, Cardinal of York.....	255 (note)
Henry, Duke of Lancaster.....	101
Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey.....	138, 139
Henry of Huntington.....	69
Henry (son of Henry II.).....	75, 76
Henry (son of William I.).....	58, 56

	PAGE		PAGE
Henry Stuart.....	148, 165 (note)	Ja-mai'ca.....	238
Henry Tudor.....	119	James, Duke of York.....	185, 187
Hep'tar-chy.....	23, 26	James I.....	160, 210, 211
Her'rick, Robert.....	214	James II.....	194, 198, 201, 204
Herschel, Caroline.....	255 (note)	James the Pretender.....	207, 219, 220
Herschel, Sir William.....	255	James I., of Scotland.....	111
Hew'son, Colonel.....	209	James IV., of Scotland.....	128
Hey'wood, John.....	158	James V., of Scotland.....	137
Hi-ber'ni-a.....	8, 74	James VIII., of Scotland.....	224
Highlanders.....	200, 224	Jamestown.....	161
Highlands.....	200	Jane Seymour.....	136
Hin-doo-stan'.....	263, 264	Ja-pan'.....	271
Ho'garth, William.....	254	Java (<i>jah'vah</i>).....	211
Holland.....	150, 165, 187, 189, 204, 235	Jeffries, Judge.....	195
Holy Living and Dying.....	214	Je'na, Battle of.....	241
Hong Kong.....	226	Jen'ner, Edward.....	256
Hooper, Bishop.....	143	Jer'sey, Isle of.....	9, 181
Hooke.....	214	Je-ru'sa-lem.....	60, 77
Horticulture.....	103, 156	Jews.....	77, 87
House of Commons.....	85, 89, 102, 109, 249, 279, 280	Joan of Arc.....	112
House of Keys.....	283	John of France.....	97, 98
House of Lords.....	279, 280	John of Gaunt.....	99, 101
Houses.....	156	John, Earl of Lincoln.....	127
Howard, Lord.....	147	John, King (Lackland).....	76, 79, 80
Howard, William, Viscount Stafford.....	191	Johnson, General.....	225
Howe, General.....	233	Johnson, Samuel.....	256
Howe, Lord.....	233, 237	Jones, Inigo.....	213
Hu'bert de Burgh.....	83	Jones, John Paul.....	235
Hu'di-bras.....	194, 209	Judicial Combat.....	68
Huguenots (<i>hu'ghe-nots</i>).....	165, 166	Ju'dith.....	30
Hull.....	136, 172	Jutes.....	24
Hull, Captain.....	245		
Hume.....	256	K.	
Humphrey, the Good Duke.....	113	Kan'dy.....	284
Hungarians.....	222	Ken'dall, Duchess of.....	221 (note)
Huns.....	20	Ken'il-worth Castle.....	94 (note), 157
Hunt, Henry.....	248	Kent.....	8, 22, 23, 25
Hunter, John.....	256	Kil-le-crank'ie, Battle of.....	200
Hutchinson, General.....	239	Kim'bol-ton, Lord.....	171
Hyde, Ann.....	185	King's College.....	116
Hyde, Sir Edward.....	185	King's Evil.....	47
Hy'der Ali (<i>ah'le</i>).....	226	Kin-sale'.....	201
		Kirke's Lambs.....	195
I.		Knighthood.....	66
Independents.....	163, 173, 175, 176, 209	Knights of St. John.....	263
India.....	227, 270	Knights of the Round Table.....	24
Indian Mutiny.....	269	Knights' Service.....	185
In'i-go Jones.....	213	Knox, John.....	148
Ink'er-man, Battle of.....	267		
Innocent III., Pope.....	80	L.	
Interludes.....	158	Lab'nan (<i>lab'oo-an</i>).....	285
In-ver-ness'.....	224	La Hogue (<i>hög</i>), Battle of.....	202, 203
Invincible Armada.....	147	Lambert, Simmel.....	127, 128
Ireland.....	7, 8, 74, 93, 128, 151, 170, 179, 180, 200, 238, 240, 257, 260, 265	Lan'cas-ter, Earl of.....	91
Ire'ton.....	179, 180, 186	Lan-franc'.....	56, 59, 60
Irish Church.....	271	Lang'ton, Stephen.....	80, 81
Irish Coercion Bill.....	260	Lat'i-mer, Bishop.....	139, 144
Iron Manufacture.....	253	Latimer, Lord.....	138
Ir-ra-wad'dy (<i>-wod-</i>) River.....	258	Laud, Archbishop.....	167, 169, 176
Isabella, Queen.....	93, 94, 95	Lear, King.....	10
		Learning.....	73, 104, 122, 157
J.		Leeds.....	211
Jackson, General.....	246	Leicester (<i>les'ter</i>), Earl of... ..	84, 85, 150, 151, 151
Jack Cade.....	114	Leicester Abbey.....	134
Jack Straw.....	100	Leipsic (<i>lip'sik</i>), Battle of.....	245
Jac'o-bites.....	203, 219	Lent'hall.....	172
Jaf'fa.....	238	Leo X., Pope.....	132
		Le'o-fric.....	3

	PAGE
Le'olf.....	36
Les'lie, Earl of Leven.....	174
Le-vant'.....	210, 264
Lew'es, Battle of.....	84
Lexington, Battle of.....	233
Liberty of the Press.....	212
Light Brigade, Charge of.....	267
Ligny (<i>leen'ye</i>), Battle of.....	247
Lil'le-bu-le-ro'.....	196
Limoges (<i>le-mozhe</i>).....	96
Lin'de-sey, Earl of.....	166, 173
Lin'dum.....	8
Lis'bon.....	242
Literature, English.....	95, 104, 152, 193, 194, 214, 229, 256, 274
Liverpool.....	211
Llew-el'lyn.....	86
Lochiel (<i>lok-heef</i>), Cameron of.....	224
Lochlev'in Castle.....	149 (note)
Locke, John.....	194
Locomotive.....	254
Lollards.....	108, 110
Lombard Merchants.....	123
Lombe, Mr.....	253
Lon-din'i-um.....	8
London.....	11, 17, 51, 61, 211
London Bridge.....	61
Londonderry.....	201
Long Parliament.....	167, 212
Lords, House of.....	179
Lords, Spiritual.....	279
Lords, Temporal.....	279
Louis VII. of France.....	75
Louis IX. of France.....	84, 85
Louis XI. of France.....	116
Louis XII. of France.....	130
Louis XIV. of France.....	187, 189, 197, 201, 219
Louis XV. of France.....	222
Louis XVIII. of France.....	145, 246
Louis Philip (or <i>loo'e fe-leep</i>).....	265
Louisburg.....	223, 225
Lov'at, Lord.....	225
Luck-now'.....	269
Lud'gate.....	11
Luther, Martin.....	133

M.

Ma-cau'lay.....	274
McIan, Chief of the McDonalds.....	200
Mad-ras'.....	211, 229
Mad-rid'.....	245
Mag'da-la.....	271
Ma-gel'an.....	154
Magna Charta.....	81, 83, 84, 90, 102, 166
Maine.....	58, 64
Ma-lac'ca.....	284
Mal'e-koff.....	263
Mal'colm, King of Scotland.....	42, 56, 59
Malplaquet (<i>mal-plah'ka</i>), Battle of.....	206
Malta (<i>maul'tah</i>).....	283
Mam'e-lukes.....	237
Man, Isle of.....	181, 283
Manchester.....	211, 248
Manchester, Earl of.....	175
Man'de-ville, Sir John.....	99
Mansfield, Lord.....	251

Manufactures.....	154, 312
Mar, Earl of.....	219
Marblehead.....	232
Margaret of Anjou.....	113, 115, 116, 117
Maria Theresa (<i>le-re'zah</i>).....	222, 225
Marl'bor-ough, Duke of.....	197, 202, 205 (note), 206 (note)
Marlborough, Lady.....	205 (note), 208
Marmont, (<i>mar-mong</i>) General.....	245
Marston Moor, Battle of.....	174
Mary, Queen.....	141, 157
Mary, Queen of Scots.....	137, 143, 149, 150, 157 (note)
Mary of Guise.....	137
Mary of Mo'de-na.....	191
Mary, Wife of William of Orange.....	203, 208
Maryland.....	210
Mas'ham, Mrs.....	208
Mas-sa-chu'setts.....	168, 209
Massacre of Glencoe.....	200
Mas-se'na, General.....	244
Mas'sin-ger, Philip.....	215
Matilda.....	62, 64
Matthews, Admiral.....	223
Maude the Good.....	61
Mauritius (<i>mau-rish'e-us</i>).....	287
Maxima Cæ-sar'i-en-sis.....	7
Max-i-mil'i-an, Emperor.....	130, 131
Meagher, Thomas Francis.....	265
Medical Science.....	156
Mee'rut.....	269
Mehemet Ali (<i>ma'he-met ah'le</i>).....	264
Melbourne (<i>mel'burn</i>), Lord.....	266
Men'echi-koff, Prince.....	267
Mer'ci-a (<i>-she-ah</i>).....	8, 23, 28, 41
Mee-si'ah, Handel's.....	255
Methodists.....	251
Mezzotint (<i>metz'o-tint</i>).....	213
Middle English.....	104, 157
Middlesex.....	8, 23
Milton.....	193
Min'den, Battle of.....	236
Minstrel, Dress of.....	69
Mints, Establishment of.....	51
Miracle Plays.....	123
Missionary Enterprises.....	273
Mis-so-lon'ghi.....	253
Mitchell, John.....	265
Mol-da'vi-a.....	266
Monasteries, Destruction of.....	136
Monck'ton, Colonel.....	225
Monk, General.....	180, 184, 185
Monmouth, Duke of.....	192, 194
Montcalm (<i>mont-kam'</i>), Marquis of.....	225
Mon-trose', Earl of.....	176
Moore, Sir John.....	243
Moral Plays.....	123
Mordaunt, Charles.....	206 (note)
More, Sir Thomas.....	134, 135
Morrison, General.....	258
Mortimer, Edmund.....	103, 108
Mortimer, Roger.....	93, 94, 95
Murray, Regent of Scotland.....	149
Music.....	255
Mutiny of the Scottish Troops.....	179
Mutiny Bill.....	196
Mysteries.....	122

N.		PAGE			PAGE
Nan-kin'		264	Orthography, English		122
Nantes (<i>nante</i>)		58	Os'so-ry, Lord		211 (note)
Na'pi-er, Sir Charles	263, 264, 266		Os-to-ri-us		16
Napier, Sir Robert		271	Otho, Prince of Bavaria		258
Napier, Sir William		263 (note)	Ot'ter-bourn		108
Na-po-le-on Bonaparte	237, 238, 241, 242, 244, 246, 247		Ot'way		194
Nase'by, Battle of		176	Oude (<i>oud</i>)		269
Na'tal		287	Ou'de-nar-de, Battle of		206
National Debt	204 (note), 231, 247		Overbury, Sir Thomas		168
Navigation	154, 210, 252		Owen Glen-dow'er		109
Navigation Laws		181, 265	Oxford		176
Navalino (<i>nah-vah-re'no</i>), Battle of		258	Oxford, University of		84
Navy, British	129, 146, 155, 196				
Nelson, Lord	237, 238, 240, 241		P.		
Nena Sahib (<i>sah-seb'</i>)		269	Paine, Thomas		250
Ne'ro		16	Painters		254
Netherlands	147, 156, 189		Pakenham (<i>pak'n-am</i>), General		246
Neville's Cross, Battle of		96	Pal'es-tine	73, 86	
Newark		176	Palmerston (<i>palmer-stun</i>), Lord		267
Newbury, Battle of	173, 175		Paradise Lost, Milton's		194
New Brunswick		288	Paris		245
Newcastle		168	Paris, Treaty of	231, 234	
Newcastle, Marquis of		174	Parker, Sir Hyde		240
New England	165, 168, 181		Parliament	85, 90, 91, 93, 102, 122, 143, 153, 163, 196, 207, 249, 271, 273, 279, 280	
New Forest	57, 58, 60, 61		Parliamentary Reform	259, 260, 262, 271, 273	
New'found-land		288	Paterson, William	204 (note)	
New Netherlands		187	Paul, Emperor of Russia		240
New Orleans, Battle of		246	Pa'vi-a, Battle of		133
New Troy		10	Paxton, Sir Joseph		266
New York	232, 234		Peel, Sir Robert	265, 266	
Newspapers	199, 212		Peers of the Realm		279
Newton, Sir Isaac	214, 221		Pe-gu' (<i>-goo</i>)		266, 284
Nicholas, Czar		266	Pekin		271
Nightingale, Florence		269	Pellissier (<i>pa-lis'e-a</i>), General		268
Nonjurors		200	Pembroke, Earl of		83
Norfolk	8, 23		Pe-nang'		285
Norfolk Island		286	Peninsular War		243
Normandy	35, 45, 57, 58, 59, 62, 64		Penn, Admiral		183
Normans		73, 88	Pennsylvania		210
North America	129, 147, 187, 209, 225		Perkin Warbeck		127
Northampton, Battle of		114	Persia	158, 271	
North Briton		231	Peru		222
North, Lord		232	Peterborough, Earl of		206
Northmen	23, 75		Petition of Right		166
Northumberland, Duke of	141, 142		Phi-la-del'phi-a	232, 234	
Northumberland, Earl of		109	Phil'i-bert		144
Northumbria	8, 23, 28, 31, 32, 41		Philip I. of France		57
Norwegians		28, 38	Philip II. of France	76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 82	
Norwich (<i>nor-ridge</i>)		211	Philip VI. of France		95
Not'ing-ham, Countess of	152 (note)		Philip II. of Spain	142, 144, 146, 147, 150	
Nova Scotia		225	Philip IV. of Spain		213
O.			Philip, Duke of Anjou		204
O'Brien, William Smith		265	Phil'ip'pa, Queen		94, 96
O'Connell, Daniel	259, 260, 264		Phil'ip-pine Islands		281
O'do		51	Philosopher's Stone		122
O'gle-thorpe, General		232	Picts	12, 35	
Oil-cloth		212	Pictures		213
O'af	38, 39, 41		Pilgrimage of Grace		136
Orangemen		236	Pilgrim's Progress, Bunyan's		194
Ordeal, the Great		50	Pine		156
Ordeal, Saxon		68	Pitt, William, Earl of Chatham	236, 230, 262, 233, 234	
Orkney Isles		8	Pitt, William, 'he Younger	236, 240, 241, 242	
Orleans	111, 112		Plague		97
Orleans, Duchess of		190			

	PAGE
Plague, the Great.....	188
Plains of Abraham, Battle of.....	235
Plantagenet, Geoffrey.....	63
Plantagenet, Origin of Name. 63 (note)	
Plantagenets.....	64
Plantagenets, Last of.....	129
Plassey, Battle of.....	229
Plymouth.....	165
Poet Laureate.....	214 (note)
Poitiers (<i>poi-teers</i>), Battle of.....	97
Poitou (<i>poi-ah-too</i>).....	65, 83
Pole, Cardinal.....	143, 145
Pon-di-cher'ry (<i>sher</i>).....	229
Pope, Alexander.....	208
Popish Plot.....	191
Population of England.....	7, 59
Population of London.....	211
Porto Bello.....	222
Portsmouth, Duchess of.....	190
Por'tu-gal.....	242, 243
Portuguese.....	180, 228
Post Office.....	212
Potatoes.....	156, 252
Pottery and Porcelain.....	254
Pottinger, Sir Henry.....	263
Prerogative, Royal.....	282
Presbyterianism.....	200
Presbyterians.....	177, 209
Preston Pans, Battle of.....	224
Pride's Purge.....	177
Prince Albert.....	263, 266, 271, 272
Prince Edward's Island.....	268
Prince of Wales Island.....	285
Prince of Wales, Title of.....	87
Principalities, Danubian.....	268
Printing.....	118, 120, 122, 214, 274
Privy Council.....	281
Protestants.....	143, 146 (note), 148, 151, 164
Prussia (<i>proo'she-ah</i>).....	240, 241
Prussians.....	226, 246
Pun'jab.....	263
Puritans. 146, 152, 164, 167, 173, 209,	210
Pym, John.....	170
Pyramids, Battle of.....	237

Q.

Quakers.....	209
Que-bec.....	225
Queen of the Northern Seas.....	146
Queen's Ware.....	254

R.

Radicals.....	250
Raffles, Sir Stanford.....	284
Raglan, Lord.....	266, 267, 268
Raikes, Robert.....	251
Railways.....	254
Raleigh (<i>raw'le</i>), Sir Walter.....	147, 156, 160, 161, 162
Ram'il-lies, Battle of.....	205
Ran-goon.....	258
Re-dan.....	268
Religion.....	250, 273
Restoration.....	185
Revenue.....	154
Revolution of 1788.....	198

	PAGE
Revolution, American.....	233, 250
Revolution, French.....	237, 250
Reynolds, Sir Joshua.....	254, 255
Rheims (<i>reems</i>).....	112
Richard I.....	77
Richard II.....	99, 108
Richard III.....	119, 120
Richard de Clare (Strongbow).....	75
Richard, Duke of Gloucester.....	117, 118
Richard, Duke of Normandy.....	84, 42
Richard, Duke of York.....	114, 115, 127
Richard, Son of William I.....	58
Richard Scrope.....	106
Richelieu (<i>reesh'e-lu</i>).....	165, 168
Richmond, Duchess of.....	138 (note)
Richmond, Earl of.....	119, 120
Ridley, Bishop.....	140, 144
Rivers, Lord.....	118
Rizzio (<i>reei'se-o</i>).....	149
Roads.....	212, 254
Robert, Duke of Normandy.....	57, 59, 61, 62
Robert, Earl of Essex.....	151, 153
Robinson Crusoe.....	221
Rochelle (<i>ro-shel'</i>).....	165, 166
Rod'ney, Admiral.....	226, 235
Roger Ascham.....	142, 157
Roger Bacon.....	90, 104
Roger Mortimer.....	93, 94, 95, 103
Rogers, John.....	143
Romans.....	7, 16, 17
Rome.....	133, 135, 220
Rooke, Sir George.....	205
Root-and-Branch Men.....	175
Rosamond Clifford.....	75
Rosetta Stone.....	246
Rouen (<i>roo'ang</i>).....	112
Roundheads.....	171, 173, 209
Ro-we'na.....	23
Roxburgh.....	76
Royal Academy of Art.....	255
Royal Oak.....	180
Royal Society for the Promotion of Science.....	214
Ru'bens.....	213
Ru'pert, Prince.....	173, 174, 176, 180, 187, 191, 213
Russell, Admiral.....	202
Russell, Lord John.....	259
Russell, Lord William.....	192, 193
Russia (<i>roo'she-ah</i>).....	145, 155, 240, 241, 247, 266
Rye-House Plot.....	192
Rys'wick, Treaty of.....	203

S.

Sabbath, Observance of.....	161, 167
Sackville, Lord.....	226
Safety Lamp, Invention of.....	255
Sailor King.....	259
St. Alban (<i>aw'ban</i>).....	21
St. Alban's, Battle of.....	114, 115
St. Arnaud (<i>ar'no</i>), General.....	266, 268
St. Au-gus-tine' (<i>-teen</i>).....	25, 26
St. Brice, Massacre of.....	39
St. George, Fort.....	228
St. Germain's (<i>sher-mang'</i>).....	197, 198, 204
St. He-le'na.....	211, 247, 187

	PAGE
St. John (<i>sen'jun</i>)	181
St. Patrick	74
St. Paul's Cathedral	20, 26, 188
St. Quen'tin, Battle of	144
St. Thomas of Canterbury	136
Sal'a-din	77, 78
Sa'lem	232
Salem Witchcraft	210
Sal'ic Law	95
San'croft, Archbishop	196
Sandwich, Earl of	187, 211
Sar'a-cens	73
Sar-a-to'ga	234
Sar-a-wak'	285
Saunders	143
Saxe (<i>sax</i>), Marshal	223, 224
Saxons	18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 25
Schomberg (<i>shom-</i>), Marshal	202
Science	90, 122, 255, 274
Scilly (<i>sill'y</i>) Islands	206
Scinde (<i>sind</i>)	263
Scone	89, 180
Scotland	7, 59, 64, 75, 76, 87, 89, 92, 95, 96, 137, 139, 174, 179, 180, 206, 207, 219, 224
Scots	23, 131, 139, 168, 174, 176, 177, 200
Scots and Picts	19, 20, 22
Scott, Sir Walter	256
Scrope, Richard	109
Seasons, Thomson's	229
Se-bas'to-pol	266, 267, 268
Security Act	206
Sedgemoor, Battle of	195
Self-denying Ordinance	175
Semi-Saxon	104
Sen'lac, Battle of	49
Serfdom	100, 102, 121
Serfs	66, 102, 121
Seven Years' War	225, 231
Se-ve'rus	18
Seychelle (<i>sa-sheel'</i>) Islands	237
Seymour, Lord	139
Shakespeare	10, 11, 120, 152, 215
Sheffield	211, 253
Sheil, Richard	259
Shelley	256
Sheppy	30
Sheridan	236, 250
Ship Money	165
Shiremore	50
Shovel, Sir Cloudesley	206
Shrewsbury, Battle of	109
Sicily	84
Sidney, Algernon	192, 193
Sierra Leone	237
Sikhs	263
Silk Manufacture	121, 156, 212, 253
Simon de Montfort	84, 85, 86
Simpson, General	268
Sin-ga-pore	234
Siward	45
Slave-trade	211
Slavery, Abolition of	260, 261
Smith, Sir Sidney	258
So-bl-es'ki, John	220
Society of United Irishmen	229
Solway Moss, Battle of	137
Somerset, Duke of	113, 139, 140

	PAGE
Somerset, Earl of	162
Sophia	207, 219
Sophia Dorothe'a	221
Soult, Marshal	243, 245
South America	162, 220, 259
South Sea Bubble	229
Spain	130, 162, 165, 210, 220, 222, 230, 235, 242, 243, 258
Spanish Succession, War of	206
Spenser	153
Spenser, or Dispenser	98
Spices	211
Spinster (the Name)	51
Spitz-ber'gen	211
Stafford, Viscount	191
Stamford Bridge, Battle of	48
Stamp Act	231
Standard, Battle of the	64
Standing Army	214
Stan'hope, Lord	220
Stanley, Lord	120
Stanley, Sir William	120, 128
Star Chamber	153, 167, 170
Steam-Engine	252, 254
Steam Navigation	252
Steele	208
Stephen	63
Stephen Langton	80, 81
Stephenson, George	254
Sterling Money	91 (note)
Stilicho (<i>still'e-ko</i>)	19
Stirling	89, 92
Stoke	127
Strafford, Earl of	167, 169, 170
Strathclyde	8, 9, 24, 25
Stratton	9
Strongbow (Richard de Clare)	75
Stuart, Robert, of Scotland	99
Stuarts	160, 218, 234
Sue-to'ni-us (<i>sue-</i>)	16, 17
Suffolk	8, 23
Suffolk, Duke of	113
Sunday Schools, Establishment of	251
Supremacy, Act of	145
Su-ra'jah Dow'lah	223, 225
Su-rat'	161
Surrey, Earl of	131, 133, 139
Sussex	8, 23
Sweden	189, 220, 235, 240, 241
Sweyn (<i>swane</i>)	39, 40
Sweyn, Son of Canute	43
Sweyn, Son of Earl Godwin	45
Swift	208, 229, 230, 255
Sydney, Sir Philip	151, 153
Syria	238

T.

Tal-a-ve'ra, Battle of	242
Ta'ra	74
Tasman	236
Tas-ma'nia	236
Taylor	143
Taylor, Jeremy	204
Tea	211
Telescope, Herschel's	255
Temple, Sir William	189
Te-nas'ee-rim	258
Ten'ny-sou	274

	PAGE
Test Act.....	191, 196
Tewks'bury, Battle of.....	117
Thack'e-ray.....	274
Than'et Island.....	20, 30
Theodore, King.....	271
The-o-do'stus (<i>she-us</i>).....	19
Thistlewood.....	257
Thomas à Becket.....	71, 72, 73
Thomson, James.....	229
Thur'kill.....	41
Til'sit.....	242
Titus, Colonel.....	183
Titus Oates.....	191
Tobacco.....	156, 211, 252
Toleration Act.....	200
Tonnage and Poundage.....	165 (note)
Torbay.....	197
Tor'res Ve'dras.....	244
Tostig.....	47, 48
Ton-raine'.....	65
Tournament.....	67, 68
Tou-lon'.....	223
Tou-louse', Battle of.....	245
Tow'ton, Battle of.....	116
Traf'al-gar', Battle of.....	241
Travelling.....	212
Trial by Jury.....	102
Trin'l-dad.....	289
Trinity College.....	139
Triple Alliance.....	189
Tris'tan d'Acunha (<i>dah-koon'yah</i>).....	287
Troyes (<i>truah</i>), Treaty of.....	110
Tudor, Henry.....	119
Tudor, Sir Owen.....	119
Tudors.....	153
Tu'rin.....	205
Turkey.....	155, 210, 264
Turks.....	239
Turnpikes.....	212
Tyn'dale, William.....	138
Tyr-con'nel.....	201

U.

Ulm.....	241
Uniformity, Act of.....	146, 186
Union of England and Ireland.....	239, 260
Union of England and Scotland.....	207
United States.....	234, 245, 252
University of Oxford.....	34
U'ra-nus, Discovery of.....	255
U'trecht, Treaty of.....	206

V.

Vaccination.....	256
Va-len'tia (<i>she-ah</i>).....	7
Val-en-tin'i-an I.....	19
Van-cou'ver's Island.....	288
Van Die'men's Land.....	286
Van Dyke.....	218
Vane, Sir Henry.....	174, 175
Van Tromp, Admiral.....	181, 182
Var'na.....	268
Ven'a-ble, Admiral.....	183
Ven'ice.....	180, 213
Ver'non, Admiral.....	222
Ver-u-la'mi-um.....	8
Victoria, Queen.....	261

	PAGE
Victoria, Province of.....	296
Vi-en'na, Congress of.....	246
Villiers (<i>vil'yers</i>), George.....	162
Villains.....	66
Villanage.....	100
Vimeira (<i>ve-ma'e-rah</i>), Battle of.....	245
Virginia.....	147, 161
Vit-to'ri-a, Battle of.....	244
Vor'ti-gern.....	20, 22

W.

Wa'gram, Battle of.....	244
Wakefield, Battle of.....	115
Wales.....	8, 28, 86, 93, 280
Walker, Defender of Londonderry.....	201
Wallace, William.....	69
Wal-la'chi-a.....	266
Wal'ter, Sir William.....	175
Wallis.....	214
Walpole, Sir Robert.....	220, 221, 223
Walter Tyr'el.....	60
Wal'worth, Mayor of London.....	100
Wan'di-wash, Battle of.....	229
War of the Roses.....	114, 118, 121
Warwick (<i>war'rik</i>), Earl of.....	114, 116, 117, 126, 140
Washington, George.....	225, 233
Wat Tyler.....	100
Watson, Admiral.....	239
Waterloo, Battle of.....	246
Watt, James.....	253, 254
Watts, Isaac.....	229, 251
Wedgewood, Josiah.....	254
Wel'les-ley, Sir Arthur.....	242, 243
Wellesley, Province.....	265
Wel'ling-ton, Duke of.....	244, 245, 246, 259
Welsh.....	23, 28, 35, 47
Wentworth, Sir Thomas.....	165, 167
Wesley, John.....	264
Weeser.....	8, 22
West Indies.....	195, 210, 231, 252, 288
Westminster Abbey.....	20, 26, 47
Westminster Hall.....	60
Whale Ships.....	211
White Rose of England.....	198
Whitefield, George.....	250
Whitehall.....	124, 213
Whittington.....	121
Wi'ckliffe, John.....	99, 101, 104
Wight, Isle of.....	177
Wilberforce, William.....	261
Wilkes, John.....	231
William I.....	54
William II.....	59
William III.....	203, 213
William IV.....	259
William, Duke of Guienne.....	60
William Fitz Robert.....	62
William of Malmesbury.....	69
William of Normandy.....	45, 46, 48
William, Prince (son of Henry I.).....	63
William, Prince of Orange.....	190, 197
William, King of Scotland.....	75
William and Mary.....	197, 199
Wind'ham, William.....	236
Witchcraft.....	210
Wit-an-ag'e-mot.....	49

	PAGE		PAGE
Wolfe, General.....	225, 230	Y.	
Wolsey, Cardinal.....	131, 132, 133, 134	Yar'mouth.....	122
Wool.....	99, 103, 118, 121	York.....	13, 136, 174
Woolen Cloth.....	212, 253	York, Duke of.....	4, 187, 190, 191
Worcester.....	44	Yorktown.....	234
Worcester, Battle of.....	180	Young.....	256
Wordsworth.....	256	Young Ireland Party.....	266
World's Fair.....	265		
Wren, Sir Christopher.....	188, 213	Z.	
Wy'att, Sir Thomas.....	139, 142	Zut'phen, Battle of..	150 (note)
Wych'er-ley.....	194		

4.37
198

A TREATISE ON PHYSIOLOGY AND HYGIENE.

FOR EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS AND THE GENERAL READER.

By JOSEPH C. HUTCHISON, M.D.,

President of the New York Pathological Society; Vice-President of the New York Academy of Medicine; Surgeon to the Brooklyn City Hospital; and late President of the Medical Society of the State of New York.

Fully Illustrated with Numerous Elegant Engravings. 12mo. 300 pages.

1. *The Plan of the Work* is to present the leading facts and principles of human Physiology and Hygiene in language so clear and concise as to be readily comprehended by pupils in schools and colleges, as well as by general readers not familiar with the subject. 2. *The Style* is terse and concise, yet intelligible and clear; and all useless technicalities have been avoided. 3. *The Range of Subjects Treated* includes those on which it is believed all persons should be informed, and that are proper in a work of this class. 4. *The Subject-matter*.—The attempt has been made to bring the subject-matter up to date, and to include the results of the most valuable of recent researches to the exclusion of exploded notions and theories. Neither subject—Physiology or Hygiene—has been elaborated at the expense of the other, but each rather has been accorded its due weight, consideration, and space. The subject of Anatomy is incidentally treated with all the fullness the author believes necessary in a work of this class. 5. *The Engravings* are numerous, of great artistic merit, and are far superior to those in any other work of the kind, among them being two elegant colored plates, one showing the Viscera in Position, the other, the Circulation of the Blood. 6. *The Size* of the work will commend itself to teachers. It contains about 800 pages, and can therefore be easily completed in one or two school terms.

The publishers are confident that teachers will find this work full of valuable matter, much of which cannot be found elsewhere in a class manual, and so presented and arranged that the book can be used both with pleasure and success in the schoolroom.

"Many of the popular works on Physiology now in use in schools, academies, and colleges, do not reflect the present state of the science, and some of them abound in absolute errors. The work which Dr. Hutchison has given to the public is free from these objectionable features. I give it my hearty commendation."—SAMUEL G. ARMOR, M.D., late Professor in Michigan University.

"This book is one of the very few school books on these subjects which can be unconditionally recommended. It is accurate, free from needless technicalities, and judicious in the practical advice it gives on Hygienic topics. The illustrations are excellent, and the book is well printed and bound."—*Boston Journal of Chemistry*.

"Just the thing for schools, and I sincerely hope that it may be appreciated for what it is worth, for we are certainly in need of books of this kind."—Prof. AUGUSTIN FLINT, Jr., Professor of Physiology in Bellevue Hospital Medical College, New York City, and author of "Physiology of Man," etc., etc.

"I have read it from preface to colophon, and find it a most desirable text-book for schools. Its matter is judiciously selected, lucidly presented, attractively treated, and pointedly illustrated by memorable facts; and, as to the plates and diagrams, they are not only clear and intelligible to beginners, but beautiful specimens of engraving. I do not see that any better presentation of the subject of physiology could be given within the same compass."—Prof. JOHN ORDRONAU, Professor of Physiology in the University of Vermont, and also in the National Medical College, Washington, D. C.

The above work is the most popular work on the above subjects yet published. It is used in thousands of schools with marked success.

Published by CLARK & MAYNARD, New York.